قناة العباقرة ٣ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe







الصف الثالث الثانوي
الجـــزء الأول
كتاب الشـرح

new HELLO!

& Great Expectations

Part 1

Giants In English

3



Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2



Unit 1

Read all about it!

1 Key Vocabulary

piracy (n)	قرصنة/ سرقة أدبية	tabloid (n)	صحيفة شعبية صغيرة	crime (n)	جريمة / عمل لا أخلاقى
cheat (v)(n)	غشاش / غش / يغش / حيلة	broadsheet(n)	صحيفة رسمية كبيرة	criminal(n)(adj)	مجرم / جنائي / اجرامي
highlight (v)(n)	يبرز / يسلط الضوء علي	investigate (v)	يحقق / يتحرى	incident (n)	حادث / واقعة / حدث
compensate (v)	يعوض / يكافئ	convict (v)(n)	مدان / يدين	claim (v)(n)	يطلب / يدعي / ادعاء
casualty	حالة وفاة / قسم طوارئ/ ضحية	violate(v)	يخترق / ينتهك	demand (v)(n)	يطلب / طلب / إقبال
announce (v)	يعلن / يصرح / يذيع	ruin (v)(n)	يدمر / حطام	illegal (adj)	غير شرعي / غير قانونى



Main Vocabulary

obtain (v)	يحصل علي	shock (v)(n)	صدمة / يصدم	former (n)	سابق
state (v)(n)	حالة / دولة / يصرح / يذكر	shocked (adj)	مصدوم	sum (v)(n)	مبلغ / يلخص / مسألة
publish (v)	ينشر	content (n)(adj)	محتوى / راضى	copy (v)(n)	ينسخ / نسخة
publisher (n)	ناشر	apprenticeship (n)	تدريب مهني	traffic (n)	المرور / حركة السير
bookseller (n)	بائع الكتب	punish (v)	يعاقب	copyrights (n)	حقوق الملكية
lawyer (n)	محامي	reporter (n)	مراسل / صحفى	journalism (n)	صحافة
financially (adv)	مادياً / مالياً	court (v)(n)	محكمة / ملعب / يغازل	pirated (adj)	مسروق / مُقرصن
authorities (n)	السلطات	prison (n)	سجن	secret (n)(adj)	سر / سري
nosy (adj)	فضولي / متطفل	common (adj)	شائع / عادى	include (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
grumpy (adj)	نكد / كئيب / متذمر	route (n)	طريق / مسار	block (v)	يحجب / يسد / يمنع / يحظر
objective (adj)	موضوعي / غير متحيز	cost (v)(n)	يكلف / تكلفة	interview (v)(n)	يقابل / مقابلة
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة	spin (v)(n)	يلف / يلفق / لفة / تلفيق	annoying (adj)	مزعج
share (v)(n)	يشارك / نصيب / حصة	instead (adv)	بدلاً من / عوضاً عن	volunteer (v)(n)	متطوع / يتطوع
remove (v)	يزيل	product (n)	منتج	wonder (v)	يتساءل

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

long-awaited ending	نهاية طال انتظارها	find **out**	يكتشف / يعرف
wait with **bated breath**	ينتظر بلهفة شديدة	give **up**	يستسلم / يقلع عن
pirated digital copy	نسخة رقمية مسروقة	be **due to**	على وشك
violate copyrights	ينتهك حقوق الملكية	in addition **to**	بالإضافة إلي
compensate financially	يعوض ماليا	make **up for** = **compensate**	يعوض
give a reason why	يعطي سببا لماذا	on social media	في وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
commit (do) a crime	يرتكب جريمة	be interested **in** = be keen **on**	مهتم بـ
do a job	يقوم بعمل / يؤدي مهمة	**apply for** a job	يتقدم بطلب وظيفة
do (cause) damage	يسبب تلف	**make** every effort	يبذل أقصى جهد
do (carry out) a survey	يقوم بدراسة	**make (earn)** money	يكسب (قوت / رزق / مال...)



4 Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
piracy	قرصنة/ سرقة أدبية	▸ the practice of illegally copying a computer program, music, a film, etc. and selling it
cheat	غشاش / غش	▸ to behave in a dishonest way in order to get what you want
announce	يعلن / يصرح / يذيع	▸ to state or make known, especially publicly
compensate	يعوض / يكافئ	▸ to pay someone money in exchange for something that has been lost or damaged or for some problems
ruin	يدمر	▸ to spoil or destroy severely or completely
illegal	غير شرعي	▸ against the law; not allowed by law
claim	يطلب / يدعي	▸ ask for something of value because you think it belongs to you or because you think you have a right to it
demand	يطلب	▸ to ask for something forcefully, in a way that shows that you do not expect to be refused
incident	حادث / واقعة / حدث	▸ an event which is either unpleasant or unusual
convict	مدان	▸ when someone is officially found to be guilty of a particular crime
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بلهفة شديدة	▸ waiting with a lot of nervousness and excitement

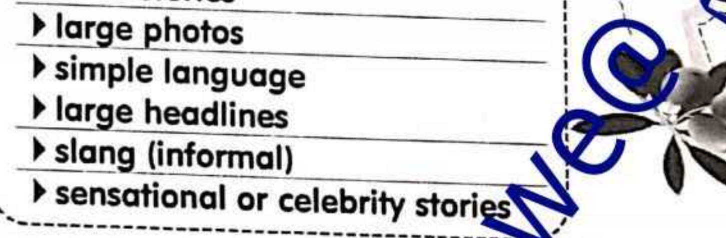
Tabloid
صحيفة شعبية صغيرة

- small pages
- short stories
- large photos
- simple language
- large headlines
- slang (informal)
- sensational or celebrity stories



Broadsheet
صحيفة رسمية كبيرة

- large pages
- factual articles
- fewer photos
- longer sentences and paragraphs
- formal
- international news





5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
violate	يخرق / ينتهك	▸ disobey - break	▸ follow - respect
ruin	يدمر / [illegible]	▸ destroy - collapse	▸ build - repair
piracy	قرصنة	▸ theft - stealing - robbery	▸ originality - genuine
cheat	غش / يغش	▸ trick - deceive - defraud	▸ promote - support
compensate	يعوض	▸ make up for	▸ lose - damage
casualty	حالة وفاة / ضحية / طوارئ	▸ death - victim - emergency	▸ success - survivor
grumpy	نكد / كئيب / متذمر	▸ (bad-tempered) - miserable	▸ cheerful - optimistic

6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
announce	يعلن / يصرح / يذيع	announcement	إعلان	announced	معلن
pirate	يقرصن	piracy	قرصنة/ سرقة أدبية	pirated	مسروق / مقرصن
compensate	يعوض / يكافئ	compensation	تعويض	compensatory	تعويضي
investigate	يحقق / يتحرى	investigation	تحقيق	investigatory	تحقيقي
shock	يصدم	shock	صدمة	shocked	مصدوم
spin	يلف / يدور / يلفق	spin	لفة / تلفيق	spinning	دوار
demand	يطلب	demand	طلب / إقبال	demanding	متطلب عناية أو جهد
cheat	يغش	cheat = cheater	غشاش / غش	cheating	غشاش



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

announce	يعلن (خبر / قرار / بيان / خطة ...)	advertise	يعلن عن (منتج تجاري / سلعة / خدمة ...)
volunteer	متطوع / يتطوع	voluntary	تطوعي
investigate	يحقق / يتحرى عن (حقيقة / شخص)	check	يفحص / يتحقق من (صحة / سلامة / صلاحية)
cost	يكلف/ تكلفة	coast	ساحل
instead	وبدلاً من ذلك	instead of	بدلاً من
publish	ينشر (كتب / مقالات ...)	come out	يصدر (لا تأتي مجهول)
reason for + n/ ing (reason why جملة)	سبب لـ	cause of (cause... to)	سبب / يسبب / يجعل
hard (adj- adv)	صعب / بجد	hardly	بصعوبة / بالكاد / قلما
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ

do or make

do (does - doing - did - done)

the shopping	يتسوق
a favour	يقدم خدمة
damage	يدمر / يسبب تلف
repairs	يقوم بإصلاحات
accounts	يقوم بالحسابات
an operation	يجري عملية جراحية
work	يقوم بعمل
a job	يؤدي وظيفة
things	يفعل أشياء
a project	يقوم بعمل دراسة
research	يقوم بعمل بحث

make (makes - making - made)

friends	يكون أصدقاء
a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح
a promise	يقدم وعداً
a plan	يخطط
arrangements	يعمل ترتيبات
parts	يصنع أجزاء
a difference	يحدث اختلاف
a decision	يتخذ قرار
a mistake	يخطئ
money	يكون ثروة
change	يغير



accident, incident, event & occasion

Word	Meaning	Example
accident	حادثة	She was injured in a car accident.
incident	حدث / مشكلة / حادثة / أزمة / واقعة	A youth was seriously injured in a shooting incident.
event	حدث / مناسبة (رسمية)	Mai's party was the social event of the year.
occasion	مناسبة اجتماعية	We met on several occasions to discuss the issue.

arrive, reach & get to

Word	Meaning	Example
arrive (in)	يصل (مكان كبير)	He arrived in Cairo.
arrive (at)	يصل (مكان صغير)	He arrived at the office early.
reach + object	يصل (بدون حرف جر)	He reached Cairo airport.
get to	يصل إلى (بصعوبة)	They got to Cairo airport.

experiment & experience

Word	Meaning	Example
experiment	تجربة علمية (معملية) / يجرب	In this experiment they obtained a clear result.
experience (c)	تجربة في الحياة(تعد)	Travelling abroad is an amazing experience.
experience (uc)	خبرة (لا تعد)	Ali doesn't have much experience for the job.
experience (v)	يمر بتجربة	I need to meet new people to experience a new life.

argue (for - with - about - against)

Word	Meaning	Example
argue for	يجادل من أجل شيء	She argued for a more positive role for women
argue with	يجادل مع	He argued with the referee throughout the game
argue about	يجادل بشأن	They were arguing about how to spend the money
argue against	يجادل ضد / يعارض	He argues persuasively against nationalism.

include, including, contain, enclose & consist of

Word	Meaning	Example
include	يشمل / يتضمن	The list includes fruits and vegetables.
including	مشتملة على	There were ten injured people including three children and two women.
consist of	يتكون من	The cake consists of flour, sugar and eggs.
contain	يحتوي على	The CD contains music and pictures.
enclose	يرفق شيء مع شيء / يحيط	I sent him a letter and enclosed my photo in it.

linking words

Linking word	Meaning	Example
because = as = since	لأن (بعدهم جملة سبب)	I didn't come because I was ill.
because of = due to	بسبب (بعدهم اسم أو ing)	I didn't come because of being ill (my illness).
so = consequently	لذا (بعدهم جملة نتيجة)	I was ill, consequently I didn't come.
although = though	بالرغم من (بعدهم جملة)	Although I was ill, I went to school.
despite = in spite of	بالرغم من (بعدهم اسم أو ing)	Despite being ill, I went to school.
but - whilst - however	لكن (بعدهم جملة)	He likes football whilst I like tennis.

New Harry Potter book shown online

Photographs of all 784 pages of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows have appeared on the internet, four days before J. K. Rowling's final book **is due to**(1) be **published**(2). It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose **contents**(3) have been kept a **secret**(4) before the book is published at 12.01 am on Saturday. Some **websites**(5) have **removed**(6) the photos after receiving **warnings**(7) from the **publisher**'s(8) **lawyers**(9), but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also **claimed**(10) that some people were typing up copies of the book from the photos to **share**(11) on social media.

This all **occurred**(12) **despite**(13) the careful security which has been put in place before the book is published. This **included**(14) asking **booksellers**(15) not to tell the media when or if they had copies of the book. The incident **highlights**(16) the problems of online book **piracy**(17), which is becoming much more **common**(18).

١) علي وشك
٢) ينشر
٣) محتوى
٤) سر / سري
٥) موقع علي النت
٦) يزيل
٧) تحذيرات
٨) ناشر
٩) محامي
١٠) يطالب
١١) يشارك
١٢) يحدث
١٣) بالرغم من
١٤) يشمل / يتضمن
١٥) بائع الكتب
١٦) يسلط الضوء علي
١٧) سرقة أدبية
١٨) شائع / منتشر

Internet cheats ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, an internet **cheat**(1) has shared every page of the book online. This has **ruined**(2) the surprise for millions of readers, who have been **waiting with bated breath**(3) to **find out**(4) what happens to the famous **character**(5). Several websites show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, which means that you can read the whole book online, including the **long awaited ending**(6). Lawyers have demanded that the websites stop showing the **illegal**(7) photos and, **fortunately**(8), some websites have agreed. However, other people have typed up the text from the photos and are likely to share the story on other websites. **Fans**(9) of Harry Potter were **shocked**(10) by the news. "It's terrible," says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be put in **prison**(11).

١) غش
٢) يدمر
٣) ينتظر بلهفة شديدة
٤) يكتشف
٥) شخصية
٦) نهاية طال انتظارها
٧) غير قانوني
٨) لحسن الحظ
٩) معجبين
١٠) مصدوم
١١) سجن

Punished for stealing books!

An International **Crime**(1) **Court**(2) in Denmark **punished**(3) a twenty-year-old student for selling **pirated**(4) digital copies of textbooks. The student was punished and **required**(5) to pay a large sum of money for her crime.

١) جريمة
٢) محكمة
٣) يعاقب
٤) مسروق
٥) يتطلب / يأمر



Piracy is a Crime!

In recent news, a **former**[1] Danish student in her late 20s was punished for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. The **criminal**[2] lawyer **stated**[3] that the **convict**[4] has now received a **punishment** for **violating**[5] **copyright law**[6]. When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she doesn't own the **rights**[7] to, the student said she was helping students **obtain**[8] books at a lower price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books that she does not own the rights to is illegal. **In addition to**[9] being punished by law, she is also required to pay a large **sum**[10] of money for piracy.

١) سابق
٢) جنائي
٣) يصرح / يذكر
٤) مدان
٥) ينتهك
٦) قانون حقوق الملكية
٧) حقوق
٨) يحصل على
٩) بالإضافة الى
١٠) مبلغ

Ever Given blocks Suez Canal



Rescuers [1] have finally moved a huge ship which was **blocking**[2] **traffic**[3] going through the Suez Canal. The ship, called Ever Given, is 400 metres long and weighs 200,000 tonnes. It is one of the largest of this **type**[4] of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a sand storm. The ship's captain said that a strong wind **spun**[5] the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. The result was that no ships could travel past the canal for nearly a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to **pass through**[6] the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was another route.

A few of the ship's captains decided to go around the South of Africa **instead**[7], but this added about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries **announced**[8] that they would send **products**[9] by air, but this is about three times more expensive than sending it by ship. The **accident**[10] was terrible for businesses around the world. That is because around 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day so the accident **cost**[11] both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily, smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the Ever Given yesterday. They **did** an amazing **job**. They moved around 30,000 square metres of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lake, **in the middle of** the canal. The canal **authorities**[12] told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they **investigate**[13].

Although[14] the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal for many days. **Experts**[15] are investigating the possible **causalities**[16] for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be **compensated**[17] **financially**[18].

١) فرق الإنقاذ
٢) يسد / يغلق
٣) المرور / حركة السير
٤) نوع
٥) يدور / يلف
٦) يمر خلال
٧) بدلاً من / عوضاً عن
٨) يعلن
٩) منتجات
١٠) حادثة
١١) يكلف
١٢) السلطات
١٣) يحقق / يتحرى
١٤) بالرغم من
١٥) خبراء
١٦) ضحايا / خسائر
١٧) يعوض
١٨) ماليا

GIANTS

Listening

A reporter is interviewing a journalist

Reporter How did you get into journalism[1]?

Journalist I started as a trainee[2] on a local newspaper and after two weeks was chosen for a three-year apprenticeship[3].

Reporter What advice can you give a student reporter[4] like me?

Journalist Learn from your mistakes! When I was first interviewing[5] people, I was asking too many questions. Let the person talk and always listen very carefully. Give both sides of the story and make sure[6] any facts or quotes are accurate[7]. When I first wrote news stories, I often included my own feelings and opinions. This was not good. If you're writing a news story, try to be objective[8].

Reporter Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?

Journalist I've interviewed lots of celebrities[9] including Amr Diab, Carmen Suleiman and Sandy.

Reporter Who was the most annoying[10] person you've interviewed?

Journalist There was one grumpy[11] person that I remember! I was interviewing a well-known[12] actor[13] when he told me to be quiet .The actor didn't want to answer my questions!

Reporter Is it a hard job?

Journalist It can be. Sometimes I wonder[14] why I'm tired, and I remember that I've worked for twelve hours without a break[15]! But journalists usually love what they do.

Reporter What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?

Journalist You obviously[16] have to be good at writing, but you also have to be a naturally nosy[17] person and you really need to be interested in people.

Reporter What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists?

Journalist Get some experience[18] on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free and don't give up[19], keep trying until someone gives you a chance[20]. I was working as a volunteer[21] and at a shop while I was at university and I applied for[22] 18 jobs before I got my first full-time job12 years later, I'm still here.

١) الصحافة
٢) متدرب
٣) تدريب مهني
٤) صحفي / مراسل
٥) يجري مقابلة
٦) يتأكد
٧) دقيق
٨) موضوعي
٩) مشاهير
١٠) مزعج
١١) متذمر
١٢) مشهور
١٣) ممثل
١٤) يتساءل
١٥) راحة
١٦) بوضوح
١٧) فضولي
١٨) خبرة
١٩) يستسلم
٢٠) فرصة
٢١) متطوع
٢٢) يتقدم بطلب لـ

Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Victims of the crash will be .... for their injuries.
   ⓐ compensated ⓑ punished ⓒ pirated ⓓ cheated
2. When someone is officially found to be guilty of a particular crime is called a/an ....
   ⓐ compensator ⓑ casualty ⓒ convict ⓓ murder
3. They .... the death of their mother in the local paper.
   ⓐ announced ⓑ replaced ⓒ complained ⓓ accused
4. So far, only one .... has been rescued from the scene of the explosion.
   ⓐ emergency ⓑ casualty ⓒ casual ⓓ murder
5. .... newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures.
   ⓐ Incident ⓑ Broadcast ⓒ Tabloid ⓓ Broadsheet
6. For a teacher, to hit a child is not just morally wrong but also ....
   ⓐ allowed ⓑ lawful ⓒ legal ⓓ illegal
7. We are of course investigating how an error like this could have ....
   ⓐ compensated ⓑ punished ⓒ ruined ⓓ occurred
8. To .... is to spoil or destroy something severely or completely.
   ⓐ compensate ⓑ investigate ⓒ occur ⓓ ruin
9. She was .... of murdering her drunken husband.
   ⓐ convicted ⓑ supported ⓒ admitted ⓓ compensated
10. Such bad behaviour .... all the rules of a civilized society.
    ⓐ announces ⓑ punishes ⓒ violates ⓓ demands
11. The jury has to decide whether a person is guilty or innocent of a ....
    ⓐ pirated ⓑ crime ⓒ criminal ⓓ commit
12. People who leak books and join in .... are punished for their crime.
    ⓐ piracy ⓑ pirates ⓒ pirated ⓓ chat
13. The police have closed the train station because there has been a / an ....
    ⓐ spin ⓑ bias ⓒ cheat ⓓ incident
14. Workers at the factory .... better pay and shorter working hours.
    ⓐ spun ⓑ demanded ⓒ cheated ⓓ claimed
15. The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
    ⓐ ruined ⓑ cheated ⓒ highlighted ⓓ compensated
16. The lawyer .... his client was provoked into acts of violence.
    ⓐ ruined ⓑ cheated ⓒ claimed ⓓ compensated
17. Deliberate damage to public property is a .... offence.
    ⓐ pirated ⓑ crime ⓒ criminal ⓓ commit
18. A murder was reported and the police were sent to ....
    ⓐ compensate ⓑ investigate ⓒ cheat ⓓ ruin
19. It is .... to own a gun without a special licence.
    ⓐ illegally ⓑ lawful ⓒ legal ⓓ illegal
20. To .... is to behave in a dishonest way in order to get what you want.
    ⓐ cheat ⓑ highlight ⓒ announce ⓓ convict
21. Ali who won the quiz is a .... He looked up the answers online, which wasn't allowed.
    ⓐ chat ⓑ bias ⓒ cheat ⓓ spin
22. People were .... while the firefighters helped the family from the fire.
    ⓐ waiting without bated breathe ⓑ waiting with bated breath
    ⓒ pirating digital copy ⓓ long-awaited ending



23. I was .... to read that 52% of people in the world are under 30 years old.
ⓐ shock ⓑ shocked ⓒ checked ⓓ exciting

24. I've been trying to .... permission to publish this book.
ⓐ compensate ⓑ obtain ⓒ ruin ⓓ convict

25. As I .... earlier, I don't believe that this information is accurate.
ⓐ stated ⓑ obtained ⓒ span ⓓ cheated

26. The first edition was .... in 2021.
ⓐ publisher ⓑ spread ⓒ published ⓓ come out

27. The .... was warned not to ask the witness leading questions.
ⓐ lawful ⓑ law ⓒ layer ⓓ lawyer

28. Educationalists are urging education .... to reform the educational system.
ⓐ incidents ⓑ authorities ⓒ traffic ⓓ courts

29. Don't be so .... -it's none of your business. You should respect others' privacy.
ⓐ grumpy ⓑ nosy ⓒ noise ⓓ cheat

30. If you say that someone is ...., they are bad-tempered and miserable.
ⓐ annoying ⓑ objective ⓒ nosy ⓓ grumpy

31. I applied for a one-month .... to learn cooking professionally.
ⓐ apprenticeship ⓑ sensor ⓒ responsibility ⓓ self-care

32. Due to strong winds, the boat kept .... in circles.
ⓐ swimming ⓑ learning ⓒ surrounding ⓓ spinning

33. Publishers suffer significant losses as a result of book ....
ⓐ accuracy ⓑ privacy ⓒ piracy ⓓ literacy

34. It is cruel to .... children by making them go hungry.
ⓐ publication ⓑ publish ⓒ punish ⓓ punishment

35. The show's success made her an overnight ....
ⓐ celebrate ⓑ celebrity ⓒ celebration ⓓ deliberate

36. I can't really be .... when I'm judging my daughter's work.
ⓐ objective ⓑ injustice ⓒ fear ⓓ pirated

37. When you buy a new computer, you usually get software .... at no extra cost.
ⓐ contained ⓑ enclosed ⓒ consisted ⓓ included

38. My .... employer gave me a good reference before I moved to another company.
ⓐ formal ⓑ former ⓒ farmer ⓓ form

39. There's nothing on at the cinema, let's go to the concert ....
ⓐ financially ⓑ commonly ⓒ instead ⓓ instead of

40. She's threatening to take me to .... for not paying the bill on time.
ⓐ court ⓑ concert ⓒ playground ⓓ count

41. She hadn't read the letter and so was unaware of its ....
ⓐ contents ⓑ contains ⓒ continents ⓓ contends

42. He consulted the map to find the shortest ....
ⓐ technique ⓑ method ⓒ route ⓓ root

43. Many roads are completely .... by snow.
ⓐ convicted ⓑ shocked ⓒ published ⓓ blocked

44. As soon as the major publishing houses begin producing electronic books, ... editions appear online.
ⓐ piracy ⓑ pirate ⓒ pirated ⓓ annoyed



Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

45. The old man was grumpy as he had missed the train. The word 'grumpy' is close in meaning to ______ . (2022)
ⓐ excited ⓑ delayed ⓒ curious ⓓ furious
46. "Nothing can make up for losing your father." What does 'make up for' mean?
ⓐ compensate ⓑ encourage ⓒ cheat ⓓ cooperate
47. She cheated in the test by copying from the boy in front. Cheated is a synonym for ______ .
ⓐ solved ⓑ tricked ⓒ supported ⓓ promoted
48. The doctor was accused of violating professional ethics. Violate is antonymous with ______ .
ⓐ aspect ⓑ respect ⓒ disobey ⓓ break
49. Her injury ruined her chances of winning the race. Ruin can be replaced by ______ .
ⓐ build ⓑ repair ⓒ improve ⓓ destroy
50. I hadn't had enough sleep, so I was a grumpy. Grumpy is a synonym for ______ .
ⓐ in a bad mood ⓑ in a good mood ⓒ glad ⓓ pleasant

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

51. Don't argue ______ him, you cannot persuade him as he is stubborn. (2022)
ⓐ for ⓑ by ⓒ with ⓓ at
52. The police are carrying out tests to try and find ______ the cause of death.
ⓐ up ⓑ out ⓒ of ⓓ on
53. The plane is ______ land at 3 o'clock.
ⓐ due to ⓑ lead to ⓒ object to ⓓ look forward to
54. I worked extra hours to make ______ the time I had missed.
ⓐ out ⓑ down ⓒ up ⓓ up for
55. He was sent to prison for a crime that he didn't ______ .
ⓐ make ⓑ commit ⓒ take ⓓ give
56. Another national survey carried ______ last year, found the same result.
ⓐ out ⓑ on ⓒ off ⓓ in
57. We waited with ______ for the winner to be announced.
ⓐ bate breathing ⓑ bate breath ⓒ bated breathe ⓓ bated breath
58. He ______ no effort to contact his parents.
ⓐ made ⓑ make ⓒ did ⓓ done
59. She's applied ______ a job with an insurance company.
ⓐ with ⓑ in ⓒ for ⓓ to
60. He didn't seem very ______ what I was saying.
ⓐ keen on ⓑ interested in ⓒ interest in ⓓ a & b
61. After ten minutes trying to get the answer I gave ______ .
ⓐ off ⓑ up ⓒ out ⓓ in

Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

62. The ______ turned over all evidence to the court.
ⓐ editors ⓑ headlines ⓒ investigates ⓓ investigators
63. They ______ a lot of money this year. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ did ⓑ made ⓒ gave ⓓ performed

64. What was your .... for leaving your job? (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ effect ⓑ discovery ⓒ cause ⓓ reason

65. .... the bad weather, we didn't go out. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ Because ⓑ Although ⓒ However ⓓ Owing to

66. They .... a few changes to the plan. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ did ⓑ made ⓒ performed ⓓ took

67. The percentage of the .... of the COVID-19 disease is low in children.
ⓐ occur ⓑ occurrence ⓒ occurred ⓓ occurs

68. When my father asked me about the exam, I told him that I didn't .... well.
ⓐ take ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ give

69. Your qualifications are good. Your main disadvantage is your lack of .... (2021)
ⓐ experiences ⓑ experience ⓒ experiment ⓓ skillful

70. She has .... a great achievement despite her disability. (2021)
ⓐ taken ⓑ done ⓒ made ⓓ given

71. She estimated the .... of building a new villa. (2021)
ⓐ coast ⓑ boast ⓒ cost ⓓ boost

72. Mr Ahmed asked his students to .... creative suggestions to prevent pollution.
ⓐ put ⓑ make ⓒ give ⓓ do

73. Egypt .... the final of the Africa Cup of Nations in 2017.
ⓐ got ⓑ reached ⓒ touched ⓓ amounted

74. We finally .... at our destination late that evening.
ⓐ came ⓑ reached ⓒ got ⓓ arrived

75. They argued .... the right to strike.
ⓐ with ⓑ to ⓒ for ⓓ that

76. I have .... many different and interesting situations in my work.
ⓐ experienced ⓑ experience ⓒ experiences ⓓ an experience

77. My grandfather is wise. He has different .... in life.
ⓐ exercise ⓑ experiments ⓒ experiences ⓓ experience

78. He isn't happy .... being rich.
ⓐ because ⓑ because of ⓒ although ⓓ in spite of

79. .... he is 70, he is energetic.
ⓐ Because ⓑ Despite ⓒ Although ⓓ In spite

80. My brother has a very difficult decision to .... next week.
ⓐ make ⓑ made ⓒ do ⓓ did

81. Investigators are still trying to determine the .... of the accident.
ⓐ reason ⓑ result ⓒ reasonable ⓓ cause

82. You can add another reason .... the pollution problem which is illiteracy.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ off ⓓ with

83. My father enjoyed watching different matches on TV, but he rarely .... any sports.
ⓐ appeared ⓑ made ⓒ carried ⓓ did

Don't get confused — **Think carefully**

84. Anyone .... in joining the club should contact us at the address below.
ⓐ interested ⓑ is interested ⓒ are interested ⓓ interest

85. The patient's fear .... the operation hard.
ⓐ make ⓑ made ⓒ do ⓓ did

86. You were .... to escape unharmed.
ⓐ unfortunately ⓑ fortunately ⓒ fortunate ⓓ unfortunate

87. Mai as well as her sisters .... a promise to help their mother at home.
ⓐ has done ⓑ have done ⓒ have made ⓓ has made



Past Simple الماضى البسيط

الإثبــــات Affirmation

* التصريف الثانى للفعل بإضافة (d / ed / ied) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.

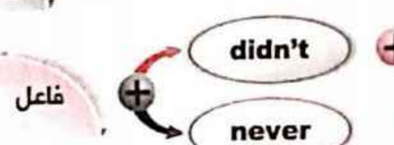
- I played football yesterday.
- Aya watched the film at home.

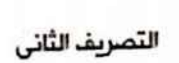
النفــــى Negative



فاعل + didn't + inf

فاعل + never + التصريف الثانى





- I didn't play (never played) football yesterday.
- Aya didn't watch (never watched) the film at home.

الســـؤال Question

Did + فاعل + inf...?

- Did you play football yesterday?
  - Yes, I did. — No, I didn't.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

مفعول + was / were + P.P.



- Football was played yesterday.
- The film was watched at home by Jana.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

yesterday	أمس
ago	منذ
last	السابق
in..........	في (عام سابق)
once/ one day	مرة
How long ago	متى
used to	اعتاد ان
just now	الآن
the other day	منذ بضعة ايام

- I sent an e-mail to my friend yesterday.
- This house was built three years ago.
- Seif wrote his first novel last year.
- Ahmed was born in 1986.
- Once, I had a terrible accident.
- How long ago did you start studying English?
- When I was young, I used to get up early.
- I met my old friend just now.
- Did you remember what happened the other day?

الاستخدامات Uses

1. يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

- He had his lunch and went out.
- He visited his uncle yesterday.

❷ يستخدم لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها في الماضي وخصوصاً مع وجود كلمات مثل (First, - then - and - ....).

◈ He **did** his homework then **slept**.

❸ يستخدم فى سرد أحداث قصة حدثت في الماضي (first, - then, - next , - at last, - finally,)

◈ Once, I **found** a wallet, then I **went** to the police.

❹ في الحالة الثانية (If)

◈ If she **studied** hard, she would succeed.

❺ يستخدم مع ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عادات وأفعال متكررة فى الماضى.

usually / always / sometimes / often / never / every ....

◈ He **drove** into town **every** day last week. ◈ He **always got** up late last year.

❻ يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (after / before) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضى.

◈ After he had studied, he **slept**. Mona **didn't come** until Toka had invited her.

❼ يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضى غير حقيقى.

1) I wish / Suppose
2) It's time
3) I would rather

+ فاعل + ماضى بسيط

◈ I wish Toka **studied** well.

◈ It's time she **studied** English.

◈ I would rather she **studied** well.

◈ Suppose(Imagine) you **had** a fortune, What'd you do?

✳ لاحظ : يأتي بعدهم ماضي تام (had + P.P.) في حالة وجود كلمة تدل علي الماضي

✳ لاحظ : يأتي d' rather امصدر / وبعد (I wish - It's time)+ to + inf. في حالة عدم و جود فاعل

used to

✳ نستخدم used to للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف فى الماضى ولا يحدث الآن.

◈ Mai **used to get** up early. This means ....

= Mai **no longer gets** up early. = Mai **doesn't get up** early anymore.

= It was **Mai's habit** to **get up** early. = Mai **always got** up early but now she **doesn't**.

✳ نستخدم would للتعبير عن عادة متكررة في الماضي

◈ Aya **would (used to)** sleep late.

✳ نستخدم be (get) used to للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف فى المضارع.

◈ Mai **is used to getting** up late. = Mai **gets used to getting** up late.

= **Nowadays**, Mai **gets up** late but in the past she **didn't**.

✳ لاحظ الفرق بين:

اعتاد أن ⟶ تعبر عن عادة كانت تحدث فى الماضى ولم تعد تحدث الآن: used to + inf.

معتاد أن ⟶ تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر: (am - is - are - get - gets) used to + V + ing

◈ I **used to play** football when I was young, but now I **don't**.

◈ **I'm used to playing** football.

✳ جملة التعقيب بعد but now تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم do - does إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس V. be أما إذا كان V. be نستخدم am - is - are :

◈ **She used to get** up early, but now she **doesn't**.

◈ **She used to be** active, but now she **isn't**.

✳ ولكن لاحظ أن (is - are) used to قد تأتي بمعنى (يستخدم لكي) ويليها inf. او for+ing:

◈ The wind **is used to sail** ships. ◈ Cotton **is used to make (for making)** clothes.



Exercises on Past Simple ⊃ Level 1

1. In 2021, I .... a new house in my village.
ⓐ built ⓑ was built ⓒ will build ⓓ had built
2. In 2021, a new house .... in my village.
ⓐ built ⓑ was built ⓒ will build ⓓ had built
3. Did you .... the New Administrative Capital Museum a week ago?
ⓐ visiting ⓑ visited ⓒ visit ⓓ visits
4. She finished her degree, then .... back to Egypt.
ⓐ moves ⓑ was moving ⓒ had moved ⓓ moved
5. Once, we .... lunch in this restaurant.
ⓐ having ⓑ have ⓒ has ⓓ had
6. Have you seen Ola? - Yes, I .... her an hour ago.
ⓐ saw ⓑ have seen ⓒ see ⓓ will see
7. Did you visit your friend in hospital? - Yes, I .... him yesterday.
ⓐ visited ⓑ have visited ⓒ visit ⓓ had visited
8. Why .... you go to the club yesterday? - Because I was busy doing my homework.
ⓐ did ⓑ didn't ⓒ were ⓓ weren't
9. My father always .... to work by train when he was young.
ⓐ has gone ⓑ was going ⓒ went ⓓ is going
10. When I worked as a postman, I .... up at 3 o'clock every morning.
ⓐ had got ⓑ was getting ⓒ got ⓓ get
11. My father travelled to London .... 2005.
ⓐ since ⓑ in ⓒ by ⓓ during
12. Her father was eighty years old when he .... (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ has died ⓑ had died ⓒ died ⓓ was dying
13. When I first .... news stories, I often included my own feelings and opinions.
ⓐ write ⓑ wrote ⓒ written ⓓ writes
14. We .... in Alexandria two months ago.
ⓐ were ⓑ have been ⓒ are ⓓ had been
15. When Nader was in Sharm El-Sheik, he .... a lot.
ⓐ sunbathed ⓑ was sunbathing ⓒ have sunbathed ⓓ would sunbathe
16. He .... in Alex for ten years. Now he lives in Beni Suef.
ⓐ lived ⓑ has lived ⓒ will have lived ⓓ had lived
17. Yesterday, I went to the club and .... my friends.
ⓐ had met ⓑ met ⓒ meet ⓓ was meeting
18. .... at school when the fire started?
ⓐ You were ⓑ Were you ⓒ Did you be ⓓ Are you
19. It .... my habit to have coffee at this café when I worked there.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ has been ⓓ had been
20. How long ago .... live in Port Said?
ⓐ did you ⓑ have you ⓒ were you ⓓ do you

Exercises on Past Simple ⊃ Level 2

21. It is time we .... our lesson. (2022)
ⓐ study ⓑ will study ⓒ studying ⓓ studied
22. The actor .... to answer any questions!
ⓐ didn't want ⓑ never want ⓒ don't want ⓓ wanted

23. I'd rather you .... your car here.
ⓐ don't park ⓑ didn't park ⓒ haven't parked ⓓ hasn't parked

24. In those days people .... a lot more letters.
ⓐ written ⓑ write ⓒ wrote ⓓ were writing

25. My mother .... for market just now.
ⓐ left ⓑ have left ⓒ was left ⓓ leaves

26. .... I see you in the post office the other day?
ⓐ Don't ⓑ Didn't ⓒ Wasn't ⓓ Won't

27. .... did you study English?
ⓐ How long ⓑ How long ago ⓒ Since when ⓓ Since

28. They .... able to come because they were so busy.
ⓐ aren't ⓑ didn't ⓒ wasn't ⓓ weren't

29. I .... any meals this night.
ⓐ haven't ⓑ didn't have ⓒ had ⓓ hadn't

30. Are you going to tell Toka what happened, or would you rather I .... her?
ⓐ told ⓑ tell ⓒ tells ⓓ had told

31. Ali's grandmother .... ill when he visited her yesterday.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ was seeming ⓒ has seemed ⓓ had seemed

32. I no longer work in Saudi Arabia. I .... there for ten years.
ⓐ had worked ⓑ work ⓒ have worked ⓓ worked

33. My uncle .... as a shop assistant for ten years. Now, he is a worker in a factory.
ⓐ has worked ⓑ had worked ⓒ worked ⓓ works

34. What time .... it when your father arrived?
ⓐ did ⓑ is ⓒ was ⓓ has

35. After I had locked the doors and the windows, I .... to bed.
ⓐ was going ⓑ go ⓒ had gone ⓓ went

Exercises on Passive in Past Simple

36. He .... guilty of theft. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ found ⓑ had found ⓒ was found ⓓ was finding

37. That building .... ten years ago. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ has been built ⓑ was built ⓒ is being built ⓓ is built

38. Adel .... in Tanta in 2002.
ⓐ is born ⓑ bore ⓒ was born ⓓ had born

39. The thief .... and sent to prison.
ⓐ was arrested ⓑ arrested ⓒ was arresting ⓓ has arrested

40. One of our classroom windows .... yesterday.
ⓐ have been broken ⓑ has broken ⓒ has been broken ⓓ was broken

41. "Did you go to the party?" - No, I ....
ⓐ didn't invite ⓑ hadn't invited ⓒ wasn't invited ⓓ invited

42. He .... until he had cleaned the car well.
ⓐ didn't reward ⓑ doesn't rewarded ⓒ won't be rewarded ⓓ wasn't rewarded

43. When he was young, he .... to hospital as a result of an accident.
ⓐ took ⓑ had taken ⓒ was taken ⓓ was taking

44. Do you know that penicillin .... in 1928 by the Scottish scientist Alexander Fleming?
ⓐ discovered ⓑ was discovered ⓒ will be discovered ⓓ has been discovered

45. A new branch of the National Bank of Egypt .... near my house last month.
ⓐ has been established ⓑ established ⓒ was establishing ⓓ was established



Exercises on — used to - be used to

46. I .... play football.
ⓐ am used to ⓑ used to ⓒ get used to ⓓ didn't used to

47. I .... playing football.
ⓐ am used to ⓑ used to ⓒ gets used to ⓓ didn't used to

48. I .... to school on foot: it is my habit to walk every day.
ⓐ never go ⓑ usually went ⓒ used to go ⓓ am used to going

49. What sport did you .... when you were a child?
ⓐ used to doing ⓑ use to doing ⓒ used to do ⓓ use to do

50. When she lived in Japan, she had to get used .... raw fish.
ⓐ to eat ⓑ eat ⓒ to eating ⓓ eating

51. She used to be active, but now she ....
ⓐ isn't ⓑ wasn't ⓒ doesn't ⓓ didn't

52. I used to play football, but now I ....
ⓐ isn't ⓑ don't ⓒ doesn't ⓓ didn't

53. Aya .... animals, but now she loves them!
ⓐ doesn't like ⓑ will like ⓒ didn't use to like ⓓ is used to liking

54. "I used to get up early." This means ....
ⓐ I get up early now. ⓑ I don't get up late now.
ⓒ it is my habit to get up early now. ⓓ I no longer get up early.

55. "I used to smoke." This means ....
ⓐ I will start ⓑ I no longer do it ⓒ I smoke ⓓ I'll stop it

56. He .... the hot weather.
ⓐ used to ⓑ is used to ⓒ get used to ⓓ is using to

57. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ He is used to smoking, but now he doesn't. ⓑ He used to smoke, but now he doesn't.
ⓒ He was used to smoke, but now he doesn't. ⓓ He used to smoke, but now he isn't.

Don't get confused — Think carefully

58. It is time they .... home from school.
ⓐ go ⓑ have gone ⓒ went ⓓ are going

59. It is time .... home as it is so late.
ⓐ to go ⓑ have gone ⓒ went ⓓ are going

60. I wish I .... a new car.
ⓐ buy ⓑ to buy ⓒ buying ⓓ bought

61. I wish .... a new car.
ⓐ buy ⓑ to buy ⓒ buying ⓓ bought

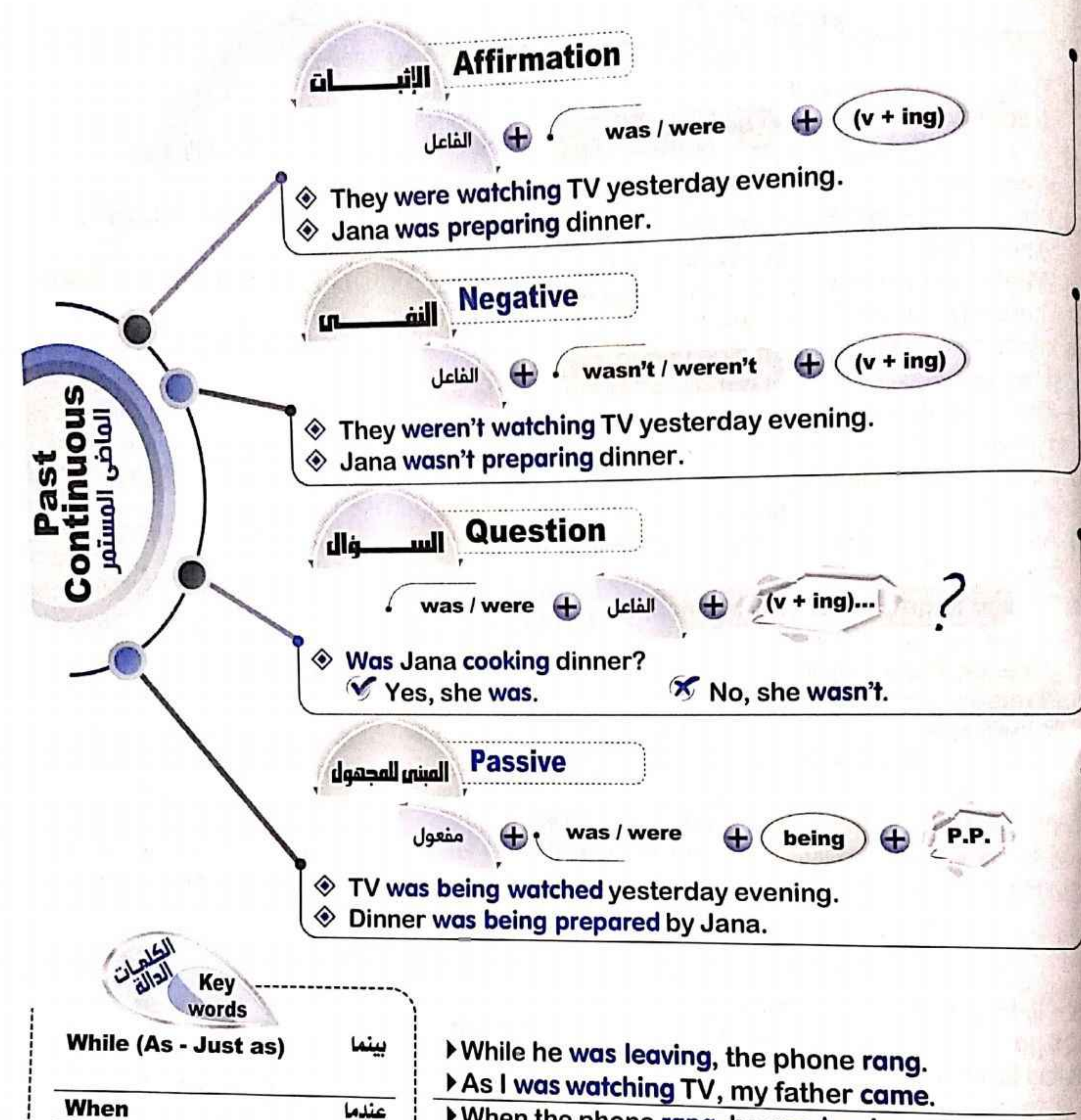
62. I'd rather Mai .... her mother at the club.
ⓐ meet ⓑ to meet ⓒ met ⓓ had met

63. I'd rather Mai .... her mother at the club yesterday.
ⓐ meet ⓑ to meet ⓒ met ⓓ had met

64. I'd rather .... Mai at the club.
ⓐ meet ⓑ to meet ⓒ met ⓓ had met

65. My watch .... down last week.
ⓐ broke ⓑ broken ⓒ was broken ⓓ had broken

66. Cotton .... clothes.
ⓐ is used to make ⓑ is used to making ⓒ used to make ⓓ get used to make



Key words الكلمات الدالة

While (As - Just as)	بينما
When	عندما
During	خلال / أثناء (بعدها اسم)
On	عندما بعدها (v+ing)
yesterday	أمس (مدة زمنية)
this time+علامة للماضي	هذا الوقت
because = as = since	لأن

- While he **was leaving**, the phone **rang**.
- As I **was watching** TV, my father **came**.
- When the phone **rang**, he **was leaving**.
- During **the party**, I **received** many presents.
- On **seeing** the accident, I **called** the police.
- Jana **was studying** at seven yesterday.
- This time last year, I **was studying** in Italy.
- He couldn't answer the phone as he **was praying**.

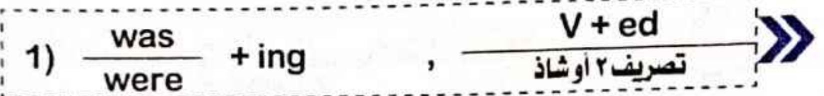
Uses الاستخدامات

❶ التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضى.
- He **was playing** all morning yesterday.

❷ التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما وقع حدث آخر.
- While I **was having** lunch, the **phone rang**.

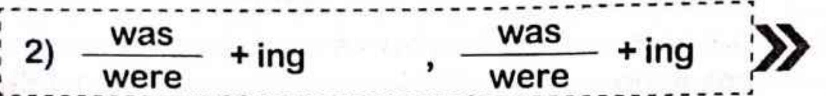
❸ التعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضى.
- While she **was preparing** dinner, he **was watching** TV.

حدث قطع حدث



◈ I **hurt** my back while I **was working** in the garden.

حدثان فى نفس الوقت



◈ While I **was studying** English, my mother **was cooking**.



إذا كــان الفعـــل v.be نـــستخدم ماضي بسيط بعد while

3) فاعل was / were (صفة / مكان) , V + ed (تصريف ٢ أو شاذ)

◈ While I **was** in Banha, I **met** an old friend of mine.

عدم وجود فاعـل (بـشرط أن يكـون الفاعل واحد في الجملتين)

4) V + ing , V + ed (تصريف ٢ أو شاذ)

◈ While **painting** my house, I **fell** off the ladder.

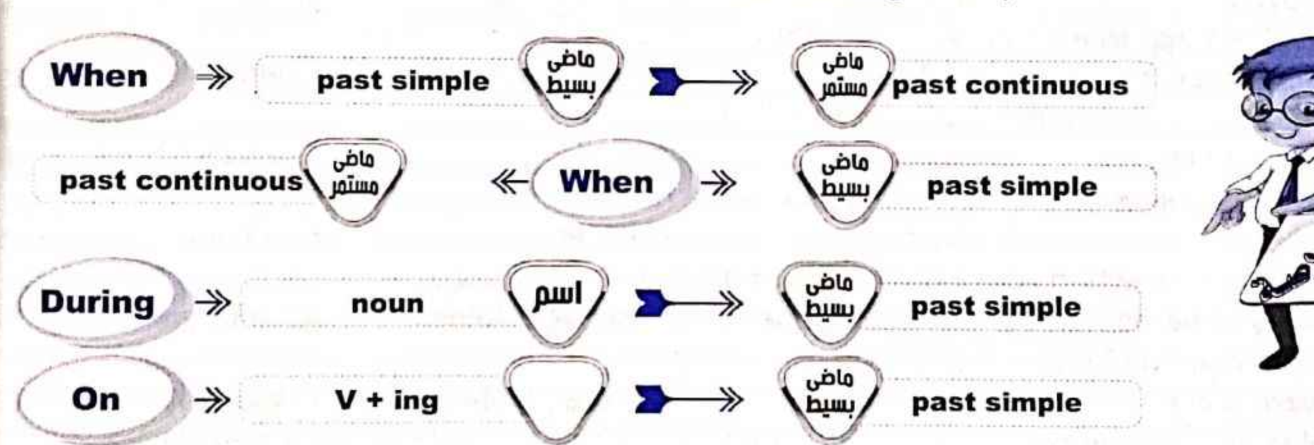
يمكن أن يأتي حرف جر بعد while

5) + حرف جر , V + ed (تصريف ٢ أو شاذ)

◈ **While in** the office, he received a call from his wife.

While = as = just as

◈ Just as I **was walking** home, I saw an accident.



Important Notes

✻ يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع while - when في الماضي المستمر:

◈ While Jana **was watching** TV, Toka **was studying** English. حدثان مستمران

◈ When I **was** first **interviewing** people, I **was asking** too many questions.

✻ يمكن استخدام On بدلاً من when ويأتي بعدها V + ing: (لتوضيح توالي الأحداث)

◈ **On arriving**, he **found** the light on.

✻ يمكن استخدام during بدلاً من while ويأتي بعدها noun:

◈ **During the game**, he **got** hurt.

✻ غالباً لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر مع أفعال الحالة (التملك – الإدراك – الشعور - ....)

like / love / near / see / smell / ....

◈ I tired the cake to see how it **tasted**. (was tasting ×)

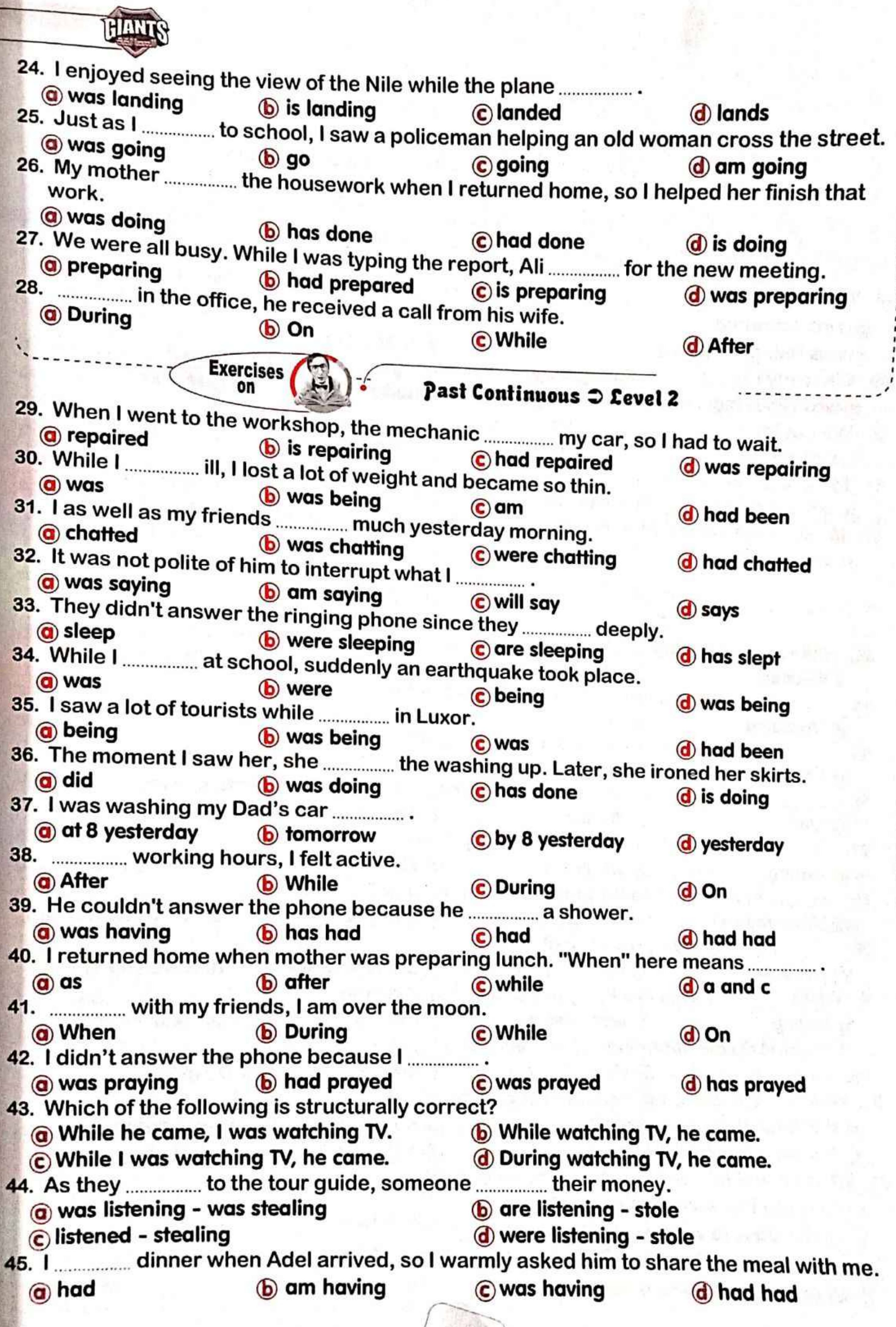
✻ لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر لوصف أحداث متكررة فى الماضى

◈ When I was a child, we **walked** to school. (was walking ×)

✻ يمكن أن نستخدم بعد when (v+ing) وغالباً تعبر عن عادة أو شئ يحدث بتكرار

◈ When **eating** fast food, I felt ill.

1. While we .... TV, my cousin suddenly arrived.
ⓐ watched ⓑ are watching ⓒ were watching ⓓ watching
2. While he was playing football, he .... and broke his leg.
ⓐ fell ⓑ was falling ⓒ fall ⓓ falling
3. While I was studying, my father .... a book.
ⓐ reads ⓑ was reading ⓒ were reading ⓓ read
4. I .... a well-known actor when he told me to be quiet.
ⓐ had interviewed ⓑ interviewed ⓒ was interviewing ⓓ were interviewing
5. When the phone rang, I .... my lunch.
ⓐ had ⓑ am having ⓒ was having ⓓ will have
6. What .... at midday last Saturday?
ⓐ had you done ⓑ have you done ⓒ did you do ⓓ were you doing
7. From 7 to 9 yesterday, I .... a certain task as I was asked.
ⓐ did ⓑ had done ⓒ was doing ⓓ have done
8. As I .... home last night, it started raining.
ⓐ has walked ⓑ had walked ⓒ was walking ⓓ walked
9. Adam .... chess all day yesterday.
ⓐ played ⓑ was playing ⓒ is playing ⓓ had played
10. I couldn't watch the film as my brother .... a football match.
ⓐ was watching ⓑ had watched ⓒ has watched ⓓ watched
11. Just as I .... home, I saw an accident.
ⓐ are walking ⓑ walks ⓒ walking ⓓ was walking
12. I felt really sick .... the party, so I went home.
ⓐ when ⓑ during ⓒ while ⓓ on
13. What .... when your father returned home last night?
ⓐ will you be doing ⓑ have you done ⓒ are you doing ⓓ were you doing
14. At the time my father arrived, we .... chess.
ⓐ were played ⓑ are playing ⓒ were playing ⓓ played
15. "What .... between 9 and 12 yesterday morning?" said the detective.
ⓐ you had done ⓑ had you done ⓒ were you doing ⓓ you were doing
16. This time last year I .... in Brazil.
ⓐ was living ⓑ had lived ⓒ lived ⓓ had lived
17. He made some new friends .... his stay in Cairo.
ⓐ while ⓑ when ⓒ until ⓓ during
18. At 5 o'clock last Monday, I .... on a bus on my way home.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ had been ⓓ was being
19. There are always economic crises .... wars.
ⓐ while ⓑ as ⓒ when ⓓ during
20. Mai .... into the forest yesterday morning.
ⓐ are trekking ⓑ were trekking ⓒ had trekked ⓓ was trekking
21. What .... yesterday while the match was being broadcasted?
ⓐ were you done ⓑ were you doing ⓒ are you doing ⓓ you were doing
22. While I .... dinner, a stranger knocked on the door of my flat by mistake.
ⓐ am having ⓑ having ⓒ was having ⓓ had
23. We were doing our homework while our little brother .... TV.
ⓐ had watched ⓑ was watching ⓒ watches ⓓ is watching



24. I enjoyed seeing the view of the Nile while the plane ....
ⓐ was landing ⓑ is landing ⓒ landed ⓓ lands

25. Just as I .... to school, I saw a policeman helping an old woman cross the street.
ⓐ was going ⓑ go ⓒ going ⓓ am going

26. My mother .... the housework when I returned home, so I helped her finish that work.
ⓐ was doing ⓑ has done ⓒ had done ⓓ is doing

27. We were all busy. While I was typing the report, Ali .... for the new meeting.
ⓐ preparing ⓑ had prepared ⓒ is preparing ⓓ was preparing

28. .... in the office, he received a call from his wife.
ⓐ During ⓑ On ⓒ While ⓓ After

Exercises on **Past Continuous ➲ Level 2**

29. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic .... my car, so I had to wait.
ⓐ repaired ⓑ is repairing ⓒ had repaired ⓓ was repairing

30. While I .... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin.
ⓐ was ⓑ was being ⓒ am ⓓ had been

31. I as well as my friends .... much yesterday morning.
ⓐ chatted ⓑ was chatting ⓒ were chatting ⓓ had chatted

32. It was not polite of him to interrupt what I ....
ⓐ was saying ⓑ am saying ⓒ will say ⓓ says

33. They didn't answer the ringing phone since they .... deeply.
ⓐ sleep ⓑ were sleeping ⓒ are sleeping ⓓ has slept

34. While I .... at school, suddenly an earthquake took place.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ being ⓓ was being

35. I saw a lot of tourists while .... in Luxor.
ⓐ being ⓑ was being ⓒ was ⓓ had been

36. The moment I saw her, she .... the washing up. Later, she ironed her skirts.
ⓐ did ⓑ was doing ⓒ has done ⓓ is doing

37. I was washing my Dad's car ....
ⓐ at 8 yesterday ⓑ tomorrow ⓒ by 8 yesterday ⓓ yesterday

38. .... working hours, I felt active.
ⓐ After ⓑ While ⓒ During ⓓ On

39. He couldn't answer the phone because he .... a shower.
ⓐ was having ⓑ has had ⓒ had ⓓ had had

40. I returned home when mother was preparing lunch. "When" here means ....
ⓐ as ⓑ after ⓒ while ⓓ a and c

41. .... with my friends, I am over the moon.
ⓐ When ⓑ During ⓒ While ⓓ On

42. I didn't answer the phone because I ....
ⓐ was praying ⓑ had prayed ⓒ was prayed ⓓ has prayed

43. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ While he came, I was watching TV.
ⓑ While watching TV, he came.
ⓒ While I was watching TV, he came.
ⓓ During watching TV, he came.

44. As they .... to the tour guide, someone .... their money.
ⓐ was listening - was stealing
ⓑ are listening - stole
ⓒ listened - stealing
ⓓ were listening - stole

45. I .... dinner when Adel arrived, so I warmly asked him to share the meal with me.
ⓐ had ⓑ am having ⓒ was having ⓓ had had

46. She .... dinner when we returned home.
ⓐ doesn't make ⓑ wasn't made ⓒ isn't making ⓓ wasn't making

47. While I was cooking, my husband was washing the car. This means ....
ⓐ I cooked first ⓑ the two actions were at the same time
ⓒ the two actions were in different times ⓓ my husband washed the car first

Exercises on Passive in Past Continuous

48. While the party .... , we were busy sending invitations to our friends.
ⓐ was prepared ⓑ was been prepared
ⓒ was being prepared ⓓ is prepared

49. While my car .... at the garage, I was having a meal at a nearby restaurant.
ⓐ was repairing ⓑ was being repaired ⓒ had repaired ⓓ repaired

50. We couldn't enter the room because it ....
ⓐ was painting ⓑ was being painted ⓒ have been painted ⓓ had painted

51. Mona borrowed her friend's car while hers ....
ⓐ was repairing ⓑ was repaired ⓒ was being repaired ⓓ repaired

52. My son didn't know what he .... in his trip to China, their foods were different.
ⓐ was feeding ⓑ has been fed ⓒ is fed ⓓ was being fed

Don't get confused — Think carefully

53. While I was studying English and .... to music, my mother was cooking.
ⓐ listened ⓑ was listening ⓒ were listening ⓓ listening

54. .... doing our homework, we handed it out to our teacher.
ⓐ On being ⓑ On ⓒ Having been ⓓ Having

55. .... done, our homework was handed out to our teacher.
ⓐ On being ⓑ On ⓒ Have been ⓓ Having

56. .... visiting hours, we got an entrance ticket for the hospital to see my uncle.
ⓐ On ⓑ During ⓒ After ⓓ While

57. .... arrested, the thief was taken to prison.
ⓐ During ⓑ On being ⓒ While ⓓ Having

58. .... to the plane as they were closing the gate?
ⓐ Have you run ⓑ You're running ⓒ Had you run ⓓ Were you running

59. .... any bread? – No, I bought some.
ⓐ You bought ⓑ Did you buy ⓒ Didn't you buy ⓓ Were you buying

60. While .... a cold drink, my car was being checked.
ⓐ having ⓑ was having ⓒ was had ⓓ I was having

61. I couldn't do the shopping .... all shops had been closed.
ⓐ until ⓑ since ⓒ before ⓓ after

62. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ It is time Ahmed go home. ⓑ It is time for Ahmed went home.
ⓒ It is time Ahmed going home. ⓓ It is time Ahmed went home.

63. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ Ali is used to watch action movies.
ⓑ Ali get used to watching action movies.
ⓒ Ali used to watch action movies.
ⓓ Ali used to watching action movies.

Part 2 Lessons 3 & 4



Unit 1

Read all about it!



1 Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
bias (v)(n)	تحامل / انحياز / ينحاز	mislead (v)	يضلل / يخدع	support (v)(n)	يدعم / يساند / الدعم
omission (n)	إهمال/ تجاوز / استبعاد	misleading (n)(adj)	تضليل / مضلل	impact (v)(n)	أثر / تأثير
spin (v)(n)	يلف / يدور / يلفق / تلفيق / لفة	inaccurate (adj)	غير دقيق	summarise (v)	يلخص
placement (n)	وضع	balanced (adj)	متوازن / عادل	restate (v)	يعيد صياغة
trap (v)(n)	يحتجز / يصطاد / فخ / مصيدة	whilst (conj)	بينما / مع أن / لكن	brainstorm (v)	يعصف ذهنيا
spoil (v)	يفسد / يدلل	access (n)	إذن بالدخول / حق الدخول	recognise (v)	يدرك / يتعرف على



2 Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
constant (adj)	ثابت / مستمر	citizen journalism(n)	صحافة المواطن	headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي
stressed (adj)	متوتر	mention (v)	يذكر	rescue (v)	ينقذ
persuasive (adj)	اقناعى / مقنع	afford (v)	يتحمل (تكلفة)	rescuer (n)	منقذ / فريق الإنقاذ
factual (adj)	واقعي / حقيقى	impression (n)	انطباع / أثر	warn (v)	يحذر
serious(adj)	جاد / خطير	consequently	بالتالي / ولذلك	warning (n)	تحذير
strict (adj)	صارم / حازم	compare (v)	يقارن	slang (n)	اللغة العامية
update (v)(n)	يحدث / تحديث	survey (n)	بحث استطلاعي / دراسة	sensational (adj)	مثير
up-to-date (adj)	جديد/ حديث	slide (v)(n)	يتزحلق/ زحليقة / شريحة	expert (n)	خبير
persuade (v)	يقنع	trust (v)(n)	يثق بـ / الثقة	lecture (v)(n)	محاضرة / يحاضر
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	current (adj)	حالي / جاري	behave (v)	يسلك / يتصرف
permission (n)	اذن / تصريح	regular (adj)	منتظم	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
affairs (n)	شئون / أحداث	anxious (adj)	شاعر بالتوتر أو القلق	editor (n)	محرر صحفي / رئيس تحرير
available (adj)	متاح	certain (adj)	معين / محدد	likely (adj)	متوقع / من المحتمل
objective (n)(adj)	موضوعي / هدف	social (adj)	اجتماعي	practical (adj)	عملى

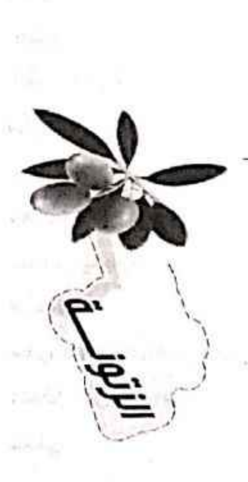
3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
have an impact on	له تأثير علي
have a social responsibility	لديه مسئولية اجتماعية
point of view	وجهة نظر
keep up-to-date with	يواكب
give a lecture	يعطي محاضرة
brainstorm ideas	يستثير أفكار
avoid the negative impact	يتجنب التأثير السلبي
get anxious	يتوتر / يقلق
do wrong	يخطئ
sum **up** = **summarise**	يلخص
leave **out**	يستبعد
on the other hand	من ناحية أخري
as **far** as	بقدر ما
careful **about**	حريص بشأن
in general	عموما
current **affairs**	الأحداث الجارية
suggest a solution	يقترح حل
make sure	يتأكد



4 Definitions

balanced	متوازن / عادل	▸ considering all sides or opinions equally
mislead	يضلل / يخدع	▸ to cause someone to believe something that is not true
inaccurate	غير دقيق	▸ not completely correct or exact, or not able to do something correctly or exactly
bias	تحامل / انحياز	▸ often supporting or opposing a particular person or thing in an unfair way by allowing personal opinions to influence your judgment
omission	إهمال / تجاوز / تقصير	▸ when something has not been included that should have been
spin	يلفق / تلفيق	▸ when an idea is expressed or described in a clever way that makes it seem better than it really is
placement	وضع	▸ the position or job someone has in an organization
trap	يحتجز / يصطاد	▸ If someone or something is trapped, they are unable to move or escape from a place or situation
spoil	يفسد / يدلل	▸ to destroy or reduce the pleasure, interest or beauty of something
summarise	يلخص	▸ to express the most important facts or ideas about something or someone in a short and clear form
restate	يعيد صياغة	▸ to say something again or in a different way



bias by omission التحيز عن طريق الإغفال	bias by placement التحيز حسب الموضع	bias by spin التحيز عن طريق التزييف
leaving out certain stories or facts إهمال قصص أو حقائق معينة	position of the article on the page. موضع المقال على الصفحة.	presenting an opinion as a fact. تقديم رأي كحقيقة.
leaving out certain information إهمال معلومات معينة	position of story at the top of the page or website موضع الخبر أعلى الصفحة أو موقع الويب	focusing on information which only supports one side of an argument التركيز على المعلومات التي تدعم جانبًا واحدًا فقط من الجدال
leaving out anything which does not agree with the writer's point of view. إهمال كل ما لا يتفق مع وجهة نظر الكاتب	position that editor puts it where it will be read first. الموضع الذي يضعه المحرر في المكان الذي سيتم قراءته فيه أولاً	using emotional language to persuade the reader. استخدام لغة عاطفية لإقناع القارئ.

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
balanced	متوازن / عادل	▸ fair - objective - unbiased	▸ biased - imbalanced
bias	انحياز / تحامل	▸ intolerance - unfairness	▸ equality - objectivity
omission	إهمال / تجاوز / استبعاد	▸ exclusion - carelessness	▸ inclusion - care - addition
inaccurate	غير دقيق	▸ incorrect - wrong - false	▸ accurate - correct - right





Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
balance	يتوازن / يوازن	balance	توازن / رصيد	balanced	متوازن / عادل
mislead	يضلل / يخدع	misleading	تضليل	misleading	مضلل
bias	ينحاز	bias	تحامل / انحياز	biased	منحاز / متحيز
differ	يختلف	difference	اختلاف / فرق	different	مختلف
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	الإقناع	persuasive	مقنع
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص / موجز	summary	متسرع / عاجل
stress	يشدد / يؤكد على	stress	توتر / ضغط / إجهاد	stressed	متوتر
omit	يحذف / يهمل	omission	إهمال / تجاوز / تقصير	omitted	مهمل / محذوف
place	يضع في مكان	placement	وضع في مكان / موضع معين		



Language Notes

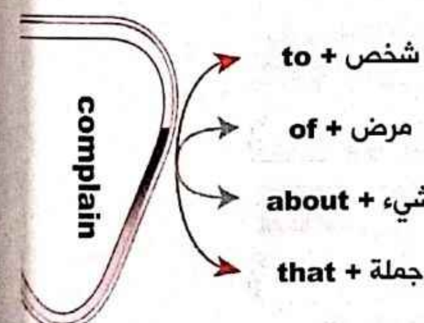
7 Notice the Difference

decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	⊃	decide on + n.	يختار
bias (v)(n)	تحامل / انحياز / ينحاز	⊃	biased (adj)	منحاز / متحيز
location	موقع / موقع تصوير	⊃	position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية
balance (n)	توازن / ميزان / حساب بنكي	⊃	balanced (adj)	متوازن / عادل
persuade	يقنع (شخص بعمل شيء مع إعطاء أسباب)	⊃	convince	يقنع (شخص أو نفسه بشيء)
examine	يفحص شيء أو شخص لكي يصدر رأي	⊃	check	يفحص شيء ليكتشف إذا كان في حالة جيدة أو لا
staff	عاملون / موظفون	⊃	crew	طاقم (سفينة / طائرة)
compare with	يقارن لتوضيح الاختلاف	⊃	compare to	يقارن لتوضيح التشابه / يشبه بـ

destination, location, site & position

destination	مكان الوصول (الوجهة)	▶ Aswan will be my next **destination**.
location	موقع / موقع تصوير	▶ What is the exact **location** of the ship?
site	موقع أثري / بناء / موقع على الإنترنت	▶ Abu Simble is the **site** of two temples in Aswan.
position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية	▶ Ahmed had a high **position** in society.

complain (to - about - of - that)



- to + شخص — يشكو لـ — Toka **complained to** her father about her brother.
- of + مرض — يشكو من — She **complained of** a severe headache.
- about + شيء — يشكو من — He **complained about** his study.
- that + جملة — يشكو من — He **complained that** he didn't study well.

One of the  اسم جمع  فعل مفرد

◈ **One of** the **players was** injured in the last match.

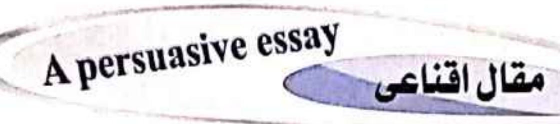


Read about bias

Tarek loves a football team called the Greens. He writes **reports**[1] on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a **balanced**[2] **point of view!**[3] He always puts the Greens' report at the top of the page when they win, but not when they **lose!**[4] This is **bias by placement**[5] He always puts a **spin**[6] on his stories, too.

For example, when the Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when the Greens win! This is **bias by omission**[7]. Nevertheless, Tarek's reports are not **inaccurate**[8]: he does not want to **mislead**[9] you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the **result!**[10]

1. تقارير
2. متوازن
3. وجه نظر
4. يخسر / يفقد
5. انحياز بالموضع
6. تلفيق
7. انحياز بالحذف
8. غير دقيق
9. يضلل
10. نتيجة



Social media has a negative impact on news and society

Introduction

Social media[1] has become the **main source**[2] of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet **access**[3] get their news from social media. Although this means that we can find news easily and get **regular**[4] **updates**[5] on our phones, in my view I think social media has a **negative**[6] **impact**[7] on news and **society**[8].

body paragraph

To begin with, this **constant cycle**[9] of news, which is **mostly**[10] bad, can make people **stressed**[11] and worried. A recent **survey**[12] found that more than half of Americans say they **get anxious**[13] and sleep badly because of the news.

Next, not everything we read or see on social media is true and **factual**[14]. If we share it, before checking the facts, we might **spread**[15] **false**[16] information. **In turn**[17], this means that the public stop trusting journalists and news **in general**[18].

Lastly,[19] social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become 'the managing **editors**'[20]. They **share**[21] news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not **balanced**[22] or **objective**[23].

Conclusion

In summary,[24] **whilst**[25] it is a good thing that we have so much news **available**[26] and it is easy to **keep up-to-date with**[27] **current affairs,**[28] we need to **avoid**[29] the negative **effects**[30]. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a social **responsibility**[31] to make every **effort**[32] not to spread inaccurate or **misleading**[33] news.

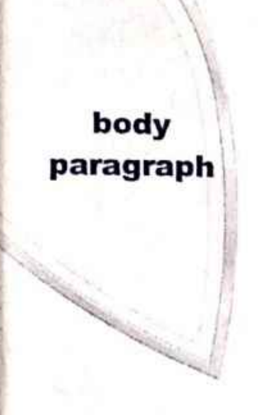
1. تواصل اجتماعي
2. مصدر رئيسي
3. أذن دخول
4. منتظم
5. تحديث
6. سلبي
7. أثر / تأثير
8. مجتمع
9. دورة متصلة
10. عموما
11. متوتر
12. بحث استطلاعي
13. يقلق
14. واقعي
15. ينتشر
16. خطأ
17. لذا
18. عموما
19. أخيرا
20. محرر
21. يشارك
22. متوازن
23. موضوعي
24. بإيجاز
25. بينما
26. متاح
27. يواكب
28. الأحداث الجارية
29. يتجنب
30. أثر
31. مسئولية
32. جهود
33. مضلل



We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on the opinion of people online.



With today's social media, it is possible to find online **reviews**[1] of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you **book**[2] a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car **hire**[3] company and what they **recommend**[4] you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a **guidebook**[5].



To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the **owners**[6] of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews? It is difficult to know this information. If they are **50-year-old** Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually **experts**[7]. You can **trust**[8] them for **accurate**[9] information and a **balanced**[10] point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is **intended**[11] to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

Conclusion

To conclude, [12] online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, **personally**[13] I think you should buy a guidebook.

١) مقال نقدي
٢) يحجز
٣) يأجر / يعين
٤) يرشح / يوصي
٥) دليل
٦) مالك
٧) خبير
٨) يثق
٩) دقيق
١٠) متوازن
١١) ينوي
١٢) ختاماً
١٣) شخصياً

A) Millions to be spent on a project that will make our traffic worse!

Car **drivers**[1] are angry about plans to open a new bus **lane**[2] from the city centre. The plan, which will **cost**[3] LE 200 million, will stop all cars using Nile Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "**Traffic**[4] in the city is already terrible," says businesswoman Mrs Joan Batas. "If they close Yellow Road, it will be even worse." Another business person who uses South Road **regularly**[5], Mr Jason, says, "Why are they **planning**[6] to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow."

١) سائق
٢) حارة
٣) تكلفة
٤) المرور
٥) بانتظام
٦) يخطط
٧) منظم
٨) يجذب
٩) يقلل
١٠) التلوث
١١) طويل المدى
١٢) يقنع
١٣) نقل عام

B) New route to serve university



There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university. The LE200-million project will mean closing Yellow Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster. The **organisers**[7] believe the project will help **attract**[8] students to the university and that the electric buses will also **reduce**[9] **pollution**[10]. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a **long-term**[11] plan to **persuade**[12] people to use **public transport**[13] rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.



Media bias

So, moving on, what exactly is **bias**[(1)]? First of all, let's look at **bias by omission**[(2)]. This means leaving something out, for example, a **fact**[(3)] or a **quote**[(4)] which maybe doesn't **support**[(5)] the writer's **point of view**[(5)].

Let's look at some examples; imagine Heba over here every morning **checks**[(7)] the same website to read the news. She likes the way the **articles**[(8)] are written and feels that she is getting good information, but one day her friend Marwa over here recommends a different news **site**[(9)]. When Heba looks at this, she sees completely different news stories with a very different point of view. Let's say that on Heba's website there is a big **story** about how angry people are that a local **factory**[(10)] is about to close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't **mention**[(11)] that anyone is angry. The writer has **omitted**[(12)] this information to make us feel differently about the story.

The second type of bias might be **placement**[(13)]. On Heba's website the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the **impression**[(14)] that it is an important story, but on Marwa's website the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it. The third type of **bias is spin**[(15)]. The writer tries to make the reader feel the same way they do about a **topic**[(15)] and doesn't present a balanced point of view. They do this by choosing certain words, for example "**argued**[(17)] the factory **manager**[(18)]" **instead of**[(19)] "agreed the factory manager". Secondly, they choose to include certain information and leave other information out. Thirdly, they give only one point of view. In our example, the journalist gives the reaction of the **staff**[(20)] in the factory but not the managers. It **misleads** [(21)] the reader into thinking it is a bad thing. **On the other hand,** [(22)] in Marwa's story it is presented as a good thing. It mentions that there is a lot of pollution caused by the factory.

1) انحياز
2) انحياز بالحذف
3) حقيقة
4) اقتباس
5) يؤيد / يدعم
6) وجهات النظر
7) يفحص
8) مقال
9) موقع
10) مصنع
11) يذكر
12) يحذف
13) وضع
14) انطباع
15) انحياز بالتلفيق
16) موضوع
17) يجادل
18) مدير
19) بدلا من
20) هيئة عمال
21) يضلل
22) علي الناحية الأخرى



Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. He has admitted .... the police about his movements on the night of the murder.
   ⓐ announcing ⓑ replaced ⓒ impacting ⓓ misleading
2. It's difficult for any of us to look at a situation without some form of cultural ....
   ⓐ path ⓑ bass ⓒ bias ⓓ base
3. The journalist was accused of bias by .... ; he put the story at the top of the page to show it was interesting.
   ⓐ repetition ⓑ omission ⓒ placement ⓓ spin
4. The news story about the match missed out the injured player so there was bias by ....
   ⓐ omission ⓑ mislead ⓒ spin ⓓ inaccurate
5. I hardly .... him with a beard. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ recognised ⓑ realised ⓒ grasped ⓓ understood
6. The movie is historically .... , but well worth seeing.
   ⓐ inaccurately ⓑ inaccurate ⓒ accurate ⓓ accurately
7. Don't fall into the ....of thinking you can learn a foreign language without doing any work.
   ⓐ trap ⓑ tape ⓒ trip ⓓ tribe
8. In the UK it is illegal to drive .... holding a mobile phone.
   ⓐ during ⓑ when ⓒ as ⓓ whilst
9. Don't say anything about my mother's birthday present so that you don't .... the surprise!
   ⓐ hide ⓑ appear ⓒ spoil ⓓ speak
10. I think we can find a .... for you in the accounts department.
    ⓐ palace ⓑ replace ⓒ placement ⓓ site
11. The programme presented a .... view of the two sides of the conflict.
    ⓐ frightened ⓑ balanced ⓒ balance ⓓ bored
12. In his advertisement, he left out the fact that the flat isn't opposite the Nile to make others buy it for a higher price. This is bias by ....
    ⓐ spin ⓑ placement ⓒ omission ⓓ replacement
13. Some women can hardly .... their home lives with their careers.
    ⓐ separate ⓑ balance ⓒ complete ⓓ insulate
14. To .... someone is to make them believe something is not true by providing false or incomplete information.
    ⓐ mislead ⓑ lead ⓒ misuse ⓓ skid off
15. They are divorced, but he has regular .... to the children.
    ⓐ misleading ⓑ restate ⓒ summarise ⓓ access
16. Employers must consider all candidates impartially and without ....
    ⓐ balance ⓑ bias ⓒ biased ⓓ fairness
17. Social media has a negative .... on news and society.
    ⓐ influential ⓑ effective ⓒ affect ⓓ impact
18. The team got together to .... new ideas for the project.
    ⓐ brainstorm ⓑ spoil ⓒ omit ⓓ mislead
19. I'll just .... the main points of the argument in a few words.
    ⓐ mislead ⓑ rescue ⓒ summarise ⓓ afford
20. Efforts to reduce pollution are strongly .... by environmental groups.
    ⓐ trapped ⓑ supported ⓒ spoiled ⓓ warned

21. To .... is to say something again or in a different way.
ⓐ support ⓑ mislead ⓒ summarise ⓓ restate

22. Focusing on information which only supports one side of an argument is ....
ⓐ bias by spin ⓑ bias by omission ⓒ bias by placement ⓓ bias by culture

Exercises on Main Vocabulary

23. The youngest son usually has a special .... in the heart of the family. (2022)
ⓐ punishment ⓑ place ⓒ mark ⓓ budget

24. Janet's been under a lot of .... since her mother's illness.
ⓐ stressfully ⓑ stress ⓒ stressed ⓓ stressful

25. He gets really upset if you .... his baldness.
ⓐ say ⓑ ask ⓒ mention ⓓ tell

26. The evidence was not really .... enough so they let him off.
ⓐ convince ⓑ persuade ⓒ persuasive ⓓ persuasively

27. The manager's speech left a powerful .... on the employees.
ⓐ cause ⓑ excuse ⓒ reason ⓓ impact

28. My brother won the first prize in the writing competition. He wants to be a great...............
ⓐ author ⓑ scientist ⓒ player ⓓ athlete

29. The police .... the terrorists at a roadblock.
ⓐ typed ⓑ taped ⓒ trapped ⓓ tripped

30. .... opinions are based on facts rather than feelings.
ⓐ Injustice ⓑ Unbalanced ⓒ Biased ⓓ Objective

31. His behaviour became worse as he began to feel ....
ⓐ pressure ⓑ stress ⓒ stressed ⓓ stressful

32. He fails to distinguish .... information from fake news.
ⓐ fact ⓑ factual ⓒ factually ⓓ constantly

33. There wasn't much enthusiasm when I .... the trip to the museum.
ⓐ mentioned ⓑ told ⓒ asked ⓓ warned

34. We'll send you a copy as soon as it becomes ....
ⓐ vain ⓑ available ⓒ value ⓓ valuable

35. I'm sure you'll .... sensibly while I'm away.
ⓐ behave ⓑ mention ⓒ trust ⓓ slide

36. When you give .... in court you have to swear to tell the truth.
ⓐ prove ⓑ lecture ⓒ evidence ⓓ presentation

37. The result between Al Ahly and Zamalek was a .... 6-1 victory.
ⓐ impression ⓑ sensation ⓒ sensational ⓓ sensationally

38. For a few .... moments we thought we'd missed the train.
ⓐ glad ⓑ anxious ⓒ pleasant ⓓ cheerful

39. She goes to her doctor for .... check-ups.
ⓐ gradual ⓑ gradually ⓒ regular ⓓ regularly

40. I don't .... them. I'm sure they're trying to trick me.
ⓐ slide ⓑ compare ⓒ trust ⓓ truth

41. Make sure the information is completely ....
ⓐ update ⓑ up to date ⓒ up to data ⓓ down to date

42. 94% of people who took part in the .... said they agreed.
ⓐ survey ⓑ impression ⓒ headline ⓓ editor

43. She didn't work hard enough, and .... failed the exam.
ⓐ although ⓑ as ⓒ consequently ⓓ because

44. That seems expensive - have you .... prices in other shops?
ⓐ compared ⓑ trusted ⓒ proved ⓓ rescued
45. Delays are .... on the roads because of heavy traffic.
ⓐ likely ⓑ unlikely ⓒ like ⓓ unlike
46. All our efforts to .... her were of little in vain.
ⓐ summarise ⓑ restate ⓒ persuade ⓓ slide
47. We can't .... private school fees.
ⓐ offer ⓑ behave ⓒ warn ⓓ afford
48. Try to find a course which will allow you to develop the .... skills employers want.
ⓐ practise ⓑ practice ⓒ practical ⓓ practically

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

49. .... is the synonym of "serious".
ⓐ Lovely ⓑ Friendly ⓒ Tough ⓓ Easy
50. .... is the antonym of objectivity.
ⓐ Equality ⓑ Bias ⓒ Fairness ⓓ Justice
51. "Many of the fans believe that the omission of the team cost us the match." The word 'omission' here can be replaced by ....
ⓐ calmness ⓑ carelessness ⓒ success ⓓ carefulness
52. "She felt curiously unreal, as if she were in the midst of a dream." The adjective 'unreal' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
ⓐ factual ⓑ fiction ⓒ fictional ⓓ imaginary
53. People have different opinions about the use of the internet. Opinions is similar in meaning to ....
ⓐ innovations ⓑ expectations ⓒ points of view ⓓ points of clash
54. On the whole, I think that technology is a double-edged weapon. "On the whole" is similar in meaning to " .... ".
ⓐ on purpose ⓑ on duty ⓒ in general ⓓ in particular
55. He gave us a balanced reason for what happened. The antonym of "balanced" is...........
ⓐ uninterested ⓑ subjective ⓒ unbiased ⓓ biased

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

56. New technology has .... a massive impact on our lives.
ⓐ done ⓑ made ⓒ had ⓓ get
57. We work hard to .... our database up to date.
ⓐ keep ⓑ give ⓒ take ⓓ catch
58. The author tried to .... the whole story in a few sentences.
ⓐ use up ⓑ summarise ⓒ sum up ⓓ b & c
59. He was struggling to understand what wrong he had ....
ⓐ done ⓑ made ⓒ did ⓓ taken
60. I've made a list of names - I hope I haven't left anyone ....
ⓐ up ⓑ out ⓒ down ⓓ on
61. Scientists believe that some animals can communicate .... sign language.
ⓐ in ⓑ with ⓒ on ⓓ of
62. From a political point of .... , the president's visit is very important.
ⓐ scene ⓑ opinion ⓒ view ⓓ review
63. The company is anxious to .... the negative impact of COVID-19 crisis.
ⓐ encourage ⓑ avoid ⓒ follow ⓓ support

64. .... sure that you set yourself a realistic target.
ⓐ Go ⓑ Take ⓒ Do ⓓ Make

65. My husband likes classical music – I, ..., like all kinds.
ⓐ on one hand ⓑ on the other hand ⓒ in the other hand ⓓ on the other arm

66. She .... her responsibilities as a nurse very seriously.
ⓐ does ⓑ gives ⓒ takes ⓓ makes

Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

67. She complained bitterly .... the lack of help she received.
ⓐ about ⓑ of ⓒ that ⓓ to

68. I'm going to complain .... the manager about this.
ⓐ about ⓑ of ⓒ that ⓓ to

69. She left early, complaining .... a headache.
ⓐ about ⓑ of ⓒ that ⓓ to

70. The company is moving to a new .... in Cairo.
ⓐ destination ⓑ location ⓒ sight ⓓ position

71. Can you hold this nail in .... while I hammer it into the door?
ⓐ destination ⓑ position ⓒ site ⓓ location

72. The country is now facing a .... political crisis.
ⓐ serious ⓑ seriously ⓒ seriousness ⓓ strict

73. .... in the field of child psychology warn of the dangers of social media.
ⓐ Experienced ⓑ Imports ⓒ Experts ⓓ Exports

74. If she doesn't want to go, nothing you can say will .... her.
ⓐ persuade ⓑ persuasion ⓒ persuasive ⓓ persuasively

75. Adverts must not create a .... impression .
ⓐ mislead ⓑ misled ⓒ misleading ⓓ misleadingly

76. I've decided .... blue for the bathroom.
ⓐ to ⓑ on ⓒ in ⓓ that

77. Is there any significant .... in quality between these two items?
ⓐ differ ⓑ difference ⓒ different ⓓ differently

78. Liverpool only lost the game because the referee was ....
ⓐ bias ⓑ biasing ⓒ biased ⓓ biasedly

Don't get confused — Think carefully

79. Everyone has .... own dreams in life.
ⓐ his ⓑ her ⓒ theirs ⓓ their

80. One of the .... naughty so the teacher punished him.
ⓐ students was ⓑ student was ⓒ students were ⓓ students has

81. He was killed when his car hit a tree and .... off the road.
ⓐ placement ⓑ omission ⓒ spin ⓓ spun

82. Although meat is .... regarded as a good protein food, it does have drawbacks.
ⓐ in traditional ⓑ tradition ⓒ traditional ⓓ traditionally

83. Everyone was .... by the cleverness of the equipment.
ⓐ impress ⓑ impressed ⓒ impressive ⓓ impression

84. He compared our world .... a stage.
ⓐ for ⓑ with ⓒ of ⓓ to

85. I was .... robbed of my gold watch last night.
ⓐ unfortunate ⓑ fortunate ⓒ unfortunately ⓓ fortunately

Present perfect المضارع التام

الإثبات Affirmation

الفاعل + have / has + P.P.

- They have watched TV.
- Jana has cooked dinner.

النفي Negative

الفاعل + haven't / hasn't + P.P.

- They haven't watched TV.
- Jana hasn't cooked dinner.

السؤال Question

have / has + الفاعل + P.P.

- Has Jana cooked dinner?
  - ✔ Yes, she has.
  - ✘ No, she hasn't.

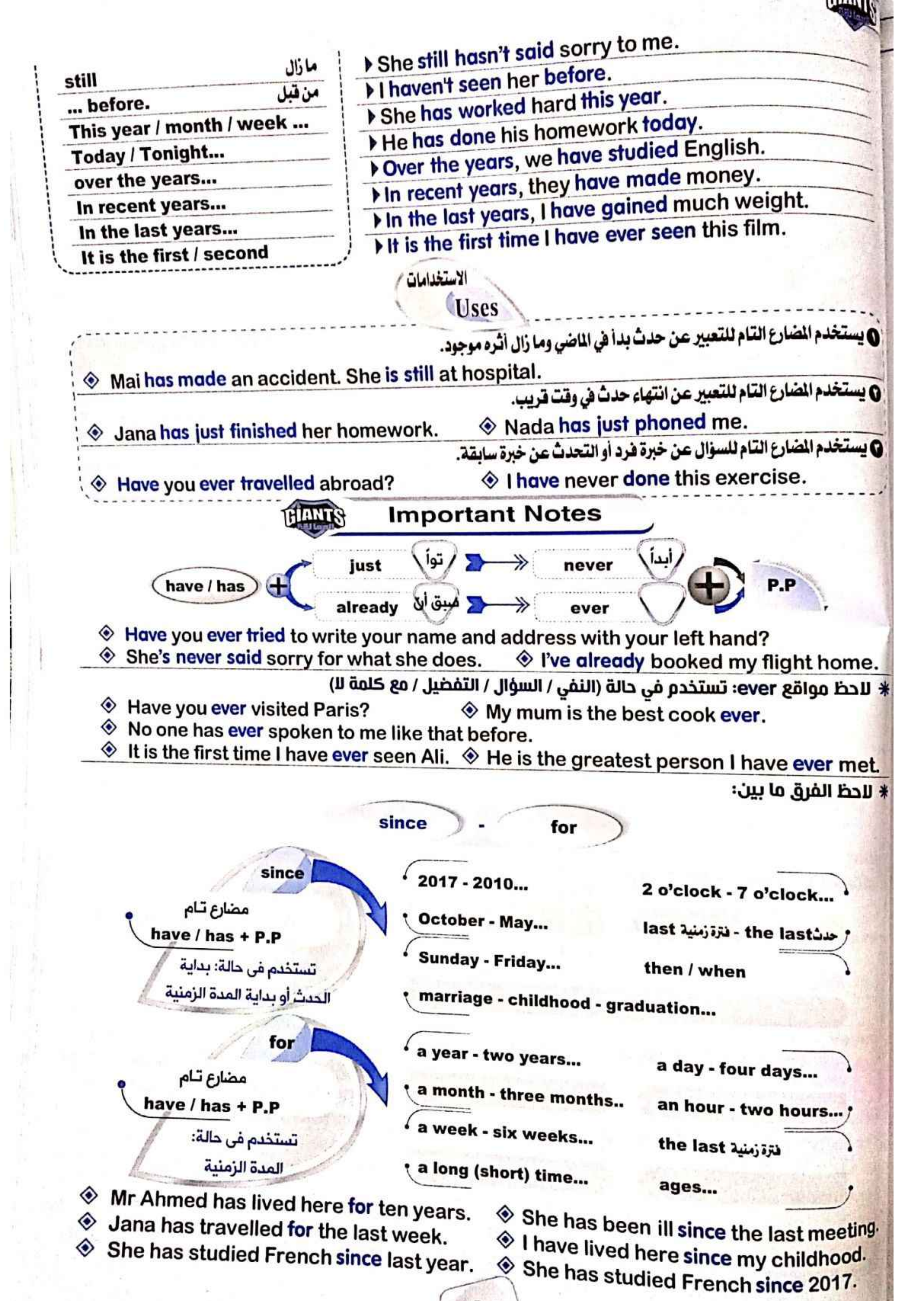
المبنى للمجهول Passive

مفعول + have / has + been + P.P.

- TV has been watched by them.
- Dinner has been cooked by Jana.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

Key word	المعنى	Example
just	تواً	He has just read the novel.
already	سبق أن (آخر الجملة أو السؤال أو بين (have - has + P.P)	I have already visited Luxor. I have visited Luxor already.
ever	تستخدم في (سؤال - نفي - تفضيل)	Has Jana ever travelled abroad? Jana hasn't ever finished her homework. No student has ever come today. "Days" is the best novel I have ever read.
never	أبداً	Seif has never eaten pizza.
yet	حتى الآن / ليس بعد (نفي أو سؤال)	Has he finished his study yet? I haven't finished my study yet.
lately	مؤخراً	They haven't studied English lately.
recently	حالياً / مؤخراً	Jana has finished her homework recently.
so far	حتى الآن	She has cooked the meal so far.
up till now	حتى الآن	They have lived here up till now.
since	منذ	He has travelled since 2010.
for	لمدة	She has studied for five hours.
How long	كم المدة	How long have you worked there?



still	ما زال
... before.	من قبل
This year / month / week ...	
Today / Tonight...	
over the years...	
In recent years...	
In the last years...	
It is the first / second	

- She still hasn't said sorry to me.
- I haven't seen her before.
- She has worked hard this year.
- He has done his homework today.
- Over the years, we have studied English.
- In recent years, they have made money.
- In the last years, I have gained much weight.
- It is the first time I have ever seen this film.

الاستخدامات Uses

❶ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال أثره موجود.

◈ Mai has made an accident. She is still at hospital.

❷ يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن انتهاء حدث في وقت قريب.

◈ Jana has just finished her homework. ◈ Nada has just phoned me.

❸ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة فرد أو التحدث عن خبرة سابقة.

◈ Have you ever travelled abroad? ◈ I have never done this exercise.

Important Notes

have / has + just (تواً) / already (سبق أن) / never (أبداً) / ever + P.P

◈ Have you ever tried to write your name and address with your left hand?
◈ She's never said sorry for what she does. ◈ I've already booked my flight home.

* لاحظ مواقع ever: تستخدم في حالة (النفي / السؤال / التفضيل / مع كلمة لا)

◈ Have you ever visited Paris? ◈ My mum is the best cook ever.
◈ No one has ever spoken to me like that before.
◈ It is the first time I have ever seen Ali. ◈ He is the greatest person I have ever met.

* لاحظ الفرق ما بين:

since - for

since — مضارع تام have / has + P.P — تستخدم فى حالة: بداية الحدث أو بداية المدة الزمنية

- 2017 - 2010...
- 2 o'clock - 7 o'clock...
- October - May...
- last فترة زمنية - the last حدث
- Sunday - Friday...
- then / when
- marriage - childhood - graduation...

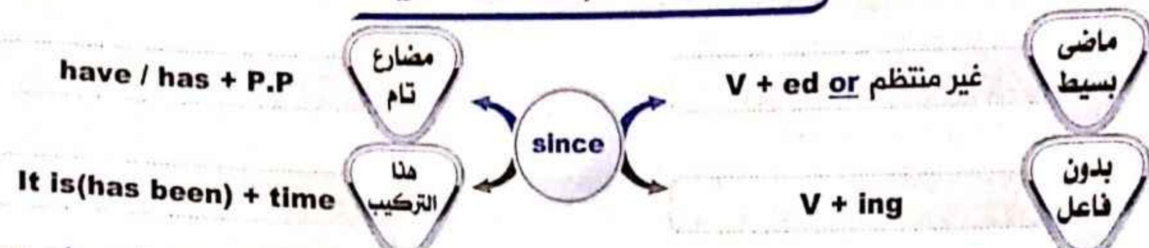
for — مضارع تام have / has + P.P — تستخدم فى حالة: المدة الزمنية

- a year - two years...
- a day - four days...
- a month - three months..
- an hour - two hours...
- a week - six weeks...
- the last فترة زمنية
- a long (short) time...
- ages...

◈ Mr Ahmed has lived here for ten years.
◈ Jana has travelled for the last week.
◈ She has studied French since last year.
◈ She has been ill since the last meeting.
◈ I have lived here since my childhood.
◈ She has studied French since 2017.



يمكن استخدام since كأداة ربط



- I have played this game since I was five.
- She has studied English since she started her school.
- It is a year since I met Adham.
- It is a year since meeting Adham.
- It's a long time since I saw him.

* كلمات تدل على المضارع التام وتأتى في نهاية الجملة أو السؤال.



- Toka hasn't registered for class yet.
- Has she emailed you yet?
- I have finished my breakfast already.
- I have studied French recently.



Important Notes

لاحظ الفرق بين

already / yet

نستخدم already في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى "دهشة" أو الرد علي السؤال ايجابي

- Have you done your homework **already**?
  - That's too fast. (yet ×)

نستخدم yet في نهاية السؤال إذا كان الرد علي السؤال سلبي

- Have you done your homework **yet**?
  - You are too slow. (already ×)

have gone to / have been to / have been in

- I have been to Alex.
  = I visited Alex and came back. (ذهبت وعدت)
- I have gone to Alex.
  = I visited Alex and stayed there. (ذهبت و ما زلت هناك لم ارجع)
- I have been in Alex for 10 years. متواجد و يعيش في الإسكندرية منذ ١٠ سنوات

How long / How long ago

- (How long - **How long ago**) did you study English? ماضي بسيط
- (**How long** - How long ago) have you been studying English? مضارع تام مستمر

for / since / ago / the last time

- The last time I **met** Mai was ten years **ago**.
- The last time I **met** Mai was **in** 2011.
- I **haven't met** Mai **for** ten years.
- I **haven't met** Mai **since** 2011.

لاحظ استخدام for في الأزمنة المختلفة

- He **has lived** in Alex **for** ten years. مضارع تام
- He **has been living** in Alex **for** ten years now. مضارع تام مستمر
- He **lived** in Alex **for** ten years. Now he lives in Beni Suef. ماضي بسيط
- Next year, he **will have lived** in Alex **for** ten years. مستقبل تام
- He **had been living** in Alex **for** ten years before he moved to Cairo. ماضي تام مستمر

لاحظ استخدام since مع المضارع التام والماضي التام

- I **haven't met** Mai **since** I called you. مضارع تام
- I **saw** Mai. I **hadn't met** her **since** I called you. ماضي تام
- I **couldn't** know who asked about me **since** I **had lost** my mobile. ماضي تام

المضارع التام أو المضارع البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية

will مصدر + مضارع بسيط أو تام + after / before / when / as soon as



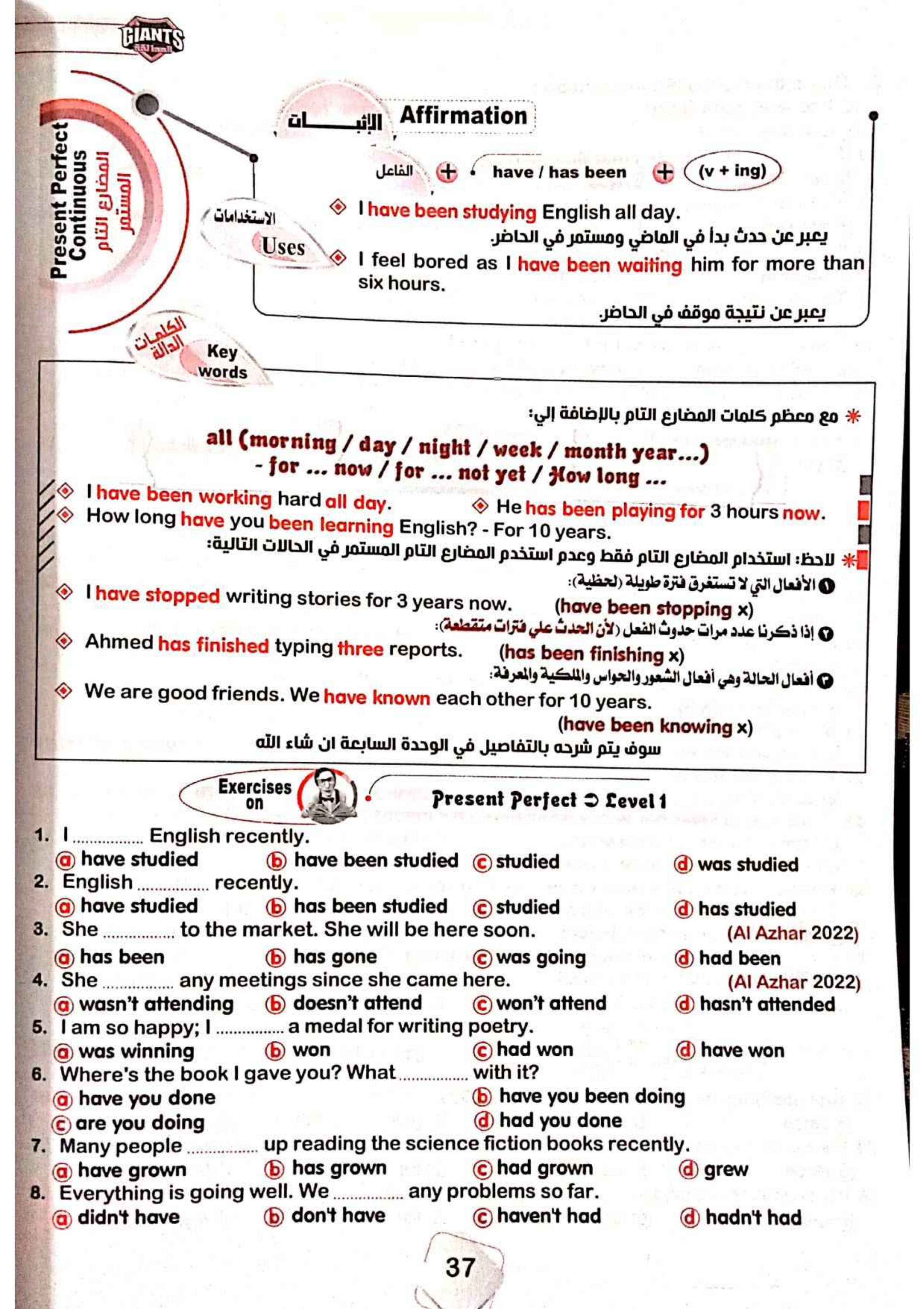
- I'll go to bed after I **do** (**have done**) my homework.
- As soon as she **arrives** (**has arrived**) in London, she will call me.

ماضي تام until مصدر + didn't or مضارع بسيط أو تام until مصدر + won't

- He **won't** come until I **phone** (**have phoned**) him.
- He **didn't** come until I **had phoned** him.

لاحظ الفرق في المعني بين الجمل التالية

- I **have worked** for that company **for** 10 years.
- I **worked** for that company **for** 10 years. (استقلت منها)
- Ali **has just arrived**. كلمة just خاصة بالمضارع التام
- Ali **arrived just now**. just now = a moment ago كلمة تدل علي الماضي البسيط
- I **have never studied** French. لم ادرس اللغة الفرنسية ابدا
- I **haven't studied** French **yet**. لم أذاكر اللغة الفرنسية حتى الآن



Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر

Affirmation الإثبـــات

الفاعل + have / has been + (v + ing)

Uses الاستخدامات

- I **have been studying** English all day.
  يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومستمر في الحاضر.
- I feel bored as I **have been waiting** him for more than six hours.
  يعبر عن نتيجة موقف في الحاضر.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

* مع معظم كلمات المضارع التام بالإضافة إلي:

all (morning / day / night / week / month year...)
- for ... now / for ... not yet / How long ...

- I **have been working** hard **all day**.
- He **has been playing for** 3 hours **now**.
- How long **have** you **been learning** English? - For 10 years.

* لاحظ: استخدام المضارع التام فقط وعدم استخدم المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:

1. الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية):
- I **have stopped** writing stories for 3 years now. (have been stopping ×)

2. إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل (لأن الحدث علي فترات متقطعة):
- Ahmed **has finished** typing **three** reports. (has been finishing ×)

3. أفعال الحالة وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة:
- We are good friends. We **have known** each other for 10 years. (have been knowing ×)

سوف يتم شرحه بالتفاصيل في الوحدة السابعة ان شاء الله

Exercises on Present Perfect ⊃ Level 1

1. I .... English recently.
   (a) have studied (b) have been studied (c) studied (d) was studied
2. English .... recently.
   (a) have studied (b) has been studied (c) studied (d) has studied
3. She .... to the market. She will be here soon. (Al Azhar 2022)
   (a) has been (b) has gone (c) was going (d) had been
4. She .... any meetings since she came here. (Al Azhar 2022)
   (a) wasn't attending (b) doesn't attend (c) won't attend (d) hasn't attended
5. I am so happy; I .... a medal for writing poetry.
   (a) was winning (b) won (c) had won (d) have won
6. Where's the book I gave you? What .... with it?
   (a) have you done (b) have you been doing
   (c) are you doing (d) had you done
7. Many people .... up reading the science fiction books recently.
   (a) have grown (b) has grown (c) had grown (d) grew
8. Everything is going well. We .... any problems so far.
   (a) didn't have (b) don't have (c) haven't had (d) hadn't had

9. This is the most difficult situation I ....
ⓐ had ever been faced
ⓑ have ever faced
ⓒ had ever faced
ⓓ have ever been faced

10. It .... a year since I met Seif.
ⓐ has ⓑ was ⓒ is ⓓ had been

11. It's been 2 weeks since I last .... Sara.
ⓐ phoned ⓑ phone ⓒ have phoned ⓓ had phoned

12. I .... my pen friend yet.
ⓐ don't meet ⓑ hasn't met ⓒ haven't met ⓓ didn't meet

13. Tamer is not hungry because he .... a big lunch.
ⓐ eats ⓑ has eaten ⓒ ate ⓓ eaten

14. They .... what to do for the holidays yet.
ⓐ hadn't decided ⓑ haven't decided ⓒ don't decide ⓓ won't decide

15. Ahmed .... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ has had ⓓ having

16. I have studied French ....
ⓐ yet ⓑ lately ⓒ recently ⓓ b & c

Exercises on — Present Perfect ⊃ Level 2

17. Sally has been working here ....
ⓐ for six months ⓑ since six months ⓒ six months ago ⓓ by six months

18. It's two years .... Joe.
ⓐ that I don't see ⓑ that I haven't seen ⓒ since I didn't see ⓓ since I last saw

19. Finally, my mother............... how to use the internet. Now she can send e-mails.
ⓐ learns ⓑ has learnt ⓒ had learnt ⓓ was learning

20. Everybody .... a chance to talk in the conference.
ⓐ have been given ⓑ were given ⓒ has been given ⓓ has given

21. Many of today's great writers .... as teachers.
ⓐ have also worked ⓑ had also worked ⓒ also worked ⓓ are also working

22. Nothing like this has .... happened to me.
ⓐ up till now ⓑ never ⓒ ever ⓓ recently

23. The last time I saw her was a week ago. This means ....
ⓐ I haven't seen her for a week.
ⓑ I have seen her for a week.
ⓒ I haven't seen her since a week.
ⓓ a & b are correct.

24. He hasn't played tennis since he was in the club last week. This means that ....
ⓐ he played tennis in the club a week ago
ⓑ he didn't play tennis last week
ⓒ he hasn't played tennis before
ⓓ he is still playing tennis in the club

25. It started to rain at 2 o'clock and it is still raining. This means ....
ⓐ It has been raining at 2 o'clock
ⓑ It has been raining since 2 o'clock
ⓒ It has been raining for 2 o'clock
ⓓ It has been raining in 2 o'clock

Don't get confused — for - since

26. She has been writing her novel .... 2021.
ⓐ since ⓑ for ⓒ just ⓓ ever

27. We haven't seen them .... over a year.
ⓐ since ⓑ already ⓒ for ⓓ in

28. It's exactly four years .... I last played football.
ⓐ since ⓑ when ⓒ for ⓓ ago

29. I haven't seen him .... the war.
ⓐ recently ⓑ for ⓒ since ⓓ already
30. Ali has lived abroad .... his birth.
ⓐ when ⓑ for ⓒ while ⓓ since
31. Mai has been ill .... the last week.
ⓐ for ⓑ since ⓒ already ⓓ recently
32. I have had an interest in literature .... the age of sixteen.
ⓐ in ⓑ for ⓒ at ⓓ since
33. .... how long have you been studying English?
ⓐ For ⓑ Since ⓒ So far ⓓ Recently
34. .... when have you lived in your home?
ⓐ How long ⓑ Recently ⓒ For ⓓ Since
35. You can answer the question .... you are a clever student.
ⓐ since ⓑ for ⓒ recently ⓓ already
36. He has been training hard .... the last Olympic games.
ⓐ ever ⓑ for ⓒ just ⓓ since
37. She left London ten years ago, and I haven't seen her .... then.
ⓐ for ⓑ when ⓒ since ⓓ ago
38. It's good to see you again. We haven't seen each other .... a long time.
ⓐ yet ⓑ already ⓒ for ⓓ since
39. Mai is tired .... she has been working hard all day.
ⓐ so ⓑ before ⓒ for ⓓ since
40. .... the last meeting, we haven't seen each other again.
ⓐ For ⓑ During ⓒ Since ⓓ While
41. Al Daifi, Badr and Farouk have been friends .... childhood.
ⓐ for ⓑ so far ⓒ since ⓓ in

Don't get confused — **have gone to / have been to / have been in**

42. Ali .... school. He has just arrived home.
ⓐ has been to ⓑ has been in ⓒ has gone to ⓓ has been
43. My father isn't here. He .... his office.
ⓐ has been to ⓑ has been ⓒ has gone to ⓓ has gone
44. Nada .... Alex for two weeks. She's coming back next Sunday.
ⓐ has been to ⓑ has been in ⓒ has gone ⓓ has gone
45. Have you .... Luxor since you were born? - Of course, I've always lived here.
ⓐ gone in ⓑ gone to ⓒ been in ⓓ been to
46. My father .... in London for more than four years. I really miss him very much.
ⓐ has gone to ⓑ has gone ⓒ has been to ⓓ has been

Don't get confused — **yet / already**

47. Wow, have you done your work .... ?
ⓐ yet ⓑ ever ⓒ already ⓓ never
48. I can't believe it! Have you got the full mark .... ?
ⓐ already ⓑ just ⓒ ever ⓓ since
49. Have you eaten your meal .... ? - No, I am still eating.
ⓐ already ⓑ just ⓒ yet ⓓ since
50. Have you eaten all the food .... ? - You must have been very hungry.
ⓐ yet ⓑ since ⓒ recently ⓓ already



have + P.P / have been + P.P / have been + ing

51. She .... football for about five years.
ⓐ plays ⓑ have played ⓒ has been played ⓓ has been playing

52. No information .... to the new staff yet.
ⓐ has given ⓑ has been given ⓒ hasn't given ⓓ hasn't been given

53. Ahmed .... typing three reports.
ⓐ has finished ⓑ has been finished ⓒ has been finishing ⓓ had been finished

54. I .... my colleagues for many years now.
ⓐ have been knowing ⓑ have known ⓒ had known ⓓ had been knowing

55. Nada .... for thirty-five years and she's still married now.
ⓐ has been marrying ⓑ have married ⓒ has been married ⓓ was marrying

56. by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.
ⓐ has watched ⓑ has been watching ⓒ has been watched ⓓ had been watched

57. Our block of flats .... since 2020.
ⓐ have painted ⓑ has been painted ⓒ has painted ⓓ have been painted

58. You're out of breath. .... ?
ⓐ Are you running ⓑ Have you run ⓒ Have you been running ⓓ Were you running

Don't get confused

Using linking words in the present

59. We won't be able to live on Mars until we .... enough water there.
ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ will be finding ⓓ found

60. After she .... cooling the food, she will set the table.
ⓐ have finished ⓑ had finished ⓒ was finishing ⓓ has finished

61. I'll go to bed as soon as I .... my homework.
ⓐ did ⓑ do ⓒ had done ⓓ has done

62. He .... come until I have phoned him.
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ didn't ⓒ won't ⓓ don't

63. After I have finished my work, I .... home.
ⓐ going to go ⓑ go ⓒ will go ⓓ went

64. I won't be able to read it because I .... my glasses.
ⓐ lost ⓑ have lost ⓒ will lose ⓓ lose

Don't get confused

Think carefully

65. No one .... spoken to me like that before.
ⓐ have never ⓑ has never ⓒ has ever ⓓ have ever

66. Jana .... her key. She can't get into the house.
ⓐ lost ⓑ has lost ⓒ had lost ⓓ losing

67. Jana .... her key. She couldn't get into the house.
ⓐ lost ⓑ has lost ⓒ had lost ⓓ losing

68. I haven't been here for ....
ⓐ some years ⓑ any years ⓒ years ⓓ the years

69. My phone .... very well since I dropped it last week.
ⓐ hadn't worked ⓑ hasn't worked ⓒ wasn't worked ⓓ isn't working

70. Ahmed is starving .... he has eaten nothing for two days.
ⓐ because of ⓑ for ⓒ so ⓓ since

71. He has had three or four temporary jobs since .... school.
ⓐ leaving ⓑ left ⓒ has left ⓓ had left

1 Writing Vocabulary

paragraph (n)	فقرة	supporting sentence	الجملة الداعمة	argumentative	نقاشى/ جدلى
essay (n)	مقال			persuasive	اقناعى / مقنع
article (n)	مقال / أداة / قطعه فنية	closing sentence	الجملة الختامية	evidence	دليل
report (v)(n)	تقرير / يقرر	topic sentence	الجملة الرئيسية	summary	ملخص
review (n)	مقال نقدي	lastly (finally)	أخيراً	details	تفاصيل
introduce (v)	يقدم	sentence (n)	جملة / حكم	facts	حقائق
introduction (n)	مقدمة	statement (n)	عبارة / تصريح / بيان	sequence (n)	التسلسل الزمني
body=bulk (n)	صلب الموضوع / المتن	sum up	يلخص	contrast (n)	تناقض
conclude (v)	يختتم	linking words (transition)	روابط	reason (n)	سبب
conclusion (n)	الخاتمة	indent (n)	المسافة البادئة (أول الفقرة)	result (n)	نتيجة
		due to	بسبب		

2 Chapter one

get breath back	استعاد هدوئه	jump out of skin	خوف شديد	orphan (n)	يتيم
blacksmith (n)	حداد	leg-irons (n)	أغلال	character (n)	شخصية
convict (v)(n)	شخص مدان / يدين	marsh (n)	مستنقع	mist (n)	ضباب
file (n)	مبرد / ملف	set off (v)	ينطلق	guilty (adj)	مذنب
handcuffs (n)	أصفاد	commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	grab (v)	ينزع / يجر / يشد

3 Vocabulary for Translation

achieve (v)	يحقق / ينجز	crisis (n)	أزمة	victim (n)	ضحية
achievement (n)	تحقيق / إنجاز	crises (n)	أزمات	implement	ينفذ
industry (n)	الصناعة	national (adj)	قومي / وطني	reforms (n)	الإصلاحات
trade (n)	التجارة	national income	الدخل القومي	growth (n)	النمو
investment (n)	استثمار	values (n)	القيم	prosperity (n)	الرخاء
murder (n)	جريمة قتل	licence (n)	رخصة	reclamation (n)	استصلاح
prosperity (n)	الرخاء	reinforce (v)	يقوي / يُدعم / يعزز	distance learning	التعلم عن بعد
welfare (n)	الرفاهية	immigration (n)	الهجرة	resources (n)	موارد
flourish (n)	الازدهار	book fair (n)	معرض الكتاب	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
culture (n)	ثقافة	illiteracy (n)	الأمية	violence (n)	عنف
agriculture (n)	زراعة	adjust (v)	ينظم / يضبط / يتأقلم / يعدل	youth (n)	الشباب
disaster (n)	كارثة	civilization (n)	الحضارة	social justice	العدالة الاجتماعية
get rid of	يتخلص من	organisation (n)	منظمة / مؤسسة	artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي





Essay المقـــال

◈ An essay is **a series of paragraphs** that talk about one subject.

* المقال هو مجموعة من الفقرات التي تتحدث عن موضوع واحد ويتكون المقال من ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية:

1. Introduction المقدمة
2. Body الموضوع
3. Conclusion الخاتمة

The persuasive essay المقال الاقناعي

◈ The writer seeks to **persuade / convince** the reader to **support** his specific **point of view** about a topic.

* يسعى الكاتب إلى إقناع القارئ ليدعم وجهة نظره في موضوع ما.

◈ It requires **reasons, facts** and **evidences** on the topic.

* يتطلب أسباب وحقائق ودلائل.

◈ The writer should **support** his **opinion** in a **logical** and **sound reasoning** way.

* يجب على الكاتب أن يدعم رأيه بطريقة منطقية وسليمة.

The parts of persuasive essay أجزاء المقال الاقناعي

Part	Description	
1) The introduction المقدمة	▸ It **introduces** the topic	تقدم الموضوع
	▸ It **presents** both opinions briefly.	تقدم كلا الرأيين بإيجاز
	▸ It **states** your position clearly.	توضح موقفك بوضوح
2) The main body الموضوع	▸ It **can include three** paragraphs.	قد يحتوي علي ثلاث فقرات.
	▸ Each paragraph **contains** topic sentence, supporting statements and conclusion. تحتوي كل فقرة علي جملة افتتاحية وجمل داعمة وخاتمة.	
	▸ They **give examples, details, facts or statistics** to support the writer's opinion.	تقدم أمثلة، تفاصيل، حقائق، أو إحصائيات لتدعيم رأي الكاتب
3) The conclusion الخاتمة	▸ It **summarises** the paragraph.	تلخص الفقرة
	▸ It **restates** and **sums up** writer's opinion in different words.	تلخص وتعيد صياغة رأي الكاتب بكلمات مختلفة.
	▸ It **suggests** a solution or action. تقترح حلا أو إجراء	

The phrases of persuasive essay عبارات المقال الاقناعي

للقيام بـ		نستخدم
▸ to **introduce the topic**	لتقديم الموضوع	to begin with,
▸ to **start the paragraphs** in the body	بداية فقرات في الموضوع	firstly, / secondly, / next, / lastly,
▸ to **introduce the result** of something	لتقديم نتيجة شيء ما	so / consequently / that's why
▸ to **give** an **opinion**	لإعطاء الرأي	personally, / in my view
▸ to **introduce** an **opposite opinion**	لتقديم رأي مخالف	on the other hand
▸ to give a **reason** for something	لإعطاء سبب لشيء ما	due to / because of
▸ to give **contrasting** information	لإعطاء معلومات متناقضة	whilst / but / although
▸ to give **additional** information	لإعطاء معلومات إضافية	in addition to that / as well as that
▸ to **introduce a summary** of the main points	لتقديم ملخص للنقاط الرئيسية	to conclude, / to sum up, / in summary, / finally,



Phrase	The synonym			express	
Although	Whilst	بالرغم من	⮌	contrast	تناقض
Personally	In my view	في رأيي	⮌	opinion	رأي
To begin with	Firstly	أولاً	⮌	introduce a topic	تقديم موضوع
Because of	Due to	بسبب	⮌	reason	سبب
Next	Secondly	التالي	⮌	sequence	التسلسل الزمني
In turn	Consequently	لذا / لذلك	⮌	result	نتيجة
Lastly	Finally	أخيراً	⮌	concluding	ختام
In summary	To conclude	ختاماً	⮌	introduce a summary	لتقديم ملخص

Exercises on Writing

1. We use "Consequently" in a paragraph or an essay to ....
   ⓐ introduce the result of something ⓑ give a reason for something
   ⓒ give contrasting information ⓓ introduce a summary of the main points
2. Which expressions introduce a sequence of ideas in an essay?
   ⓐ In conclusion, Lastly, In summary ⓑ Because of , Due to, Thanks to
   ⓒ However, In contrast, Nevertheless ⓓ Firstly, Secondly, Finally
3. Which expressions can you Not use to start your final paragraph in an essay?
   ⓐ To sum up ⓑ In conclusion ⓒ To conclude ⓓ Firstly
4. We can use " .... " to introduce a summary of the main points.
   ⓐ to conclude, ⓑ to begin with, ⓒ on the other hand ⓓ as well as that
5. When you are writing, you can use " .... " to introduce the topic.
   ⓐ to conclude, ⓑ to begin with, ⓒ on the other hand ⓓ as well as that
6. In a persuasive essay, each main paragraph usually starts with a ....
   ⓐ hook ⓑ supporting sentence ⓒ topic sentence ⓓ bulk
7. We use the topic sentence to introduce the .... of the paragraph.
   ⓐ main idea ⓑ summary ⓒ first idea ⓓ final idea
8. When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing you can say..........
   ⓐ in the other way ⓑ on the other hand ⓒ by the other hand ⓓ on one side
9. When you are writing, you can use " .... " to give an opinion.
   ⓐ consequently ⓑ whilst ⓒ due to ⓓ in my view
10. When you are writing, you can use " .... " to introduce the result of something.
   ⓐ consequently ⓑ whilst ⓒ due to ⓓ in my view
11. When you are writing, you can use " .... " to give a reason for something.
   ⓐ consequently ⓑ whilst ⓒ due to ⓓ in my view
12. When you are writing, you can use " .... " to give contrasting information.
   ⓐ consequently ⓑ whilst ⓒ due to ⓓ in my view
13. We can use "to sum up,... " to ....
   ⓐ introduce an opinion ⓑ introduce the topic ⓒ introduce a summary ⓓ give a reason
14. In the .... paragraph, the writer can suggest doing actions or solutions.
   ⓐ topic ⓑ second ⓒ first ⓓ final
15. You summarise the content of your essay when you ....
   ⓐ develop the main idea. ⓑ write the elements of your essay in detail.
   ⓒ make the end open. ⓓ write the conclusion of your essay.

16. When you conclude writing your essay, you should ....
ⓐ summarize its content ⓒ make the end open ⓑ develop the main idea ⓓ put a hook.

17. A persuasive essay is the one that ....
ⓐ provides a clear, focused explanation of a topic.
ⓑ presents an extended evidence - based argument.
ⓒ tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one.
ⓓ provides a detailed sensory description of something.

18. On ending an essay on unemployment, you can use ....
ⓐ Firstly, we should know what causes unemployment.
ⓑ Moreover, a lot of young people insist on having a job in the city where they live
ⓒ In conclusion, we should all do our best to solve this problem which hinders stability.
ⓓ Above all, we need to encourage the private sector to provide more work chances for

Exercises on Translation

1. In the next decade, most of us will be working online with the help of Artificial Intelligence.

(أ) في العقد القادم ، سيعمل معظمنا عبر الإنترنت بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.
(ب) خلال العام أو العامين المقبلين ، سيعمل معظمنا عبر الإنترنت بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.
(ج) في العقد القادم سيعمل معظمنا مع الذكاء الاصطناعي.
(د) في القرن القادم ، سيعمل معظمنا عبر الإنترنت بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.

2. Online distance learning is a method of instruction, which connects learners wit educational resources.

(أ) يعتبر التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي لا يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.
(ب) يعتبر التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يفصل المتعلمين عن الموارد التعليمية.
(ج) يعتبر التعلم البعيد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.
(د) يعتبر التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.

3. All economic reforms aim to realize high rates of growth and investment in a bid create new jobs for youth.

(أ) تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.
(ب) هدفت جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.
(ج) تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لإبداع وظائف جديدة للشباب.
(د) تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار غالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.

. يجب أن يلعب الجميع دورًا إيجابيًا في تنمية بلدنا حتى تنعم الأجيال القادمة بالرخاء.

ⓐ Everyone should play positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
ⓑ Everyone should play a positive rule in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
ⓒ Everyone should play a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
ⓓ Everyone should play a negative role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

. تنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية العملاقة مثل مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ومحطات الطاقة واستصلاح الأراضي الصحراوية للزراعة.

ⓐ The government is implementing many gigantic national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for culture.
ⓑ The government is implementing many gigantic national project such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture
ⓒ The government is implementing many tiny national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture
ⓓ The government is implementing many gigantic national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture



Exercises on | Great Expectation ⊃ Chapter 1

blacksmith	حداد	▸ a person who makes things from iron, especially
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	▸ to do something which is illegal
convict	شخص مدان	▸ someone who is in prison for a crime
file	مبرد	▸ metal tool with rough surfaces for shaping or smoothing metal
grab	ينزع / يجر	▸ get hold of something suddenly or roughly
get away	يهرب	▸ to have escaped
handcuffs	أصفاد	▸ two metal rings linked together which are locked around a prisoner's wrists
leg-irons	أغلال	▸ two metal rings linked with a chain, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles
marsh	مستنقع	▸ low ground which is usually wet
set off	ينطلق	▸ begin a journey

1. A .... is a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes.
   ⓐ sailor ⓑ blacksmith ⓒ pirate ⓓ soldier
2. To .... is to do something which is illegal .
   ⓐ take on ⓑ give up ⓒ commit a crime ⓓ set off
3. Someone who is in prison for a crime is a/an ....
   ⓐ sailor ⓑ blacksmith ⓒ convict ⓓ prison
4. A .... is a metal tool with rough surfaces for shaping or smoothing metal.
   ⓐ file ⓑ knife ⓒ leg-irons ⓓ handcuffs
5. To .... is get hold of something suddenly or roughly.
   ⓐ set off ⓑ grab ⓒ get away ⓓ make up
6. To .... means to escape.
   ⓐ get away ⓑ set off ⓒ arrest ⓓ grab
7. ....are two metal rings linked together which are locked around a prisoner's wrists.
   ⓐ Handcuffs ⓑ Scissors ⓒ Leg-irons ⓓ Rings
8. .... are two metal rings linked with a chain, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles.
   ⓐ Scissors ⓑ Handcuffs ⓒ Necklaces ⓓ Leg-irons
9. A .... is a low ground which is usually wet.
   ⓐ marsh ⓑ lake ⓒ file ⓓ forest
10. To .... means to begin a journey.
    ⓐ set off ⓑ get away ⓒ convict ⓓ grab
11. The .... along the coast are home to many shorebirds.
    ⓐ deserts ⓑ companies ⓒ schools ⓓ marshes
12. There was a report on the news about an escaped ....
    ⓐ victim ⓑ officer ⓒ convict ⓓ crime
13. I'll set .... early to avoid the traffic.
    ⓐ off ⓑ on ⓒ up ⓓ of
14. I feel so .... about forgetting her birthday. I should have remembered it.
    ⓐ happy ⓑ relaxed ⓒ content ⓓ guilty
15. She used a .... to make her nails look pretty.
    ⓐ file ⓑ hammer ⓒ knife ⓓ pliers

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government aims at setting up .... European university in the new capital.
   ⓐ a ⓑ an ⓒ the ⓓ no article
2. The dogs barked on seeing .... on the water.
   ⓐ themselves ⓑ herself ⓒ himself ⓓ itself
3. Nobody saw what happened, ... ?
   ⓐ did he ⓑ didn't he ⓒ didn't they ⓓ did they
4. My brother likes to .... school activities.
   ⓐ take place in ⓑ take part in ⓒ take in ⓓ take on
5. While I was walking, I met .... boy.
   ⓐ ten-year ⓑ ten years ⓒ ten years' ⓓ a ten-year
6. As far as I am .... , honesty is the basis of trade.
   ⓐ concern ⓑ concerns ⓒ concerning ⓓ concerned
7. The plane took off and quickly started to .... height.
   ⓐ lose ⓑ gain ⓒ beat ⓓ earn
8. Ali .... Rami was very ill.
   ⓐ told ⓑ said ⓒ said to ⓓ asked
9. Don't forget .... our books with you the next time you come.
   ⓐ to bring ⓑ to bringing ⓒ bringing ⓓ bring
10. We were made .... a lot of boring history books at school.
    ⓐ read ⓑ reading ⓒ to read ⓓ having read
11. Her unexpected visit made us ....
    ⓐ confused ⓑ confusion ⓒ confuse ⓓ confusing
12. Unfortunately, the .... of this immune disease is still unknown.
    ⓐ aim ⓑ advantage ⓒ reason ⓓ cause
13. I usually do my homework .... my own; no one helps me to do it.
    ⓐ at ⓑ from ⓒ with ⓓ on
14. Dr Ahmed suggests that I .... on a diet to lose weight and be more healthy.
    ⓐ going ⓑ go ⓒ went ⓓ goes
15. Tourism is a great .... of national income in Egypt.
    ⓐ store ⓑ mean ⓒ source ⓓ origin
16. Success in life is based .... hard work and cooperation.
    ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ at ⓓ from
17. You've .... a great job - thank you Sam.
    ⓐ done ⓑ made ⓒ taken ⓓ given
18. The judge described him as a danger to ....
    ⓐ society ⓑ social ⓒ sociable ⓓ socially
19. Having .... , our homework was marked by Mr Al Daifi.
    ⓐ had done ⓑ being done ⓒ doing ⓓ been done
20. Ali is the boy by .... I was helped.
    ⓐ whose ⓑ who ⓒ whom ⓓ that
21. She received her .... as Mum of the Year.
    ⓐ rewarding ⓑ award ⓒ a ward ⓓ reward
22. I refuse to live under the same roof with that .... man.
    ⓐ kind ⓑ exciting ⓒ interesting ⓓ horrible




A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Her injury .... her chances of winning the race.
   ⓐ compensated ⓑ punished ⓒ ruined ⓓ occurred
2. Downloading music from some websites on the internet without paying is an example of .... and people mustn't do it.
   ⓐ pirate ⓑ bias ⓒ piracy ⓓ incident
3. It is important that your C.V. .... your skills and achievements.
   ⓐ spotlights ⓑ flashlights ⓒ plights ⓓ highlights
4. The editor in chief has the .... to refuse any inconvenient part of the article.
   ⓐ inferiority ⓑ authority ⓒ popularity ⓓ availability
5. The accident that took place yesterday on the main road resulted in a lot of ....
   ⓐ casualties ⓑ solutions ⓒ relatives ⓓ killings
6. Many businesses suffered great losses due to last week's earthquake, so they were .... financially by the government.
   ⓐ depended ⓑ compensated ⓒ mended ⓓ replaced
7. The school principal .... an explanation for my brother's frequent absence from school.
   ⓐ experienced ⓑ misled ⓒ demanded ⓓ qualified
8. Don't worry, sir. The police are going to .... the crime and arrest the suspect.
   ⓐ reregulate ⓑ investigate ⓒ calculate ⓓ appreciate
9. We .... in Helwan for five years only. Now we are living in Mansoura.
   ⓐ lived ⓑ have lived ⓒ live ⓓ had lived
10. He .... playing football. He is fond of football.
    ⓐ use to ⓑ is used to ⓒ was used to ⓓ was used
11. I was working as a volunteer at a shop when I .... at university.
    ⓐ was ⓑ had ⓒ was being ⓓ have been
12. My brother .... a tree when he fell and broke his leg.
    ⓐ climbed ⓑ has climbed ⓒ climbing ⓓ was climbing
13. While I .... in Banha, I met an old friend of mine.
    ⓐ was ⓑ had been ⓒ was being ⓓ being
14. Which of the following is structurally correct?
    ⓐ I have been to Italy and Turkey this year. ⓑ I have been in Italy and Turkey this year.
    ⓒ I have gone to Italy and Turkey this year. ⓓ I has been to Italy and Turkey this year.
15. I started working here in 1998. This means ....
    ⓐ I have started work here since 1998 ⓑ I haven't worked here since 1998
    ⓒ I have started working here since 1998 ⓓ I have worked here since 1998
16. I have had this car .... last year.
    ⓐ since ⓑ when ⓒ for ⓓ ago
17. Which of the following is structurally correct?
    ⓐ I didn't see him since the last time we met.
    ⓑ I haven't seen him since the last time we meet.
    ⓒ I haven't seen him for the last time we met.
    ⓓ I haven't seen him since the last time we met.
18. We can use "due to" to ....
    ⓐ introduce an opinion ⓑ give contrasting information
    ⓒ introduce a result ⓓ give a reason

19. Which of the following sentences can be used to introduce a piece of information that adds to, or supports a previous statement?

ⓐ To sum up, distance learning is most suitable for those who cannot attend lessons or lectures face to face.

ⓑ It is taken for granted that distance learning is a type of learning that is mostly used during a pandemic.

ⓒ However, some students can't interact effectively in this type of learning environment.

ⓓ Moreover, distance learning saves time and effort, which is most useful to those who work while they are learning or live in far places.

20. Which sentence is punctuated correctly?

ⓐ Last year I studied four languages, English, Spanish, German, and Italian.

ⓑ Last year, I studied four languages: English, Spanish, German, and Italian.

ⓒ Last year, I studied four languages; English, Spanish, German, and Italian.

ⓓ Last year I studied four languages: English and Spanish, German, and Italian.

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Are we **underestimating** what robots can do? In some cases, they already perform better than doctors at diagnosing illness. Also, some patients might feel more comfortable sharing personal information with a machine than a person. Could there be a place for robots in education after all? Some education experts think so. They predict robots will do the main job of transferring information and teachers will be like assistants. Intelligent robots will read students' faces, movements. Then they wil adapt the information to each student. It's not a **popular** opinion and it's unlikely robots will ever have empathy and the ability to really connect with humans like another human can. One thing is certain, though. A robot teacher is better than no teacher a all. In some parts of the world, there aren't enough teachers and 9–16 percent o children under the age of 14 don't go to school. That problem could be partly solved by robots because they can teach anywhere and won't get stressed, or tired, or move somewhere for an easier, higher-paid job.

Those negative aspects of teaching are something everyone agrees on. Teachers all over the world are leaving because it is a difficult job and they feel **overworked**. Perhaps the question is not 'Will robots replace teachers?' but 'How can robots help teachers?' Teachers waste a lot of time doing non-teaching work, including more than 11 hours a week marking homework. If robots could cut the time teachers spend marking homework and writing reports, teachers would have more time and energy for the parts of the job humans do best.

21. Robots are .... at diagnosing illnesses than doctors.

ⓐ always better ⓑ never better ⓒ sometimes better ⓓ never terrible

22. According to the passage, one advantage of robot teachers is that ....

ⓐ waste money ⓑ cost money

ⓒ they don't need to rest ⓓ they can't feel empathy

23. Some experts think teachers in the future will ....

ⓐ help robots in class ⓑ teach knowledge to students

ⓒ no longer exist ⓓ mark the homework

24. Robots will probably never ....

ⓐ have human understanding of emotions

ⓑ be intelligent enough to help in education

ⓒ be a popular choice for teachers ⓓ help teachers



25. Which of the following is a true statement?
   ⓐ In most cases robots are better than doctors.
   ⓑ Some people prefer robots to doctors.
   ⓒ Robots can understand emotions.
   ⓓ Robots are better teachers than humans.
26. Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?
   ⓐ Robots can do any job perfectly.
   ⓑ Robots can help improve teaching.
   ⓒ Robots will certainly replace teachers.
   ⓓ Teaching is a difficult job.
27. Some parts of the world ....
   ⓐ pay robots to teach.
   ⓑ have a shortage of teachers.
   ⓒ already use robots in teaching jobs.
   ⓓ make teachers assist robots
28. Robot assistants could help teachers by ....
   ⓐ read students' faces
   ⓑ connecting with humans
   ⓒ transferring information
   ⓓ marking homework and writing reports

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Do you know that saving energy means saving money? Homeowners and renters know this basic fact, but they often don't know what kinds of adjustments they can make in their home and apartments that will result in saving. For those willing to spend some time and money to reap long-term energy saving, an energy audit is the way to go. An energy auditor will come pinpoint areas of your energy use and cost. Trained Energy auditors know what to look for and can locate a variety of flaws that may be resulting in energy inefficiency, including inadequate insulation, construction flaws, and uneven heat distribution.

There are quicker and less costly measures that can be taken as well. One way to save money is to replace incandescent lights with fluorescents. This can result in a saving of more than 50% on your monthly lighting costs. When it's time to replace old appliances, it' s wise to spend a bit more; for an energy-efficient model, and be sure that you are taking advantage of energy-saving settings already on your current refrigerator, dishwasher, washing machine, or dryer. Windows provide another opportunity to cut down your energy cost. Caulk old windows that might be leaky to prevent drafts and choose double-paned windows if you're building, an addition or replacing old windows. Most areas of your home or apartment offer opportunities to save energy and money. The results are significant and well worth the effort.

29. What would happen if we used inefficient appliances? We would ....
   ⓐ reduce our monthly lighting costs
   ⓓ increase our monthly lighting costs
   ⓑ decrease our opportunity to cut our energy costs
   ⓒ reduce our opportunity to cut our energy costs
30. To sum up this passage, we can say saving energy. ....
   ⓐ wastes money
   ⓑ costs money
   ⓒ means saving money
   ⓓ decreases money
31. Mention the difference between using incandescent lights and florescent lights.
   ⓐ Florescent lights save energy and money
   ⓑ Florescent lights increase energy and money
   ⓒ Incandescent lights save energy and money
   ⓓ Incandescent lights decrease energy and money
32. Which of the following is a true statement?
   ⓐ We can't save energy without the help of the energy auditor
   ⓑ We can save energy if the energy auditor doesn't help us
   ⓒ We can save energy with the help of the energy auditor
   ⓓ We can't save energy with the help of the energy auditor

33. According to the passage, the energy auditor' advice will help homeowners and renters to ....

ⓐ waste energy and money
ⓑ use more energy and less money
ⓒ use less energy and more money
ⓓ save energy and money

34. Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?

ⓐ Hiring an auditor will save money
ⓑ The best ways to save energy
ⓒ Replacing windows and light bulbs are well worth the effort and cost
ⓓ Homeowners and renters don't know what to do to save energy and money

35. Double-paned windows could ....

ⓐ increase healing expenses
ⓑ provide efficient energy
ⓒ only be used in new additions to homes
ⓓ only be used as replacement windows

36. According to the passage, an energy auditor doesn't ....

ⓐ fix inefficient appliances
ⓑ check for construction flaws
ⓒ look for problems with heat distribution
ⓓ offer solutions to lower your energy costs

Ⓒ Translation

37. Livelihood is not merely money, but it can be in health and peace of mind.

ⓐ التمتع بالصحة و سلامة العقل هما نتيجة امتلاك المال فعليك أن تحيا بسلام وراحة بال.
ⓑ الحياة هي فقط المال، ولكن سبيل العيش يمكن أن يكون في الصحة وراحة البال .
ⓒ الحياة ليست مجرد مال ، ولكنها يمكن أن، تكون في الصحة وراحة البال.
ⓓ لا سبيل للعيش بدون المال فهو الذي يجلب لنا الصحة وراحة البال .

38. The magnificent hero, Ahmed El Mansy, said these impressive words before giving his life to keep Egypt's greatness, "Protect Egypt, it deserves more."

ⓐ البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحى بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. احموا مصر .. إنها لا تستحق أكثر.
ⓑ البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحى بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. احموا مصر .. إنها تستحق أكثر.
ⓒ البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحى بحياته ليحافظ على مكانة مصر .. احموا مصر .. إنها تستحق أكثر.
ⓓ البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحى بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. احموا مصر .. إنها تستحق أقل.

39. لم تعد الحياة سهلة كما اعتاد عليها أجدادنا، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.

ⓐ Life is no longer as easy as our parents were used to. It has become full of struggle a[nd] severe competition due to our growing aspirations for more welfare.
ⓑ Life is no longer as easy as our ancestors used to. It has become full of struggle and severe competition due to our growing aspirations for more money.
ⓒ Life is no longer as easy as our ancestors used to. Life has become full of conflicts an[d] fierce competition due to our growing aspirations for more luxury.
ⓓ Life is no longer as easy as our ancestors used to. It has become a pile of struggle an[d] competition due to our growing aspirations for more luxury.

40. أثناء مقابلتى الشخصية الأولى للعمل، ارتبكت بسهولة ولم استطع أن أقدم نفسى بطريقة لائقة للمحاور، لذلك امل فى المرة القادمة أن أبلى بلاءاً حسناً.

ⓐ During my first job interviewee, I was easily confused and unable to present himself [in] an elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.
ⓑ During my first job interview, I was easily confused and able to present myself in elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will make well.
ⓒ During my first job interview, I was easily confused and unable to present myself in elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.
ⓓ During my last job interview, I was easy confused and unable to represent myself in elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.

English	Arabic
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية
loss (n)	خسارة
significant	مهم / ملحوظ
overnight (adv)	بين عشية وضحاها
judge (n)	يحكم / قاضي
employer (n)	صاحب العمل / المدير
reference (n)	مرجع
dishonest (adj)	غير أمين
consult (v)	يستشير
edition (n)	الإصدار
deliberate (adj)	متعمد
property (n)	ملكية
offence (n)	جريمة
provoke (v)	يستفز
act (v)	يمثل / يتصرف
persuade (v)	يقنع
leak (n)	تسريب
crash (v) (n)	يصطدم / اصطدام
insurance company	شركة تأمين
particular (adj)	خاص
officially (adv)	بشكل رسمي
death (n)	الموت
explosion (n)	انفجار
scene (n)	مشهد
rescue (v)	ينقذ
severely (adv)	بشدة
spoil (v)	يفسد
society (n)	مجتمع
civilized (adj)	متحضر
behaviour (n)	سلوك
jury (n)	هيئة المحلفين
conflict (n)	صراع

English	Arabic
innocent (adj)	برئ
guilty (adj)	مذنب
maintain (v)	يحافظ علي
bill (n)	فاتورة
major (adj)	رئيسي
unaware (adj)	غير واعي
contend (v)	يتنافس
escape (v)	يهرب
national (adj)	قومي
disease (n)	مرض
percentage (n)	نسبة
lack (n)	نقص
qualifications (n)	مؤهلات
disability (n)	أعاقة
achievement (n)	تحقيق / انجاز
prevent (v)	يمنع
determine (v)	يصمم
winner (n)	فائز
be accused of	يتهم بـ
admit (v)	يعترف
race (n)	سباق
stubborn (adj)	عنيد
struggle (n)	صراع / كفاح
competition (n)	منافسة / مسابقة
welfare (n)	الرفاهية
growing (adj)	متزايدة
severe (adj)	شديد / شرس
magnificent (adj)	رائع
injury (n)	إصابة
drawbacks (n)	مساوئ / عيوب
referee (n)	حكم
target (n)	هدف

كلمات القطع

English	Arabic
homeowners (n)	أصحاب المنازل
renters (n)	المستأجرين
adjustments (n)	التعديلات
apartments (n)	شقق سكنية
audit	تدقيق
auditor (n)	مدقق الطاقة
pinpoint	يحدد بدقة
variety (n)	تشكيلة
flaws (n)	عيوب
inefficiency (n)	عدم الكفاءة
insulation (n)	عزل
distribution (n)	توزيع
measures (n)	الإجراءات
incandescent	ساطع
appliances (n)	الأجهزة
refrigerator (n)	ثلاجة
opportunity (n)	فرصة
leaky (adj)	راشح
significant (adj)	بارز
worth (n)	قيمة
underestimate (v)	يقلل من
diagnose (v)	يشخص
predict (v)	يتنبأ
movements (n)	حركات
adapt (v)	يأقلم
empathy (n)	تعاطف
stressed (adj)	متوتر
overworked	مرهق/ منهك فى العمل
cut (v)	يقلل
reports (n)	تقارير
chance (n)	فرصة



Lessons (1 & 2)



Unit 2 Her story

(1) Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
stereotype (n)(v)	فكرة أو صورة نمطية
prejudice (n)(v)	انحياز/ يتحيز
rank (n)(v)	يصنف / تصنيف / رتبة
role model (n)	قدوة / مثل أعلي
overcome (v)	يتغلب على
defy (v)	يتحدى / يعصي / يواجه
lecturer (n)	محاضر
round (n) (adj)	جولة / مستدير
podcast (n)	إذاعة صوتية
pharmacist (n)	صيدلى
award (n)(v)	جائزة / يمنح جائزة
obstacles (n)	عقبات / صعوبات
contribution (n)	مساهمة / مشاركة
tournament (n)	دورة / بطولة رياضة
court (n)	ملعب / محكمة
physicist (n)	فيزيائى
demonstrate (v)	يثبت / يوضح
honour (n)(v)	يكرم / تكريم

(2) Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
inspire (v)	يلهم / يوحي
inspiring (adj)	ملهم / مثير
inspiration (n)	الهام / وحي / مصدر الهام
qualify (v)	يؤهل
qualified (adj)	مؤهل
innovate (v)	يبتكر
treat (v)	يعامل / يعالج
treatment (n)	علاج / معاملة
confident (adj)	واثق
confidence (n)	ثقة
compete (v)	يتنافس
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة
determine (v)	يصمم / يحدد
determination (n)	تصميم / إصرار
patience (n)	الصبر
patient (adj)	صبور / مريض
impatient (adj)	غير صبور
remarkable (adj)	بارز / ملحوظ
scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
Grand Slams (n)	بطولات تنس كبري
influence (n)(v)	تأثير / يؤثر
impressive (adj)	مبهر / مثير للإعجاب
assume (v)	يدعي / يفترض
spark (v)	يطلق شراره / يتسبب في
extract (v)	يستخرج / ينتزع / يقتبس
equality (n)	المساواة
win (n)(v)	يفوز / فوز
department (n)	قسم
professional (adj)	محترف
mission (n)	مهمة
female (adj)(n)	أنثى
grade (n)	درجة في اختبار
degree (n)	درجة علمية
attend (v)	يحضر
association (n)	إتحاد / رابطة
fuel (n)(v)	وقود / يزود بالوقود
celebrate (v)	يحتفل
generate (v)	يولد / ينتج
encourage (v)	يشجع
mental (adj)	عقلى
majority (n)	أغلبية
attitude (n)	وجهة نظر / موقف

(3) Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
defy prejudice	يتحدي التحيز
defy stereotype	يتحدي الصورة النمطية أو التقليدية
be proud of (to) = take pride in	يفخر بـ
be honoured with an award	يتم تكرم بجائزة
master's degree	الماجستير
reflect the stereotype	يعكس الصورة النمطية
win tournaments	يفوز بالبطولات
make a contribution to	يقدم مساهمة لـ
make (give) a speech	يلقي خطاب
make a decision	يتخذ قرار

Expression	Meaning
name... after	يسمي... علي أسم
break... down	يتحطم / يحطم
qualified in	مؤهل في تخصص
qualified as	مؤهل كـ
believe in	يؤمن بـ
look up to	يحترم
give confidence	يمنح الثقة
do sports	يمارس الرياضة
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة
do research	يقوم ببحث دراسي

4 Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
stereotype	قالب / صوره نمطية	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like, which is often not true in reality
prejudice	ظلم / تحيز	an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you don't have enough knowledge
contribution	مساهمة	something you do to help make something useful
award	جائزة/ مكافأة / يمنح جائزة	a prize or symbol given to recognize an achievement
qualify	يؤهل	successfully finish a training course so you can do a job
role model	قدوه / مثل أعلى	a person young people can look up to and try to be like them
round	جولة	a stage in a sports competition
physicist	فيزيائى	an expert in physics
pharmacist	صيدلى	a person who is trained to prepare medicines and who works in a hospital or a shop
court	ملعب	a place where certain ball games are played
lecturer	محاضر	a person who teaches at university
tournament	دورة	a competition where there are a number of people competing to win a cup or a prize
overcome	يتغلب على	to defeat or succeed in controlling or dealing with something
defy	يتحدى / يعصي / يواجه	to refuse to obey a person, decision, law, situation, etc.
rank	يصنف	to have a position higher or lower than others, or to be considered to have such a position

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
qualified	مؤهل	efficient - experienced	inexperienced - unqualified
prejudice	انحياز/ تحامل	bias - inequality - injustice	justice - equality
confidence	الثقة	trust - determination	distrust - doubt
patient	صبور / هادئ	forgiving - tolerant	impatient - intolerant
defy	يتحدى / يعصي	challenge - disobey - give up	obey - follow
win	فوز / انتصار	victory - success	loss - failure
overcome	يتغلب على	beat - defeat	fail - lose
equality	المساواة	similarity - fairness - balance	inequality - unfairness - imbalance

6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
prejudice	يتحيز	prejudice	انحياز/ ظلم	prejudiced	متحيز / عنصري
contribute	يساهم / يشارك	contribution	مساهمة / مشاركة	contributory	مساهم / مساعد
rank	يصنف	rank	تصنيف / رتبة	ranking	عالي المنزلة
honour	يكرم	honour	تكريم	honourable	مبجل
treat	يعالج	treatment	علاج	treatable	ممكن علاجه
qualify	يؤهل / يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
inspire	يُلهم	inspiration	الهام	inspired / inspiring	ملهم



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

special	خاص (مميز)	private	خاص (ملكية)
be proud of	فخور بـ	take pride in	يفتخر بـ
medicine	دواء / الطب	medical	طبي
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	tournament	بطولة رياضة (مجمعة)
stereotype (n)	فكرة أو صورة نمطية	stereotyped (adj)	نمطي / تقليدي
prejudice (n)	تعصب / تحامل / انحياز	prejudiced (adj)	متعصب / متحيز
mental	عقلي / ذهني	physical	بدني
female	أنثى	male	ذكر
alone	بمفرده	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعي
majority	أغلبية	minority	أقلية
round	جولة / دائري	around	حول
degree	درجة حرارة/ مؤهل جامعي / درجة علمية	grade	مستوى / صف دراسي / درجة امتحان



award
- **award** مكافأة (رسمية) She was **awarded** her PHD in 2020.
- **reward** مكافأة (ودية) I gave him a **reward** as he saved my life.
- **rewarding** مجزي Teaching is a **rewarding** job.
- **a ward** عنبر The **ward** was full of people infected with Covid-19.

encourage
- **courage** شجاعة She showed great **courage** throughout her illness.
- **encourage** يشجع My teacher has **encouraged** and supported me.
- **encouragement** تشجيع We use bonuses as an **encouragement** to the staff.
- **encouraging** مشجع The sales figures are very **encouraging**.
- **discourage** يعوق / يحبط Don't let her comments **discourage** you.

* كلمات الترتيب دائمًا يأتى بعدها to + inf.

the second / the first / the only / the last.  to +inf.

Reading

People who inspire[1] Firsts for Egyptian women

This week, we are celebrating[2] three remarkable[3] Egyptian women who broke down[4] stereotypes[5] and prejudices[6], demonstrating[7] that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.



١) يلهم
٢) يحتفل
٣) مميز / ملحوظ
٤) يحطم / يتعطل
٥) الصورة النمطية
٦) انحياز / تحامل
٧) يوضح / يبين
٨) عالم / باحث
٩) رياضيات
١٠) الطب
١١) يعتبر
١٢) طبي
١٣) معوقات
١٤) يؤهل
١٥) عيادة خاصة
١٦) يعالج
١٧) مريض
١٨) يتقاعد
١٩) يترجم

Hilana Sedarous

Born: (1904 – 1998)

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and scholars[8] believe that she was the first Arab woman to be a doctor, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study mathematics[9] with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine[10] instead. She was considered[11] one of the first medical[12] students to study in England. In 1930, after going through many obstacles[13], she qualified[14] as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a private clinic[15] for women. She was treating[16] patients[17] until she was 70 years old. After retiring[18], she started writing and translating[19] stories for children.

Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa



Born: 1998

Awards: 1st place in the Intel Science and Engineering[1] competition[2], NASA named a planet[3] after her family (Moustafa 31910) recognizing her contribution to science.

Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls, Middle East Technical University.

Yasmeen is a role model[4] for other young Egyptians. Born in Damietta, she defied[5] stereotypes[6] by moving[7] to Cairo alone to attend[8] the Maadi STEM School encouraged[9] by her mother.

The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "unique[10]" honour, adding that her success in the field of scientific research[11] is considered an achievement[12] for all of the Egyptian society, and for Intel which encourages youth to be creative[13].

Yasmeen's winning invention[14] was sparked[15] by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning[16] rice straw[17] gave clean water and also produced a natural fuel[18] which can be used to generate[19] electricity[20]. She says her school gave her the confidence[21] to innovate[22] and to defy prejudice[23]. 'I believe I can change the world', she proudly states.

١) هندسة
٢) مسابقة / منافسة
٣) كوكب
٤) قدوة
٥) يتحدى
٦) الصورة النمطية
٧) ينتقل الي
٨) يحضر
٩) يشجع
١٠) فريد / متميز
١١) بحث علمي
١٢) انجاز
١٣) مبدع
١٤) اختراع
١٥) يلمع
١٦) حرق
١٧) قش
١٨) وقود
١٩) يولد
٢٠) كهرباء
٢١) ثقة
٢٢) يبتكر
٢٣) انحياز / تحامل

2021: A great year for Egyptian women athletes!



2021 was an amazing year for Egyptian female[1] athletes[2]. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, Ferial Abdelaziz became the first female Egyptian to win the karate gold medal[3]. Ferial studied to become a pharmacist[4], and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a bronze medal at the World Championships[5] in Spain and a silver medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco.

أنثى
لاعب ألعاب قوى
ميدالية
صيدلي
بطولة

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympic Giana Farouk won a bronze medal at the same event. Giana had also won a gold medal the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the World Championshi (two in Germany in 2014 and one in Austria in 2016).



Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became the first Egyptian woman to be ranked[1] in woman the top 100 players of the Women's Tennis Association[2] (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she reached[3] the WTA finals in Romania, where she lost[4] to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round[5] of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a match in a Grand Slam tournament.

These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles[6] and challenges[7]. However, they were able to overcome[8] them and proudly[9] put Egypt on the world map[10] of sports. The secret formula[11] for their success was hard work, determination[12] and a lot of patience[13].

يصنف
اتحاد / رابطة
يصل إلى
يخسر
جولة
معوقات
تحديات
يتغلب على
بفخر
خريطة
وصفة
إصرار / عزيمة
صبر



A report about a handball player

In 2021, Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playi top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma h already played for the Egyptian youth team (the under 18s) and befo she graduated, she had played for the junior team (the under 20s). S became one of the best women handball players in the country.

In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke Fatma, she said that in the past, the country had spent a lot of money on the men handball team which helped it to become very successful. She hoped that the spor organisers would spend money on a women's team in the future. She also pointed out th in the past, women had been very successful in other sports, such as Hedaya Malak an Sara Ahmed who won medals at the 2016 Olympics. She said there was no reason wome handball players could not do extremely well too.

Let's hope that soon her dream will come true and that there will be an internatio Egyptian handball team for women over 21. We're sure that they will be very successful!

Read the biography of Dr Tahani Amer

Dr Tahani Amer grew up[1] in a suburb[2] of Cairo. Her love of engineering started while she was watching her father repair a car engine[3] when she was young, although she thought she would study medicine at university. She then married when she was 17 and moved to the USA in 1983.

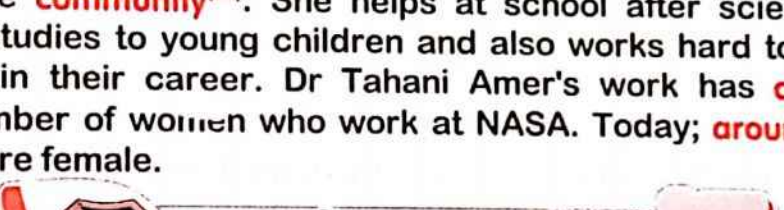
Although she was not speaking any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well[4] in maths and she got top grades[5] in her exams. She took a two-year degree in science while she was bringing up[6] two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got a master's degree[7] in aerospace engineering and another qualification[8] in engineering after that. It is easy to understand why she believes that education[9] is the key to opportunity!

After she moved to the USA, she was determined[10] to work for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration[11] (NASA) and she did some work for them while she was at college[12]. This gave her the experience she needed to get a full-time[13] job there. She became a manager at NASA in 2012. Since 2016, she has worked for NASA's technology department[14].

During her time there, she has helped to program computers and test wind tunnels. She invented a new device[15] and helped solve[16] real-life problems. She now reviews[17] NASA's space missions[18].

While living in the USA, Dr Tahani Amer has also done a lot of volunteering[19] for the community[20]. She helps at school after science clubs, teaches Arabic and Islamic studies to young children and also works hard to help other women become successful in their career. Dr Tahani Amer's work has contributed[21] to the increase[22] in the number of women who work at NASA. Today; around[23] 30% of people who work for NASA are female.

١) يكبر
٢) ضاحية
٣) المحرك
٤) يؤدي جيداً
٥) درجة
٦) يربي
٧) درجة الماجستير
٨) مؤهل
٩) تعليم
١٠) مصمم
١١) ادارة
١٢) كلية
١٣) دوام كامل
١٤) قسم
١٥) جهاز
١٦) يحل
١٧) يراجع
١٨) مهمة
١٩) التطوع
٢٠) مجتمع
٢١) يساهم
٢٢) حوالي / تقريباً
٢٣) تقريباً



Listening

An interview with Mayar Sherif

Interviewer How long had you been playing tennis when you played your first professional[1] match?

Mayar Let's think... I started when I was five, so I had been playing for 15 years.

Interviewer Had you ever competed[2] on clay courts[3] before you played at the French Open?

Mayar No, it was the first time I had played on a clay court in a professional match.

Interviewer Did you think you were going to win the match against Chloe?

Mayar No, to be honest[4], before the match I hadn't been hitting the ball very well. The courts were fast and it was difficult. But little by little I had been playing better and by the time I played against her I felt confident[5].

١) محترف
٢) ينافس
٣) ملعب ترابي
٤) صادق / أمين
٥) واثق

Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Giants' series will .... you for the highest marks.
   ⓐ extract ⓑ stop ⓒ overcome ⓓ qualify
2. It is a/an .... to think that women always do housework.
   ⓐ prejudiced ⓑ stereotype ⓒ stereotyped ⓓ biased
3. You can't rely on his opinion-he's ....
   ⓐ prejudiced ⓑ stereotype ⓒ prejudice ⓓ bias
4. He has been given several .... for his work with handicapped children.
   ⓐ physicists ⓑ courts ⓒ stereotypes ⓓ honours
5. There are few women in the highest .... of the organization.
   ⓐ courts ⓑ ranks ⓒ tanks ⓓ lectures
6. Nadia is a nurse who won a/an.......... in 2020 for her work during the health emergency.
   ⓐ award ⓑ ward ⓒ reward ⓓ rewarding
7. A.......... is a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like which is not true in reality.
   ⓐ stereotype ⓑ contribution ⓒ scholarship ⓓ podcast
8. In order to qualify for scholarships, students must.....skills for academic excellence.
   ⓐ overcome ⓑ demonstrate ⓒ defy ⓓ challenge
9. Eventually, she .... her shyness in class and participated effectively.
   ⓐ overcame ⓑ became ⓒ prejudiced ⓓ ranked
10. A forest fire raging in America is .... all attempts to control it.
    ⓐ contributing ⓑ overcoming ⓒ defying ⓓ ranking
11. We had to wait for the .... to make up her prescription.
    ⓐ podcast ⓑ role model ⓒ lecturer ⓓ pharmacist
12. They were defeated in the first .... of the tournament.
    ⓐ court ⓑ around ⓒ round ⓓ team
13. The .... advised the students to take notes while he was speaking.
    ⓐ interviewee ⓑ trainee ⓒ lecture ⓓ lecturer
14. The students will be playing tennis on.............. number four this afternoon.
    ⓐ court ⓑ caught ⓒ field ⓓ place
15. Egypt participates in many different international.............. .
    ⓐ rounds ⓑ courts ⓒ lecturer ⓓ tournaments
16. Albert Einstein is perhaps the most famous .... the world has known.
    ⓐ physical ⓑ physicist ⓒ physics ⓓ physic
17. Al Daifi wants to be a positive .... for his students.
    ⓐ scholarship ⓑ role model ⓒ podcast ⓓ patient
18. A.............. is a competition where people compete to win a cup or prize.
    ⓐ court ⓑ lecture ⓒ round ⓓ tournament
19. The release of prisoners remains a / an .... in the path of a peace agreement.
    ⓐ scholarship ⓑ challenging ⓒ obstacle ⓓ treatment
20. A .... is something you do to help make something successful.
    ⓐ competition ⓑ contribution ⓒ rank ⓓ association
21. Mo Salah became the first man to be .... in the Association's top 100 players.
    ⓐ risked ⓑ ranked ⓒ left ⓓ beaten
22. He was able to achieve great success despite the .... he'd faced.
    ⓐ obstacles ⓑ awards ⓒ facilities ⓓ ambitions

23. We should reward those who have made significant .... to our society.
ⓐ ammunition ⓑ constitutions ⓒ distributions ⓓ contributions

Exercises on **Main Vocabulary**

24. Although she faced a lot of obstacles, she .... as a doctor.
ⓐ failed ⓑ denied ⓒ defied ⓓ qualified
25. The winners receive .... to continue their education at Cambridge.
ⓐ obstacles ⓑ tournaments ⓒ scholarships ⓓ stereotypes
26. There was a fierce .... for the few jobs available.
ⓐ combination ⓑ competition ⓒ collection ⓓ contamination
27. My father is the person who usually.........me to achieve success; he is my role model.
ⓐ inspires ⓑ aspires ⓒ conspire ⓓ respire
28. I'm afraid it was not a very .... speech.
ⓐ inspire ⓑ inspiring ⓒ inspired ⓓ inspiration
29. There were lots of applications for the job -several of them from well-.............. people.
ⓐ qualify ⓑ qualified ⓒ qualifying ⓓ qualification
30. My elder brother has a .... in Maths from Cairo University. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ decree ⓑ degree ⓒ licence ⓓ permission
31. He's a good teacher, but he is a bit .... with slow learners.
ⓐ patience ⓑ patient ⓒ impatient ⓓ patients
32. Despite all the doctor's efforts, the patient did not respond to ....
ⓐ treat ⓑ treatment ⓒ association ⓓ determination
33. She says she owes her success to hard work and ....
ⓐ determination ⓑ patient ⓒ tournament ⓓ mission
34. Many women lack self-................ to apply for senior jobs.
ⓐ confidence ⓑ confident ⓒ conference ⓓ confusion
35. I am .... about my ability to do the job; I know I can do it.
ⓐ confidence ⓑ confident ⓒ conference ⓓ confusion
36. We can't .... with overseas firms unless we improve the quality of our goods.
ⓐ compete ⓑ competition ⓒ competitor ⓓ competitive
37. Ola's comments .... off a massive argument.
ⓐ celebrated ⓑ sparked ⓒ defied ⓓ qualified
38. In the absence of any other evidence, they................ that the man was innocent.
ⓐ assumed ⓑ denied ⓒ defied ⓓ qualified
39. The questions of the interviewer .... a bias against fat people.
ⓐ awarded ⓑ inspired ⓒ competed ⓓ reflected
40. Women are demanding full................ with men of their community.
ⓐ equality ⓑ equal ⓒ inequality ⓓ quality
41. This new technology will enable them to .... more oil from existing oil fields.
ⓐ compete ⓑ inspire ⓒ defy ⓓ extract
42. That is a .... achievement for someone so young.
ⓐ mark ⓑ remark ⓒ remarkable ⓓ remarkably
43. Cancer has a............impact on the life and well-being of people affected by this disease.
ⓐ significant ⓑ significantly ⓒ impressed ⓓ excited
44. The fact that he is so young makes his achievements even more ....
ⓐ depressed ⓑ impressed ⓒ impressive ⓓ disappointed
45. He is a lecturer in the .... of psychology at Cambridge.
ⓐ departure ⓑ apart ⓒ apartment ⓓ department



46. Public .... towards marriage have shifted over the years.
   ⓐ wins ⓑ attitudes ⓒ scholarships ⓓ altitudes
47. Do not return until you have accomplished your ....
   ⓐ mission ⓑ department ⓒ inspiration ⓓ attitude
48. The tennis tournament has been .... by all the world's leading players.
   ⓐ brought ⓑ intended ⓒ attended ⓓ pretended
49. They held a number of events to raise money for the local community............... .
   ⓐ majority ⓑ qualification ⓒ connection ⓓ association
50. We need someone to .... new ideas.
   ⓐ admit ⓑ award ⓒ attend ⓓ generate
51. We .... our 25th wedding anniversary in Alex.
   ⓐ reflected ⓑ defied ⓒ celebrated ⓓ inspired
52. This treatment is not available in the vast .... of hospitals.
   ⓐ major ⓑ majority ⓒ main ⓓ minority

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

53. Ignorance is the mother of prejudice, whether among nations or individuals. Prejudice is a synonym of ....
   ⓐ bias ⓑ inequality ⓒ equality ⓓ a & b
54. The internet's influence is growing every day. Influence here is an synonym of ....
   ⓐ affect ⓑ effect ⓒ effective ⓓ effectively
55. Encourage and depress are ....
   ⓐ antonyms ⓑ synonyms ⓒ adjectives ⓓ the same meaning
56. We're considering buying a new car. The synonym of "**consider**" is ....
   ⓐ attract ⓑ guard ⓒ regard ⓓ invest
57. I defy anyone not to cry at the end of the film. Defy here means ....
   ⓐ obey ⓑ challenge ⓒ follow ⓓ stick to
58. He is well qualified for the job, but he does lack personality. Qualified here means...............
   ⓐ experienced ⓑ inexperienced ⓒ inefficient ⓓ naughty
59. He managed to overcome his fear of flying. The antonym of "**overcome**" is ....
   ⓐ beat ⓑ defeat ⓒ give up ⓓ get rid of

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

60. All Egyptians are very proud .... this massive engineering project.
   ⓐ on ⓑ off ⓒ of ⓓ at
61. Would you honour me .... having dinner with me?
   ⓐ up ⓑ off ⓒ in ⓓ with
62. This phone is suitable .... people with hearing difficulties.
   ⓐ for ⓑ to ⓒ by ⓓ on
63. The drug .... no effect in curing the illness.
   ⓐ made ⓑ was ⓒ gave ⓓ had
64. I would like to thank our volunteers, who have all............ a contribution in helping to make the park look so beautiful.
   ⓐ got ⓑ taken ⓒ made ⓓ done
65. He was 15 when he started to .... a lot of tournaments.
   ⓐ beat ⓑ win ⓒ conquer ⓓ earn

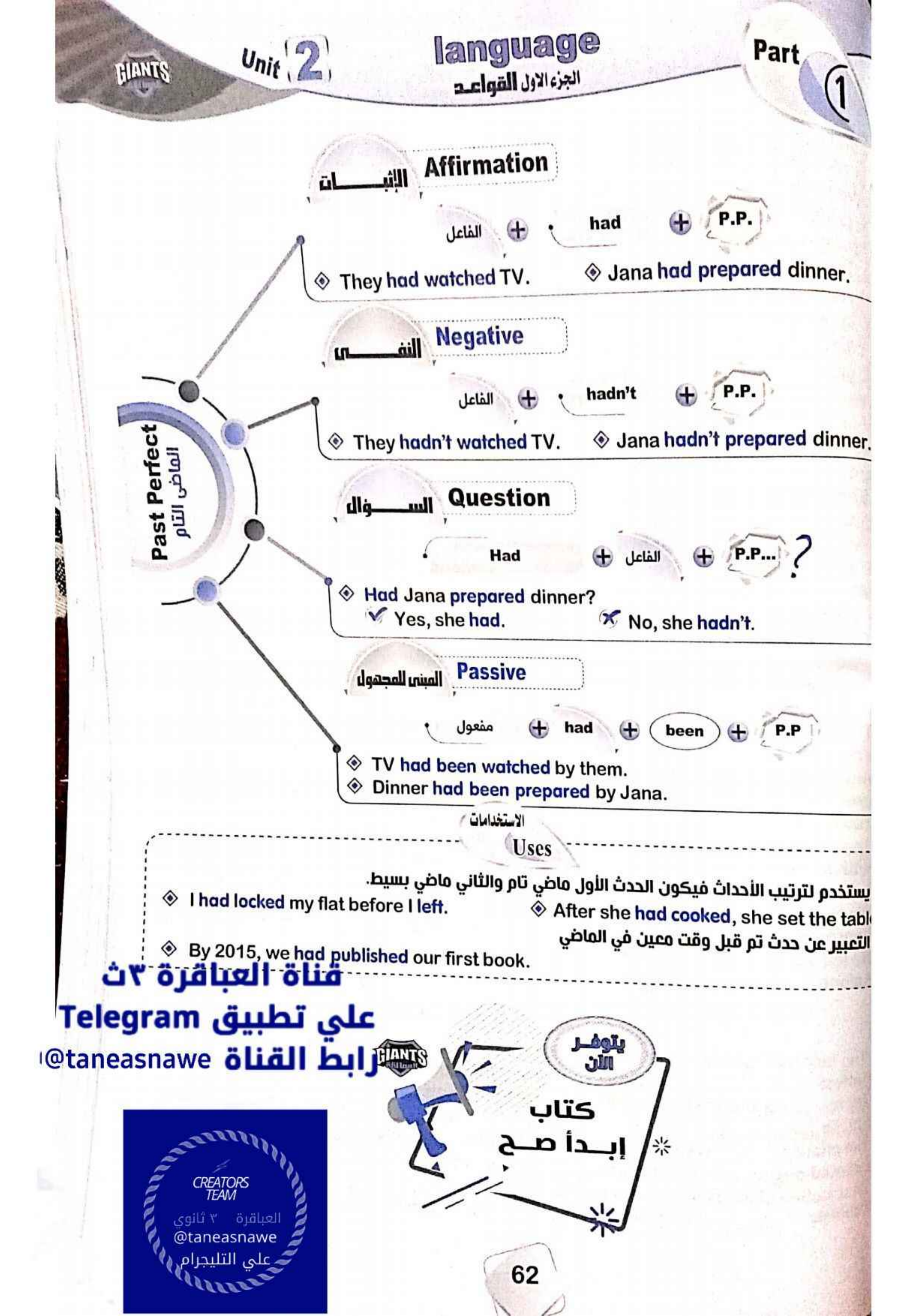


Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

66. Shakespeare made a unique .... to the world of literature.
ⓐ contribute ⓑ contribution ⓒ contributor ⓓ contributory
67. We should all have a sense of .... in our country's achievements.
ⓐ pride ⓑ board ⓒ bride ⓓ proud
68. It was a positive match. The performance was ....
ⓐ impressive ⓑ impressed ⓒ impression ⓓ imprisoned
69. Production standards are................ high.
ⓐ impression ⓑ impress ⓒ impressive ⓓ impressively
70. What .... did you get from your university?
ⓐ grade ⓑ quality ⓒ degree ⓓ licence
71. We were encouraged .... foreign languages at school.
ⓐ to learning ⓑ to learn ⓒ learning ⓓ form learning
72. Nowadays, it's harder to .... work than it used to be.
ⓐ do ⓑ get ⓒ make ⓓ carry
73. She was the first and only woman .... a new school for pilots.
ⓐ join ⓑ joining ⓒ to join ⓓ to joining
74. Her mother .... her to get a good education. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ discouraged ⓑ encouraged ⓒ managed ⓓ bandaged
75. What .... did you get in your maths exam?
ⓐ grade ⓑ qualification ⓒ degree ⓓ licence
76. These drugs are only .... on prescription.
ⓐ value ⓑ valuable ⓒ available ⓓ availability
77. She needs a .... to bring the food.
ⓐ challenge ⓑ lecture ⓒ voluntary ⓓ volunteer
78. The look on her face when I told her was .... enough.
ⓐ rewarding ⓑ reward ⓒ award ⓓ ward
79. Angelina Jolie scooped up the .... for best actress.
ⓐ reward ⓑ rewarding ⓒ award ⓓ ward
80. You must be very .... of your son.
ⓐ pour ⓑ bride ⓒ pride ⓓ proud
81. With a little .... from his parents he should do well.
ⓐ encouragement ⓑ encouraging ⓒ encourage ⓓ discourage
82. We tried to .... him from resigning.
ⓐ encouragement ⓑ encouraging ⓒ encourage ⓓ discourage
83. He led a .... life with few friends.
ⓐ alone ⓑ lonely ⓒ only ⓓ loan

Don't get confused — Think carefully

84. The fact that he's rich and famous had no .... on our decision.
ⓐ affect ⓑ influence ⓒ effective ⓓ influential
85. Try to .... the best of things to achieve your goals.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ made ⓓ go
86. The charity .... a survey of people's attitudes to the disabled.(choose the wrong)
ⓐ carried out ⓑ conducted ⓒ made ⓓ did
87. Destruction of the environment is one of the most serious .... we face.
ⓐ chalets ⓑ challenge ⓒ challenging ⓓ challenges



Past Perfect الماضى التام

Affirmation الإثبات

الفاعل + had + P.P.

◈ They had watched TV. ◈ Jana had prepared dinner.

Negative النفى

الفاعل + hadn't + P.P.

◈ They hadn't watched TV. ◈ Jana hadn't prepared dinner.

Question السؤال

Had + الفاعل + P.P... ?

◈ Had Jana prepared dinner?
✔ Yes, she had. ✘ No, she hadn't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + had + been + P.P

◈ TV had been watched by them.
◈ Dinner had been prepared by Jana.

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم لترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام والثاني ماضي بسيط.

◈ After she had cooked, she set the table.
◈ I had locked my flat before I left.

التعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي

◈ By 2015, we had published our first book.





Important Notes

After + ماضى تام , + ماضى بسيط





- After he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

✳ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل (V.+ ing)

- After **reading** the novel, he **watched** TV.

✳ أو يمكننا أن نبدأ الجملة بـ Having + P.P

- Having **read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

✳ يمكن أن يأتي الحدثين ماضي بسيط في حالة عدم وجود فاصل زمني

- After he **saw** the accident, he **fainted**.



- As soon as he'd **eaten** his meal, he **drank** tea.
- I **didn't swim** because I **had forgotten** my swimming suit.
- She **didn't buy** anything as the shop **had been** closed.



- Before he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

✳ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل (V + ing)

- Before **watching** TV, he **had read** the novel.

✳ يمكن أن يأتي الحدثين ماضي بسيط في حالة عدم وجود فاصل زمني

- I **called** him before he **entered**.



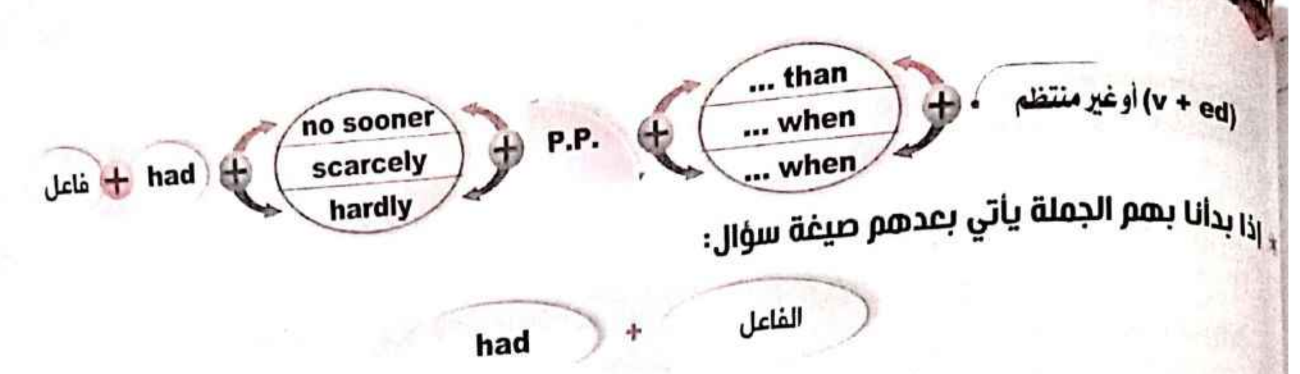
- By the time I **arrived**, the thief **had escaped**.
- When we **arrived**, the film **had already started**.



- By 2015, we **had published** our first book.
- I **hadn't finished** my studies until 2020.



- He **didn't park** his car until he **had found** a place.
- She **never watched** TV till she **had finished** all work.

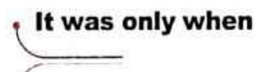


إذا بدأنا بهم الجملة يأتي بعدهم صيغة سؤال:



- They had no sooner finished studying than they went to bed.
- No sooner had they finished studying than they went to bed.
- They had hardly finished painting our new house when we moved into it.
- Scarcely had they finished studying when they went to bed.

يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية في حالة وجود كلمة تدل علي الماضي:









- I wish Toka had studied well last year.
- I would rather he had come yesterday.

يمكن استخدام الماضى التام مع:

already / just / never / yet / before

- When we arrived, the film had already started.
- She had just got home when I phoned her.
- They had never come late before.

It was only when / It was not until + ماضى تام + that + ماضى بسيط

- It was only when I had done my homework that I went to bed.

لاحظ:

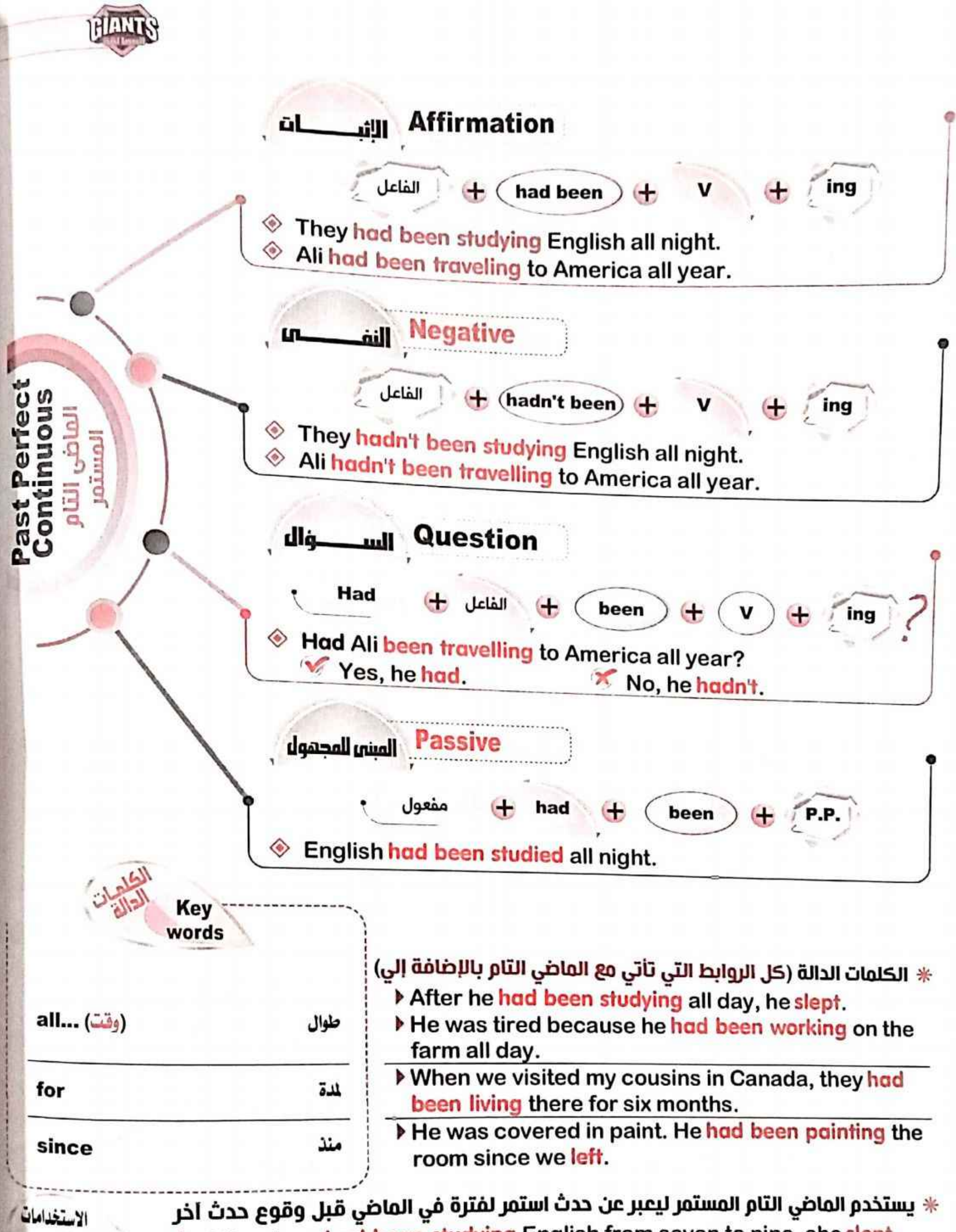
after that = before / before that = after

- He watched TV before that he had done his homework.
- He had done his homework after that he watched TV.

الرابط الزمنى when فى الماضى:

When +

- ماضي تام +ماضي بسيط — When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
- ماضي بسيط +ماضي تام — When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
- ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط — When I arrived, the train left.
- ماضي مستمر +ماضي بسيط — When I fell, I was playing football.



Past Perfect Continuous الماضي التام المستمر

الإثبـــات Affirmation

الفاعل + had been + V + ing

- They had been studying English all night.
- Ali had been traveling to America all year.

النفـــى Negative

الفاعل + hadn't been + V + ing

- They hadn't been studying English all night.
- Ali hadn't been travelling to America all year.

الســـؤال Question

Had + الفاعل + been + V + ing ?

- Had Ali been travelling to America all year?
  - ✔ Yes, he had. ✘ No, he hadn't.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

مفعول + had + been + P.P.

- English had been studied all night.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

all... (وقت)	طوال
for	لمدة
since	منذ

* الكلمات الدالة (كل الروابط التي تأتي مع الماضي التام بالإضافة إلي)
  - After he had been studying all day, he slept.
  - He was tired because he had been working on the farm all day.
  - When we visited my cousins in Canada, they had been living there for six months.
  - He was covered in paint. He had been painting the room since we left.

الاستخدامات Uses

* يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر
  - After Jana had been studying English from seven to nine, she slept.
* حالات لا يمكننا استخدام الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

(1) هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة.

know - believe - owe - want - understand - wish - like - dislike - love - hate - prefer - enjoy - realize

- We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.

❺ لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها.

break down - stop - close - open - finish

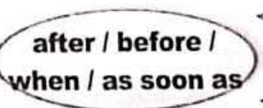
◈ She was late for the meeting because her car had broken down.

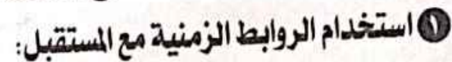
❻ إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم الماضي التام البسيط.

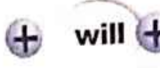
◈ When I met Ali, he had finished typing 3 reports.
◈ He had drunk five cups of tea before leaving.

لاحظ

❶ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل:



+ 

, + will + inf. 

◈ I'll go to bed after I do (have done) my homework.
◈ As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.






→ until مضارع بسيط أو تام
→ until ماضى تام

◈ He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
◈ He didn't come until I had phoned him.

❷ في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (after - before - while - until - since) يأتي بعدهم V + ing

✳ ولكن لاحظ:

Having  + P.P.

◈ Toka was tired. She had slept most of the way since leaving Alex.
◈ I had done my homework before watching TV.
◈ After doing his homework, he watched TV.
◈ Having done his homework, he watched TV.

لاحظ الفرق بين

❸ المبني للمعلوم و المبني للمجهول في الصيغ التالية:

Having +  P.P.  or Having been +  P.P.  (Passive)

◈ Having arrested the thief, the police took him to prison. (active)
◈ Having been arrested, the thief was taken to prison. (Passive)

❹ in - by - until - since

in	...ماضي بسيط ..., سنة ماضية	In 2020, I studied English.
	...مستقبل بسيط ...,سنة مستقبلية	In 2025, I will study English.
by	...ماضي تام ..., سنة ماضية	By 2020, I had studied English.
	...مستقبل تام ..., سنة مستقبلية	By 2025, I will have finished my studies.
until	...ماضي تام ..., سنة ماضية	Until 2020, I hadn't studied English.
since	...مضارع تام ..., سنة ماضية	Since 2020, I have studied English.



⑤ لابد من مراعاة تسلسل الأزمنة.

◈ I went home and discovered that the thief had stolen my money.

* لاحظ أن السرقة أول حدث في الجملة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام

* يمكننا القول أن غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الأفعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام.

(remembered - found out - discovered - realized)

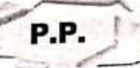
⑥ لاحظ أشكال الماضي البسيط مع:

until - till

- الفاعل + didn't + inf.
- الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + صفة / ظرف / اسم
- الفاعل + wasn't / weren't + P.P (Passive)
- الفاعل + wouldn't + inf.
- No one + التصريف الثاني للفعل



فاعل had



◈ I didn't leave home until my mother had come.
◈ He wasn't sad until he had met his wife.
◈ I wasn't promoted until I had increased my target.
◈ I wouldn't leave the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
◈ No one left the office until they had finished all tasks.

* لاحظ أننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل until - till (مع بعض الافعال):

◈ I waited in the park until I found a vacant place.

⑦ يمكننا استخدم (for - since) مع الماضي التام و الماضي التام المستمر .

◈ I met Mai. I hadn't met her since 2020.

⑧ يمكن استبدال الماضي التام بالماضي البسيط وهذا يعني أنه لا يوجد فاصل زمني كبير بين الحدثين:

◈ After I did my homework, I slept.

⑨ لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر والماضي التام المستمر:

◈ I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
◈ I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.

⑩ لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي في الأمثلة التالية:

◈ I didn't swim because I had forgotten my swimming suit.
◈ I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.
◈ I felt very tired because I had been working all day.

لاحظ الاختلاف في المعني:

▸ When Ali arrived, we had dinner.	وصل علي وتناولنا العشاء.
▸ When Ali had arrived, we had dinner.	وصل علي أولا ثم تناولنا العشاء.
▸ When Ali arrived, we had had dinner.	تناولنا العشاء أولا ثم وصل علي.
▸ When Ali arrived, we were having dinner.	وصل علي أثناء تناولنا العشاء.





Past Perfect ➲ Level 1

1. After he had examined the athlete, the doctor ...... him permission to join the competition.
ⓐ gave ⓑ given ⓒ had given ⓓ gives
2. The train ...... before we arrived at the station. (Al Azhar 202
ⓐ had left ⓑ has left ⓒ was leaving ⓓ will leave
3. He ...... his homework before I arrived home. (Al Azhar 202
ⓐ has already done ⓑ had already done ⓒ already does ⓓ will already do
4. He was angry because he ...... his wallet.
ⓐ had lost ⓑ had been losing ⓒ was losing ⓓ has been losing
5. The musician Chopin ...... his first piece of music before he was eight.
ⓐ had been written ⓑ has written ⓒ had been writing ⓓ had written
6. I ...... about the good news until she had informed me.
ⓐ won't know ⓑ didn't know ⓒ hadn't known ⓓ wasn't knowing
7. Did you finish reading the novel I ...... you?
ⓐ will lend ⓑ have lent ⓒ will be lending ⓓ had lent
8. The hungry boy didn't stop crying till his mother ...... him some food.
ⓐ had given ⓑ was given ⓒ has been giving ⓓ has given
9. ...... eaten, he went out for a walk.
ⓐ After ⓑ On ⓒ While ⓓ Having
10. Having ...... the shopping, my mother started to prepare lunch.
ⓐ do ⓑ doing ⓒ been done ⓓ done
11. I realized that I ...... a silly mistake in the exam when I returned home and check my answers.
ⓐ have made ⓑ had made ⓒ am making ⓓ made
12. They were shocked to discover that someone ...... their friend's car.
ⓐ had hit ⓑ has hit ⓒ was hitting ⓓ hits
13. The tourists ...... a camel before they went to Egypt.
ⓐ have never seen ⓑ had never seen ⓒ had never see ⓓ had been never s
14. When I returned, I was surprised to know that my brother ...... from Saudi Arabia He gave me a wonderful present!
ⓐ hadn't returned ⓑ will be returning ⓒ hasn't returned ⓓ had returned

Exercises on

Past Perfect ➲ Level 2

15. No sooner ...... the medicine than he felt better. (2021)
ⓐ has he taken ⓑ he took ⓒ had he taken ⓓ he had taken
16. Hardly ...... homework when he went out. (Al Azhar 20
ⓐ he had done ⓑ had he done ⓒ he did ⓓ he does
17. I saw Ayten last week. I ...... her since 2020. (2021)
ⓐ haven't seen ⓑ hadn't seen ⓒ didn't see ⓓ don't see
18. When I arrived at the party, Ali .... I didn't meet him.
ⓐ had already left ⓑ has already left ⓒ was just leaving ⓓ was already left
19. Samir was sorry when the furniture factory closed. He ...... there for five years.
ⓐ has worked ⓑ had worked ⓒ has been working ⓓ had been worki

20. He had left when I arrived. This means: ....
ⓐ After I had arrived, he left. ⓑ Before I arrived, he had left.
ⓒ First, I arrived. Then, he left. ⓓ He didn't leave till I had arrived.

21. He'd .... come into the room when he died.
ⓐ better ⓑ rather ⓒ hardly ⓓ prefer

22. I'd rather you .... your car here yesterday.
ⓐ don't park ⓑ didn't park ⓒ haven't parked ⓓ hadn't parked

23. No one ....the office until they had finished all tasks.
ⓐ didn't leave ⓑ won't leave ⓒ had left ⓓ left

24. That was the most difficult position I ....in.
ⓐ have ever been ⓑ had been never ⓒ had ever been ⓓ ever was

25. Until 2018, I ....a new house in my village.
ⓐ won't have built ⓑ haven't built ⓒ won't build ⓓ hadn't built

26. Scarcely ....a new job when he decided to move into a new flat.
ⓐ he had found ⓑ was he found ⓒ had he found ⓓ have he found

27. As soon as I heard about Aya's accident, I ....to the hospital.
ⓐ was hurrying ⓑ had hurried ⓒ hurried ⓓ am hurrying

28. No sooner ....the noise than we rushed to the spot.
ⓐ had we heard ⓑ did we heard ⓒ we had heard ⓓ we did hear

29. Hardly had he fastened his safety belt when the plane ....off.
ⓐ had taken ⓑ took ⓒ has taken ⓓ is taking

30. I couldn't do the shopping ....all shops had been closed.
ⓐ until ⓑ since ⓒ before ⓓ after

31. They ....able to come until I had called them.
ⓐ aren't ⓑ didn't ⓒ won't ⓓ weren't

32. I ....in the park until I found a vacant place.
ⓐ waited ⓑ didn't wait ⓒ won't wait ⓓ never waited

33. As soon as I arrived at the cinema, the film...................
ⓐ will start ⓑ has started ⓒ started ⓓ starts

Exercises on Past Perfect or Past Perfect continuous

34. What had Fatma ....for many years before 2021?
ⓐ been played ⓑ been playing ⓒ played ⓓ playing

35. We..................the committee's proposal for an hour before we reached the final approval.
ⓐ had been discussing ⓑ had discussed ⓒ has discussed ⓓ has been discussing

36. I .... for an hour before my brother came back home.
ⓐ have waited ⓑ had waited ⓒ had been waiting ⓓ has been waiting

37. Before he was 12, my brother .... three languages. He spoke Arabic, Italy and French.
ⓐ learnt ⓑ was learning ⓒ had learnt ⓓ had been learning

38. Mr Ali.................. at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
ⓐ has worked ⓑ is working ⓒ will have worked ⓓ had been working

39. We .... for nearly an hour before the bus finally came.
ⓐ had been waiting ⓑ had waited ⓒ have been waiting ⓓ have waited

40. She .... for weeks before she played the final match.
ⓐ has trained ⓑ been trained ⓒ had been trained ⓓ had been training

41. The fields were flooded because it .... for ten days without stopping.
ⓐ had been raining ⓑ had rained ⓒ had been rained ⓓ was raining

42. I .... all my water before we got to the top of the mountain.
ⓐ drank ⓑ had been drunk ⓒ had drunk ⓓ had been drinking

43. I .... three emails before I left the office.
ⓐ have sent ⓑ had sent ⓒ had been sending ⓓ have been sending

44. He .... in Alex for two years and when his mother died, he moved to Cairo.
ⓐ has lived ⓑ had lived ⓒ has been living ⓓ had been living

45. Having .... our bags, we travelled to Marsa Matrouh.
ⓐ preparing ⓑ had prepared ⓒ to prepare ⓓ prepared

46. I met my friend Tamer yesterday. I.............. him since we were in Alexandria last summer
ⓐ hadn't met ⓑ haven't met ⓒ was meeting ⓓ didn't meet

47. When I returned home, I realized that I .... my mobile phone at school.
ⓐ have forgotten ⓑ had forgotten ⓒ am forgetting ⓓ forgot

48. As soon as I saw the accident, I .... the ambulance.
ⓐ phone ⓑ will phone ⓒ had phoned ⓓ phoned

49. I.................. my own computer for 3 years before anything went wrong with it.
ⓐ had had ⓑ had been having ⓒ have had ⓓ was having

50. As soon as I .... her telephone number, I tried to call her.
ⓐ had been knowing ⓑ was knowing ⓒ knew ⓓ have known

Exercises on Passive in Past Perfect

51. I thanked my friend after the problem ....
ⓐ has been solved ⓑ had been solved ⓒ had solved ⓓ has solved

52. When I returned home that night, I discovered that all my money .... from the sa
ⓐ had stolen ⓑ has been stolen ⓒ were stolen ⓓ had been stolen

53. The police said just now that the windows .... before the thieves went into the building. (2022)
ⓐ had been broken ⓑ have been broken ⓒ were being broken ⓓ had broken

54. He seemed to be exhausted because he .... hard all day.
ⓐ has worked ⓑ had been working ⓒ has been working ⓓ had worked

55. .... of the terrible news, she fainted.
ⓐ Been informed ⓑ After informing
ⓒ Having informed ⓓ Having been informed

56. Having .... , he was sent to prison.
ⓐ been arrested ⓑ arrested ⓒ had arrested ⓓ arresting

57. Last year, we were told at school that gravity .... by Newton the year before.
ⓐ had discovered ⓑ had been discovered
ⓒ were discovered ⓓ had been discovering

58. Because he hadn't paid all his debts, he .... in prison.
ⓐ was put ⓑ had been put ⓒ was putting ⓓ had been putting

59. Security measures .... before the Prime Minister visited the factory.
ⓐ has been taken ⓑ had been taken ⓒ had taken ⓓ has taken

60. I checked what he ....
ⓐ has been done ⓑ has done ⓒ had been done ⓓ had done

Exercises on Using linking words in past and present

61. I'll go to bed after I .... my homework. (Choose two answers)
ⓐ did ⓑ was doing ⓒ had done ⓓ have done ⓔ do

62. As soon as she .... in London, she will call me. (Choose two answers)
ⓐ arrives ⓑ had arrived ⓒ has arrived ⓓ arrived ⓔ was arriving

63. Don't worry, I .... till you come.
ⓐ didn't leave ⓑ won't leave ⓒ will be left ⓓ haven't left

64. Once I .... my homework, I will go to the club with my friends.
ⓐ have finished ⓑ will finish ⓒ was finishing ⓓ had finished

65. I .... till my friend arrives to go to the club together.
ⓐ left ⓑ didn't leave ⓒ won't leave ⓓ am leaving

66. He watched TV after.................. his homework.
ⓐ doing ⓑ was doing ⓒ has done ⓓ had done

67. Once I have reached London, I .... you an email.
ⓐ will send ⓑ sent ⓒ have sent ⓓ will be sent

Exercises on This means & structurally correct

68. I didn't go to the club until I had had lunch. This means: ....
ⓐ First I went to the club, then I had lunch
ⓑ I had lunch after going to the club
ⓒ First, I had lunch, then I went to the club
ⓓ I had lunch while going to the club

69. No sooner had they found her number than they called her. This means ....
ⓐ They called her as soon as they found her number.
ⓑ They found her number sooner or later.
ⓒ They called her number sooner or later.
ⓓ They found her number as soon as they called her.

70. Mike turned off the light, then he went to bed. This means ....
ⓐ Before Mike went to bed, he had turned off the light.
ⓑ Before Mike turned off the light, he had gone to bed.
ⓒ After Mike had gone to bed, he turned off the light.
ⓓ Mike turned off the light as soon as he had gone to bed.

71. When I went to the station, the train had left. This means: ....
ⓐ First, I arrived at the station, then, the train left
ⓑ The train had left before I reached the station
ⓒ I actually caught the train
ⓓ The train moved while I was getting into it

72. Which of the following is structurally correct?

ⓐ I won't go home until I had finished all my work.

ⓑ I won't go home until I finished all my work.

ⓒ I didn't go home until I have finished all my work.

ⓓ I didn't go home until I had finished all my work.

73. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

ⓐ No sooner I had typed the report than I emailed the manager.

ⓑ No sooner had I typed the report than I emailed the manager.

ⓒ I had no sooner typed the report when I emailed the manager.

ⓓ No sooner I had typed the report when I emailed the manager.

74. Which of the following sentences DOESN'T give the same meaning?

ⓐ After he had studied his lessons, he slept. ⓑ After studying his lessons, he slept.

ⓒ Before he studied his lessons, he had slept. ⓓ Having studied his lessons, he slept.

75. Which of the following is correctly structured?

ⓐ My car had been repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.

ⓑ My car had repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.

ⓒ My car had been repair before I arrived at the mechanic's.

ⓓ My car had being repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.

Don't get confused — Think carefully

76. .... for the guests after mother .... home?

ⓐ Was dinner prepared / has returned ⓑ Did dinner prepare / had returned

ⓒ Had dinner been prepared / returned ⓓ Was dinner prepared / had returned

77. First, my brother .... a visa. Then, he booked a flight to Canada.

ⓐ was getting ⓑ has got ⓒ had got ⓓ got

78. .... for a long time before the manager .... ?

ⓐ Have you been waiting/ arrived ⓑ Had you been waiting / arrived

ⓒ Are you waiting / arrived ⓓ Had you waited/ arrives

79. When we saw the hotel, we .... that it was a great place for a holiday.

ⓐ were knowing ⓑ had known ⓒ have known ⓓ knew

80. .... before .... home?

ⓐ Had your room tidied / returning ⓑ Had your room been tidied / returning

ⓒ Had your room been tidied / returned ⓓ Has your room been tidied/ you returnin

81. When Father returned home, my mother .... dinner.

ⓐ was making ⓑ had made ⓒ was being made ⓓ a & b

82. I realised I .... my watch in the office when I .... home.

ⓐ have left / returned ⓑ was leaving / returned

ⓒ left / had returned ⓓ had left / returned

83. If you .... my advice, you would have met your deadline.

ⓐ had taken ⓑ would take ⓒ take ⓓ took

84. .... arrested the thief, the police took him to prison.

ⓐ On being ⓑ On ⓒ Having been ⓓ Having

85. .... arrested, the thief was taken to prison.

ⓐ While ⓑ On ⓒ Having been ⓓ Having

Part 2 (3 & 4) Lessons

Unit 2

Her story





1 Key Vocabulary

cross (adj) (v)	غضبان / منزعج / يعبر	challenge (v)(n)	يتحدى / تحدي	percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية
naughty (adj)	مشاغب / شقي	challenging (adj)	صعب/مثير للتحدى	majority (n)	أغلبية
grumpy (adj)	متذمر/ حاد الطبع	good-natured (adj)	ذو طبيعة جيدة	minority (n)	أقلية
significant (adj)	هام / ذو مغزى	cheerful (adj)	مبتهج / مرح	conclude (v)	يختتم / يستنتج
obvious (adj)	واضح	cruel (adj)	قاسي	conclusion (n)	خاتمة / استنتاج
bar graph (n)	رسم بيانى	miserable (adj)	بائس	eye contact (n)	التواصل البصري



2 Main Vocabulary

reflect (v)	يعكس/ يوضح	pattern (n)	نمط / صيغة	size (n)	حجم
figure (n)	إحصائية/ صورة / رقم	region (n)	منطقة / إقليم	result (n)	نتيجة
wise (adj)	حكيم	raise (v)	يربي / يرفع / يجمع نقود	across (prep)	عبر
generation (n)	جيل	contribution (n)	مساهمة / مشاركة	adventure (n)	مغامرة
argue (v)	يجادل	judge (n)	قاضى	noticeable (adj)	ملحوظ / واضح
fair (adj)(n)	عادل / معرض / منتدى	economic (adj)	اقتصادي	trouble (n)	مشكلة /مأزق
nearly (adv)	تقريبا	march (v)(n)	يزحف / يتظاهر / مسيرة	note (v)(n)	يلاحظ / ملحوظة
obtain (v)	يحصل على / يمتلك	seem (v)	يبدو	author (n)	مؤلف
report (n)(v)	تقرير / يبلغ	similar (adj)	مشابه	purify (v)	ينقي
speech (n)	خطبة/ الكلام	speculate (v)	يتأمل / يتفكر	confirm (v)	يؤكد
disabled (adj)	معاق	especially (adv)	بصفة خاصة	motivate (v)	يحث
around (adv)	حوالي	explain (v)	يوضح / يشرح / يفسر	influence (v)(n)	يؤثر / تأثير
patient (adj)(n)	صبور/ مريض	swing (n)(v)	أرجوحة / يتأرجح	degree (n)	درجة علمية
impatient (adj)	غير صبور / متعجل	vision (n)	رؤية		

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

obvious pattern	نمط واضح
make the best of things	يستغل أفضل استغلال
make / have contact (with)	يجري اتصال مع
give reasons	يعطي أسباب
get into trouble	يقع في المشاكل
developed countries	دولة متقدمة
be right to	يكون محق في
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسف نحو
argue with	يتجادل مع

suitable for	ملائم لـ
related to	متعلق بـ / مرتبط بـ
look after	يعتني بـ
hold back	يعرقل
in conclusion	في الخاتمة
carry on	يستمر
specialise in	يتخصص في
cure for	علاج لـ
focus on	يركز علي



Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
grumpy	متذمر/ حاد الطبع	bad-tempered / easily annoyed
cross	غضبان / منزعج	annoyed or angry
significant	هام	important or noticeable
bar graph	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	a diagram that uses lines or narrow rectangles to show different amounts to be compared
cheerful	مبتهج/بشوش	behaving in a way that shows you are happy
conclusion	الخلاصة/ الخاتمة	the end of something such as a piece of writing
cruel	قاسي	deliberately hurting people or animals
eye contact	التواصل البصري	when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you
majority	أغلبية	most of the people or things in a group
minority	أقلية	a small group of people or things within a much
miserable	بائس /تعيس	extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated
naughty	شقي /مشاغب	doing something that is not right or good, but is not very serious
patient	صبور	able to wait calmly for a long time
percentage	نسبة مئوية	an amount expressed as if it is part of a total which is 100
reflect	يعكس	to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling



Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
grumpy	متذمر/ نكد	in a bad mood - irritable	(good-natured) - cheerful
cross	غضبان / منزعج	annoyed - angry - upset	cheerful - happy - pleasant
cheerful	مبتهج / مرح	happy - glad - pleasant	depressed- upset - gloomy
cruel	قاسي	evil - inhumane - unkind	kind - humane - merciful
naughty	شقي	playful - (badly-behaved)	(well-behaved) - obedient
significant	هام/ذو مغزى	important - notable	insignificant - unimportant



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
suit	يلائم/ يناسب	suitability	ملائمة / مناسبة	suitable	ـاسب / ملائم
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	التحدي	challenging	ـعب / مثير للتحدي
hope	يأمل	hope	الأمل	hopeful	ـتفائل
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة	advisable	ـستحسن / مقبول
reflect	يعكس	reflection	انعكاس	reflective	ـاكس
grumble	يتذمر	grumpiness	تذمر	grumpy	ـتذمر/نكد





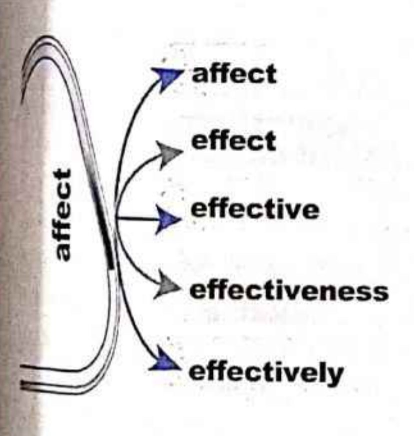
Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

challenge	يتحدي / تحدي	⊃	challenging	صعب / مثير للتحدي
cross	غضبان / منزعج	⊃	across	عبر
tradition	عرف / تقليد	⊃	traditional	تقليدي
quiet	هادئ	⊃	quite	إلى حد ما / تماما
available	متاح	⊃	valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة
recognise	يتعرف علي (شكل...)	⊃	realise	يدرك / يفهم
mental	عقلي	⊃	physical	بدني
similar to	مشابه لـ	⊃	the same (as)	نفس الشيء / مثل
sensible	عاقل / حكيم	⊃	sensitive	حساس / سريع التأثر

raise - rise- arise - arouse

raise (d) + مفعول يربى حيوانات / يجمع مال / يرفع	▸ Raise your hand if you want to answer. ▸ He raised a lot of money for charity. ▸ His friend raises cattle and sheep.
rise (rose - risen) يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص يستيقظ (بدون مفعول)	▸ The sun rises in the east. ▸ I rise at 8:00 in the morning. ▸ When the visitor entered, all students rose.
arise (arose - arisen) يزيد عن الحد / يحتدم / ينشأ	▸ A lot of problems arise because of misunderstanding
arouse(d) + مفعول يثير/ يوقظ	▸ His behavior aroused the suspicion of the police.



affect	يؤثر علي	Smoking affects our health badly.
effect	أثر / تأثير	Smoking has a bad effect on our health.
effective	فعال / مؤثر	Yoga is a very effective technique for combating stress.
effectiveness	فعالية / أثر	There are doubts about the effectiveness of the new drug.
effectively	بشكل فعال	She dealt with the problem effectively.

• As well as + V + ing or اسم ⟶ بالإضافة إلى

فاعل أول + • as well as + فاعل ثان ⟶ فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

◈ Mai as well as her collogues was upset yesterday.





Book of the week

What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration(1) to many of today's female(2) authors(3). The story follows the adventures(4) of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters. Katy had no mother and her father was a busy doctor, so the children were looked after(5) by their kind aunt.



Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient, naughty and liked to have dangerous adventures. One day, she decided to use a new swing(6), although her aunt had told her not to use it because it was broken(7).

Katy fell from the swing and badly hurt her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and cross(8), until she was visited by her cousin Helen.

Helen was disabled(9) and she taught Katy to be patient(10). She also showed her how to behave(11) in a more caring way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and died. Katy became the head of the family. At the end of the book, she had become a wiser(12), better person, and she learnt to walk again.

(1) إلهام (2) أنثى (3) مؤلف (4) مغامرة (5) يعتني بـ (6) أرجوحة (7) محطم (8) غضبان (9) معاق (10) صبور (11) يتصرف (12) حكيم

Report



Female doctors by country

The bar graph(1) shows the percentage(2) of female doctors in certain given countries around the world. **It can be seen that** there is a very significant(3) difference(4) across countries, **from a majority(5) of** women doctors in some countries to a small minority(6) in others.

The country with **the highest number of** women doctors is Latvia, which has **nearly three-quarters(7) of** female doctors, while the country with **the smallest number** is Japan, **where less than a quarter of** doctors are women.

Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Country	Share
Latvia	74.3%
Estonia	73.3%
Netherlands	51.7%
Spain	51.6%
United Kingdom	45.8%
Italy	40.3%
Australia	39.4%
United States	34.1%
Japan	20.3%

Source: OECD Health Statistics 2016

Netherlands and Spain have very **similar(8) numbers of** women doctors; **around(9) half the** doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country Italy has **around 10% fewer** women doctors.

In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures(10) is the big differences across(11) different countries, which do not seem to be related to(12) region(13), or size or economic development(14) of the country. **In other words**, there does not seem to be any obvious(15) pattern(16) to the results(17). **It is especially interesting to note** the very **low number of** women doctors in Japan. **That may reflect** the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

(1) مخطط / رسم بياني (2) نسبة (3) مهم / واضح (4) اختلاف (5) أغلبية (6) أقلية (7) ثلاث أرباع (8) مشابه (9) حوالي (10) شكل (11) عبر (12) مرتبط بـ (13) منطقة (14) التنمية الاقتصادية (15) واضح (16) نمط (17) نتيجة

Percentage of people who agree that things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business.

From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed in India, where the majority of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business. Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that over 70% of people in the less developed countries[1], such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed, while in South Korea, nearly half the number disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect[2] the fact that Japan is a very traditional[3] society[4]. In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.

1) دولة متقدمة
2) يعكس
3) تقليدي
4) مجتمع



Listening

Why don't more girls study STEM subjects[1]? Despite the fact that in most countries there are more girls at university than boys, fewer girls than boys complete STEM university degrees[2]. More girls are in school today than ever before, but they don't always have the same opportunities[3] as boys to choose the education or subjects they want. Too many girls are held back[4] by gender[5] biases, stereotypes, and social norms[6] and expectations[7], which influence[8] the subjects they study. Research has shown that even though girls often get better grades[9] than boys in STEM subjects in lower school, they choose not to carry on[10] studying them later on because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get poor grades.

Well, one answer to this is all-girls schools, where it seems that girls are less likely to conform[11] to stereotypes and tend to[12] be more confident about their abilities. One school in Cairo has gone one step further than this, the Maadi STEM school for girls, is a school which specialises in[13] STEM. It is one of two new secondary schools which have opened in Egypt that focus on[14] STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mamdouh, a 17-yearold girl from the Nile Delta. Like most teenagers[15], she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the scientific research[16] she is doing at her school. Last May, she and two other students took third place in an International Science and Engineering Fair[17], where 1600 of the best and brightest students in the world had presented[18] their ideas. Together these girls have found a way to purify[19] drinking water using 24% less energy than typically used. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in her old school. She says "We do real research. Here everyone's a teacher, and everyone's a student".

The aim of the school is to raise[20] a generation[21] of critical[22] thinkers[23] and leaders[24]. Certainly, the girls at Maadi seem inspired[25] and motivated[26] to become the next leaders. Hoda's ambition[27] after she graduates[28] is to find a cure for[29] Alzheimer's disease[30], a disease which affects[31] the brains of older people.

1) مادة
2) درجة علمية
3) فرصة
4) يعرقل
5) الجنس
6) تقاليد
7) توقع
8) يؤثر
9) درجة
10) يستمر
11) يؤكد
12) يميل الي
13) يتخصص في
14) يركز علي
15) مراهق
16) بحث علمي
17) معرض هندسة
18) يقدم
19) ينقي
20) يربي
21) جيل
22) نقدي
23) مفكر
24) قائد
25) يلهم
26) يحث
27) طموح
28) يتخرج
29) علاج لـ
30) مرض
31) يؤثر



Listening

Ayman: What did you think of the **characters**[1] in What Katy Did, Hany?

Hany: Well, Ayman, I didn't like her aunt. She was always getting **cross**[2] with Katy.

Ayman: She **was right to**[3] be cross with her! Before her **accident**[4], Katy was very **naughty**[5].

Hany: I don't think she was naughty. She just liked to have fun.

Ayman: Yes Hany, but she was **unkind to**[6] her brothers and sisters. They were always **arguing with**[7] her.

Hany: True. But I **felt sorry for**[8] her after the accident. I would be **grumpier**[9] if I was unable to walk.

Ayman: I liked Helen though. She was much better natured than Katy, even though she was **disabled**[10].

Hany: I agree. She was the kindest person in the story. She teaches Katy how to be more **patient**[11].

شخصية
غاضب
له الحق في
حادثة
شاغب
غير عطوف مع
يتجادل مع
يشعر بالأسف نحو
متذمر
معاق
صبور

Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Tarek's little brother is often .... He sometimes hides his father's phone!
   ⓐ well behaved ⓑ kind ⓒ naughty ⓓ patient
2. Mona is often .... before lunch. Once she's eaten, she's quite cheerful again!
   ⓐ cruel ⓑ patience ⓒ patient ⓓ grumpy
3. Hassan's sisters are both very .... They are always friendly and smiling.
   ⓐ kind ⓑ grumpy ⓒ cruel ⓓ impatient
4. The majority of our people are smokers, while the .... don't smoke at all.
   ⓐ minority ⓑ minor ⓒ miniature ⓓ minaret
5. Some boys were very .... outside the school. They were throwing stones at a cat.
   ⓐ well behaved ⓑ cruel ⓒ kind ⓓ patient
6. My neighbour is easily irritated; he is ....
   ⓐ quiet ⓑ modest ⓒ tolerate ⓓ grumpy
7. Now that's .... - don't throw food on the floor!
   ⓐ cheerful ⓑ naughty ⓒ kind ⓓ good natured
8. The bar .... shows the number of drivers killed in motor vehicle accidents by age.
   ⓐ gap ⓑ grape ⓒ graph ⓓ grab
9. I have had a .... and rewarding career as a teacher. It is so hard.
   ⓐ challenging ⓑ challenge ⓒ simple ⓓ disabled
10. Everyone likes Mike because he's always so ....
    ⓐ cruel ⓑ grumpy ⓒ good-natured ⓓ naughty
11. Basically, I'm .... and I can't think and I can't get any work done.
    ⓐ miserable ⓑ cheerful ⓒ patient ⓓ talented
12. Does a good salary .... how important you are to your employer?
    ⓐ reflate ⓑ speculate ⓒ inflate ⓓ reflect
13. He is praised because he has faced many .... during his journey to success.
    ⓐ respects ⓑ chances ⓒ challenges ⓓ prohibitions

14. Egypt has begun to introduce facilities to the .... people in all fields.
ⓐ bored ⓑ disabled ⓒ devised ⓓ revised
15. A high .... of our students pass their driving test for the first time.
ⓐ percent ⓑ collocation ⓒ percentage ⓓ sum
16. Only a tiny .... of the population ever actually commit a crime.
ⓐ patience ⓑ quality ⓒ majority ⓓ minority
17. According to .... published recently, more people are in serious debt.
ⓐ figures ⓑ authors ⓒ fingers ⓓ planes
18. As she was crying, it was .... that she is upset.
ⓐ unclear ⓑ unobvious ⓒ obvious ⓓ obviously
19. It's no good being .... with small children.
ⓐ patient ⓑ impatient ⓒ impatiently ⓓ patiently
20. A .... number of customers complained about the service.
ⓐ disabled ⓑ cheerful ⓒ patient ⓓ significant
21. If you are a grumpy person, then you are ....
ⓐ good-tempered ⓑ bad-tempered ⓒ patient ⓓ well-behaved

Exercises on Main Vocabulary

22. My best friend is always very .... He always gets grumpy.
ⓐ pleased ⓑ cheerful ⓒ glad ⓓ cross
23. It was .... to everyone that the child had been badly treated.
ⓐ hopeful ⓑ obvious ⓒ medical ⓓ private
24. Her ambition was to become an established ....
ⓐ confidence ⓑ layer ⓒ author ⓓ lecture
25. Lots of Egyptian scientists have made .... to new innovations.
ⓐ contaminations ⓑ contributions ⓒ contradictions ⓓ distributions
26. Today, information is easily .... from the internet.
ⓐ come out ⓑ robbed ⓒ uploaded ⓓ obtained
27. There are different .... of marriage in different societies.
ⓐ patterns ⓑ parents ⓒ partners ⓓ patter
28. The soldiers were tired after their long ....
ⓐ confidence ⓑ march ⓒ percentage ⓓ reflect
29. He writes exciting .... stories for children.
ⓐ advert ⓑ adventurer ⓒ advantage ⓓ adventure
30. One of the functions of the kidneys is to .... the blood.
ⓐ reflect ⓑ purify ⓒ pollute ⓓ damage
31. The plan is designed to .... employees to work more efficiently.
ⓐ motivate ⓑ discourage ⓒ prevent ⓓ hinder
32. Police .... their investigation and a 39-year-old man was charged with the murder.
ⓐ argued ⓑ reflected ⓒ concluded ⓓ marched
33. Why should I have to do all the cleaning? It's not ....!
ⓐ lair ⓑ fire ⓒ fear ⓓ fair
34. You should .... older people with respect.
ⓐ heal ⓑ treat ⓒ cure ⓓ tease
35. No effective .... exists for this highly infectious disease.
ⓐ treat ⓑ treatment ⓒ heal ⓓ care

36. The .... is just as an important part of your essay as the introduction.

ⓐ conclusion ⓑ explosion ⓒ treatment ⓓ exclusion

37. If you're telling the truth, why are you avoiding eye .... with me?

ⓐ communicate ⓑ connect ⓒ contract ⓓ contact

38. The test should be an opportunity for students to .... their knowledge.

ⓐ seem ⓑ demonstrate ⓒ treat ⓓ disappear

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

39. It might be obvious to you, but it isn't to me. The antonym of "**obvious**" is ....

ⓐ clear ⓑ unclear ⓒ clean ⓓ simple

40. Worried and anxious are ....

ⓐ adverbs ⓑ opposites ⓒ antonyms ⓓ synonymes

41. I hadn't had enough sleep and was feeling a bit grumpy. Grumpy is a synonym for ......

ⓐ in a bad mood ⓑ in a good mood ⓒ glad ⓓ pleasant

42. "My Dad gets cross with me if I leave the kitchen in a mess." The adjective 'cross' in this sentence is antonymous with.............. .

ⓐ grumpy ⓑ very angry ⓒ annoyed ⓓ cheerful

43. "Now that's naughty - you mustn't throw food on the floor!" The word 'naughty' here can be replaced by ....

ⓐ respect ⓑ well-natured ⓒ badly-behaved ⓓ well-behaved

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

44. All my teachers encourage you to .... something of myself

ⓐ get ⓑ take ⓒ make ⓓ do

45. This phone is suitable .... people with hearing difficulties.

ⓐ on ⓑ for ⓒ to ⓓ off

46. You can .... well to take some professional advice on this matter.

ⓐ get ⓑ give ⓒ do ⓓ make

47. As an archeologist, my grandpa made many great contributions..... ancient discoveri

ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ in ⓓ to

48. At work time, you must .... on your responsibilities to finish your tasks on time.

ⓐ focus ⓑ look ⓒ rely ⓓ agree

49. The president .... a speech expressing his determination to rebuild the econom

ⓐ took ⓑ gave ⓒ made ⓓ b & c

50. Hard work is not always related .... high income.

ⓐ on ⓑ for ⓒ to ⓓ off

51. I'd like everyone to .... a contribution in the discussion.

ⓐ go ⓑ do ⓒ take ⓓ make

Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

52. Your opinion will not .... my decision. (Choose two Answers)

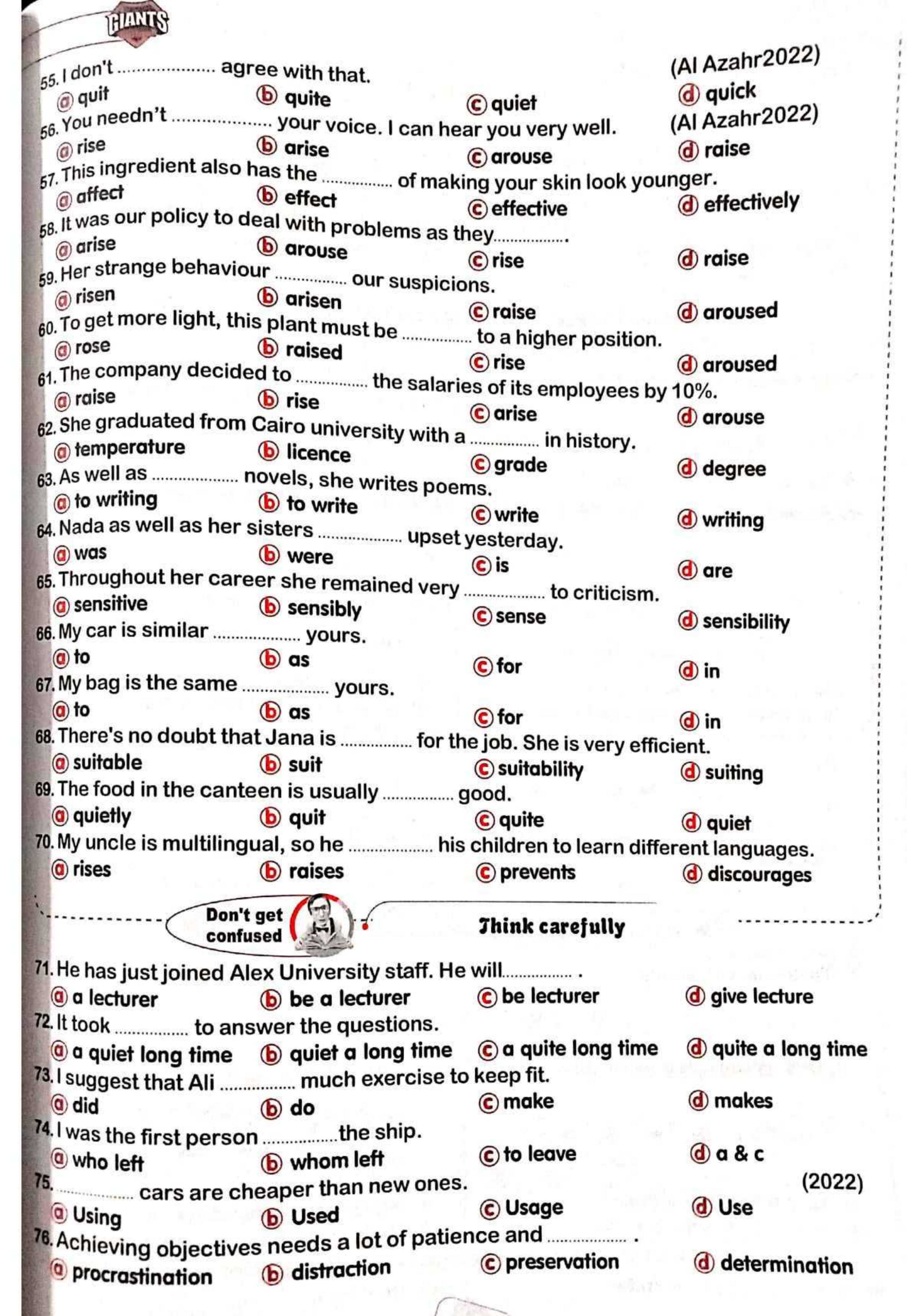
ⓐ effectively ⓑ effective ⓒ affect ⓓ influence ⓔ effect

53. The project has had a direct .... on the lives of one million people. (Choose 2)

ⓐ effectively ⓑ effective ⓒ affect ⓓ influence ⓔ effect

54. There is no .... for cancer, but symptoms can be managed. (2022)

ⓐ cure ⓑ treat ⓒ heal ⓓ way



55. I don't .... agree with that. (Al Azahr2022)
ⓐ quit ⓑ quite ⓒ quiet ⓓ quick

56. You needn't .... your voice. I can hear you very well. (Al Azahr2022)
ⓐ rise ⓑ arise ⓒ arouse ⓓ raise

57. This ingredient also has the .... of making your skin look younger.
ⓐ affect ⓑ effect ⓒ effective ⓓ effectively

58. It was our policy to deal with problems as they.................
ⓐ arise ⓑ arouse ⓒ rise ⓓ raise

59. Her strange behaviour .... our suspicions.
ⓐ risen ⓑ arisen ⓒ raise ⓓ aroused

60. To get more light, this plant must be .... to a higher position.
ⓐ rose ⓑ raised ⓒ rise ⓓ aroused

61. The company decided to .... the salaries of its employees by 10%.
ⓐ raise ⓑ rise ⓒ arise ⓓ arouse

62. She graduated from Cairo university with a .... in history.
ⓐ temperature ⓑ licence ⓒ grade ⓓ degree

63. As well as .... novels, she writes poems.
ⓐ to writing ⓑ to write ⓒ write ⓓ writing

64. Nada as well as her sisters .... upset yesterday.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ is ⓓ are

65. Throughout her career she remained very .... to criticism.
ⓐ sensitive ⓑ sensibly ⓒ sense ⓓ sensibility

66. My car is similar .... yours.
ⓐ to ⓑ as ⓒ for ⓓ in

67. My bag is the same .... yours.
ⓐ to ⓑ as ⓒ for ⓓ in

68. There's no doubt that Jana is .... for the job. She is very efficient.
ⓐ suitable ⓑ suit ⓒ suitability ⓓ suiting

69. The food in the canteen is usually .... good.
ⓐ quietly ⓑ quit ⓒ quite ⓓ quiet

70. My uncle is multilingual, so he .... his children to learn different languages.
ⓐ rises ⓑ raises ⓒ prevents ⓓ discourages

Don't get confused

Think carefully

71. He has just joined Alex University staff. He will................ .
ⓐ a lecturer ⓑ be a lecturer ⓒ be lecturer ⓓ give lecture

72. It took .... to answer the questions.
ⓐ a quiet long time ⓑ quiet a long time ⓒ a quite long time ⓓ quite a long time

73. I suggest that Ali .... much exercise to keep fit.
ⓐ did ⓑ do ⓒ make ⓓ makes

74. I was the first person ....the ship.
ⓐ who left ⓑ whom left ⓒ to leave ⓓ a & c

75. .... cars are cheaper than new ones. (2022)
ⓐ Using ⓑ Used ⓒ Usage ⓓ Use

76. Achieving objectives needs a lot of patience and ....
ⓐ procrastination ⓑ distraction ⓒ preservation ⓓ determination




Adjectives الصفات

الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتى الصفة قبل الاسم الموصوف

◈ It was a **hard** test.

◈ He bought a **new** flat.

تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال التالية:

V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how

◈ He looks **lazy**.

◈ She was a **clever** student.

تأتى الصفة بعد الضمائر الغير محددة (لا يمكن أن تأتى قبلهم)

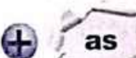
someone - anyone - everyone - no one - some body - something ...

◈ Let's do something **special**.

تنقسم الصفة إلى صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق وصفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع.

Positive degree الصفة العادية

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكى تعبر عن المساواة وعن عدم المساواة فى الصفة.

as + صفة + as

◈ Toka is **as clever as** Jana.

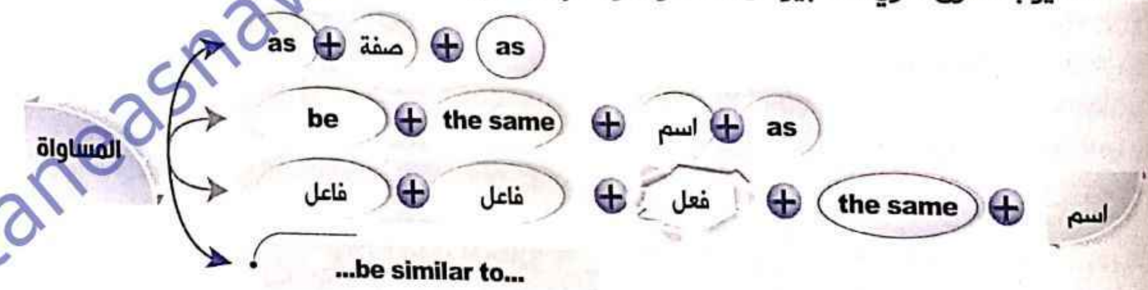
◈ Ahmed is **as strong as** a horse.

not as / so + صفة + as

◈ Ali is **not as clever as** Mai.

◈ Ali is **not as (so) rich as** Mai.

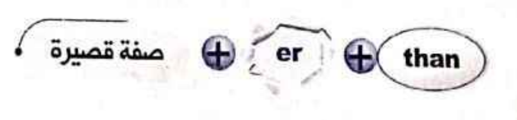
لاحظ أنه يوجد طرق أخري للتعبير عن المساواة وعدم المساواة:



◈ Toka is **as old as** Jana. = Toka is **the same age as** Jana.

Comparative degree صفة المقارنة

تستخدم المقارنة بين اثنين عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء وتتكون كالآتى:



◈ Ali is **taller than** Ahmed.

◈ Ahmed is **shorter than** Ali.

more (أكثر من) / less (أقل من) + الصفة + than

◈ Mona is **more beautiful than** Nada.

◈ Nada is **less beautiful than** Mona.

يمكننا المقارنة دون استخدام than إذا كان الطرف الثاني معروف من سياق الجملة

◈ Aya is fat but Mai is **fatter**. (fatter than Aya)

* يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفة القصيرة:

◈ Ali is **less fat than** Adel.

Superlative degree صفة التفضيل

* تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتتكون كالآتي:

The + صفة قصيرة + est

◈ Ali is **the tallest** student.
◈ She is **the shortest** one.

الأكثر The most / الأقل The least + صفة طويلة

◈ Mona is **the most beautiful** girl.

* لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعني (very):

◈ I love all my family, but my mum **most** of all.

* لاحظ استخدام صيغة التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون the بعد صفات الملكية أو 's.

◈ His **most** popular book is Giants.
◈ Her **best** novel is "Oliver".

* لاحظ استخدام صيغة التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون the مع الأعداد الترتيبية.

◈ Ali is the second **most** intelligent student in the class.

بعض الصفات الشاذة

Positive degree	Comparative (+ than)	Superlative (the +)	
good (right)	better	best	الأحسن
bad (wrong)	worse	worst	الأسوأ
many	more	most	الأكثر
much			
little	less	least	الأقل
far	farther أبعد	farthest	الأبعد
	further أكثر / إضافى	furthest	

◈ Ali is **better than** Ahmed.
◈ Ahmed is **worse than** Ali.

Important Notes

❶ يمكن أن نحدد مقدار صفة المقارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل:

إذا كان الفرق كبير ⊂ **much - a lot - far - even**

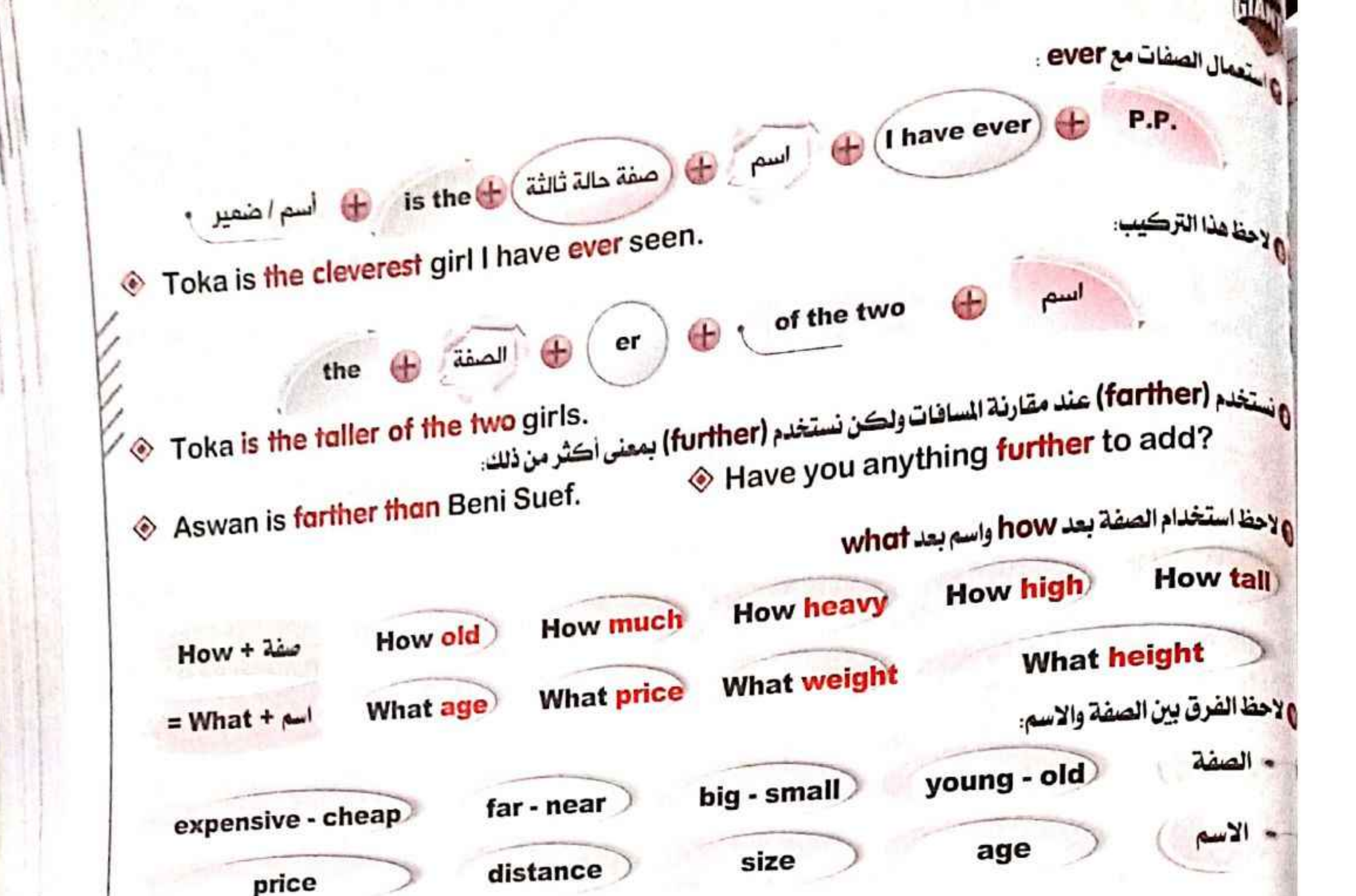
أذا كان الفرق قليل ⊂ **a bit - a little – slightly**

◈ Toka is **much** more intelligent than Jana.
◈ Ali is **slightly** taller than Ahmed.

❷ كلما ....كلما........

the + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل , the + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل

◈ **The more** I study, **the higher** marks I get.
◈ **The harder** you study, **the better** marks you get.



استعمال الصفات مع ever :

أسم / ضمير + is the + صفة حالة ثالثة + اسم + I have ever + P.P.

لاحظ هذا التركيب:

◈ Toka is the cleverest girl I have ever seen.

the + الصفة + er + of the two + اسم

◈ Toka is the taller of the two girls.

نستخدم (farther) عند مقارنة المسافات ولكن نستخدم (further) بمعنى أكثر من ذلك:

◈ Aswan is farther than Beni Suef.

◈ Have you anything further to add?

لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how واسم بعد what

How + صفة	How old	How much	How heavy	How high	How tall
= What + اسم	What age	What price	What weight	What height	

لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة والاسم:

- الصفة	young - old	big - small	far - near	expensive - cheap
- الاسم	age	size	distance	price

الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

Strong قوية		Ordinary عادية		Strong قوية		Ordinary عادية	
عتيق	ancient	قديم	old	رائع	brilliant	ماهر	clever
مرعب	terrifying	مخيف	frightening	غضبان جداً	furious	غاضب	angry
مرهق	exhausted	متعب	tired	ضخم	enormous	كبير	big

لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية:

very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little

◈ Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.

◈ I'm very (extremely) tired.

* لاحظ أن quite / fairly تعطى معني ايجابي بينما rather تعطى معني سلبي:

◈ It is rather cold. (I can't bear it.)

◈ It is quite cold. (I can bear it.)

* لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

absolutely - completely - entirely - totally - extremely

◈ She is an absolutely amazing teacher.

◈ The man was completely exhausted.

لاحظ أن الصفات المطلقة مثل (main - dead - final....) لا تأتي في المقارنة أو التفضيل ولا يسبقها حال:

◈ My father is dead.

(very dead x) (deader than x)

يمكننا عطف صفة المقارنة للتأكيد مع (and - or) ما بعدهم يشبه ما قبلهم:

◈ Toka, you are more and more beautiful today.





Adjectives ⊃ Level 1

1. The Nile is .... river in Africa.
   ⓐ longer than ⓑ the longest ⓒ longer one ⓓ longest than
2. This is .... film I have ever seen. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ the funniest ⓑ funny ⓒ funnier than ⓓ as funny as
3. I don't think this winter is .... last winter.
   ⓐ as cold as ⓑ as cold ⓒ so cold ⓓ colder
4. This man isn't .... Mr Ali, perhaps shorter.
   ⓐ tall as ⓑ so tall so ⓒ as tall so ⓓ so tall as
5. Nobody here is .... Peter.
   ⓐ efficient ⓑ as efficient as ⓒ most efficient than ⓓ as efficient
6. She looked .... and ran away from the dog.
   ⓐ fright ⓑ frightened ⓒ frightening ⓓ frighten
7. The scene was horrifying. The spectators were ....
   ⓐ horrifyingly ⓑ horrify ⓒ horrifying ⓓ horrified
8. The idea sounds ....
   ⓐ interests ⓑ interest ⓒ interested ⓓ interesting
9. You were .... to escape unharmed.
   ⓐ unfortunately ⓑ fortunately ⓒ fortunate ⓓ unfortunate
10. Do you want .... house?
    ⓐ big ⓑ a big ⓒ a biggest ⓓ biggest
11. I think little Jenny .... today. She can go to school.
    ⓐ seem better ⓑ looks better ⓒ seems best ⓓ looks best
12. Which of these is an adjective?
    ⓐ hard ⓑ hardly ⓒ harden ⓓ hardship
13. What is .... dish in Egypt?
    ⓐ the spiciest ⓑ spiciest ⓒ much spicy ⓓ most spiciest
14. What is the .... mountain in Europe?
    ⓐ highest ⓑ high ⓒ highly ⓓ much high
15. Is the Great Wall of China still............... man-made structure in the world?
    ⓐ the longer ⓑ longest ⓒ the longest ⓓ much longer
16. In my opinion, it was the .... meal I've ever eaten!
    ⓐ best ⓑ good ⓒ better ⓓ worse
17. Meals with meat are usually .... meals in restaurants.
    ⓐ more expensive than ⓑ expensive than ⓒ expensive ⓓ the most expensive
18. Their house is .... from the main road.
    ⓐ the farther ⓑ farther than ⓒ the farthest ⓓ farthest
19. Raise your voice, please. I can .... hear you.
    ⓐ hardly ⓑ hard ⓒ harden ⓓ hardness
20. Toka is .... interested in cartoons.
    ⓐ few ⓑ many ⓒ the most ⓓ most
21. The shirt wasn't the .... price as I had thought at first.
    ⓐ as ⓑ same ⓒ most ⓓ more
22. There was a big crowd. It was .... than ever.
    ⓐ crowdest ⓑ more crowded ⓒ most crowded ⓓ crowder

23. The man I saw was not .... that one.

ⓐ as fat so ⓑ so fat so ⓒ so fat as ⓓ so fat

24. Our football team is .... yours.

ⓐ better than ⓑ the better ⓒ best than ⓓ the best

25. The Egyptian museum is one of the............places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.

ⓐ more popular ⓑ less popular ⓒ least popular ⓓ most popular

Exercises on Adjectives ⊃ Level 2

26. Your homework is .... than last week; you seem lazy!

ⓐ better ⓑ worse ⓒ good ⓓ bad

27. This book was .... than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.

ⓐ bad ⓑ best ⓒ worst ⓓ worse

28. Please, tell me something .... than this old joke.

ⓐ interesting ⓑ less interesting ⓒ more interesting ⓓ the most interesting

29. I have .... time than he does.

ⓐ bigger ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ less

30. Your problem is not difficult. It's .... than ours.

ⓐ easier ⓑ more easy ⓒ easiest ⓓ most easy

31. He speaks English as .... as he speaks Arabic.

ⓐ best ⓑ bad ⓒ good ⓓ well

32. What a pity! She lives so far. I wish she lived ....

ⓐ nearest ⓑ nearer ⓒ more near ⓓ most near

33. This car is very good, but ours is ....

ⓐ much better ⓑ more better ⓒ much best ⓓ less best

34. This is............... month.

ⓐ hot ⓑ hottest ⓒ the hotter ⓓ the hottest

35. What was the .... event in your life?

ⓐ happiest ⓑ happier ⓒ more happy ⓓ most happy

36. Of all the problems she has faced, this one is far............... .

ⓐ too badly ⓑ the worst ⓒ worse ⓓ badly

37. The bridge over the valley is built on a .... scale than the one over the river.

ⓐ big ⓑ bigger ⓒ biggest ⓓ the biggest

38. I've never seen such a .... film.

ⓐ funniest ⓑ funnier ⓒ funny ⓓ fun

39. My father treats us in .... way.

ⓐ friend ⓑ a friendly ⓒ friendly ⓓ a friend

40. Kareem's exercises are .... of all, in my opinion.

ⓐ better than ⓑ the better ⓒ the best ⓓ best

41. He likes fish ....

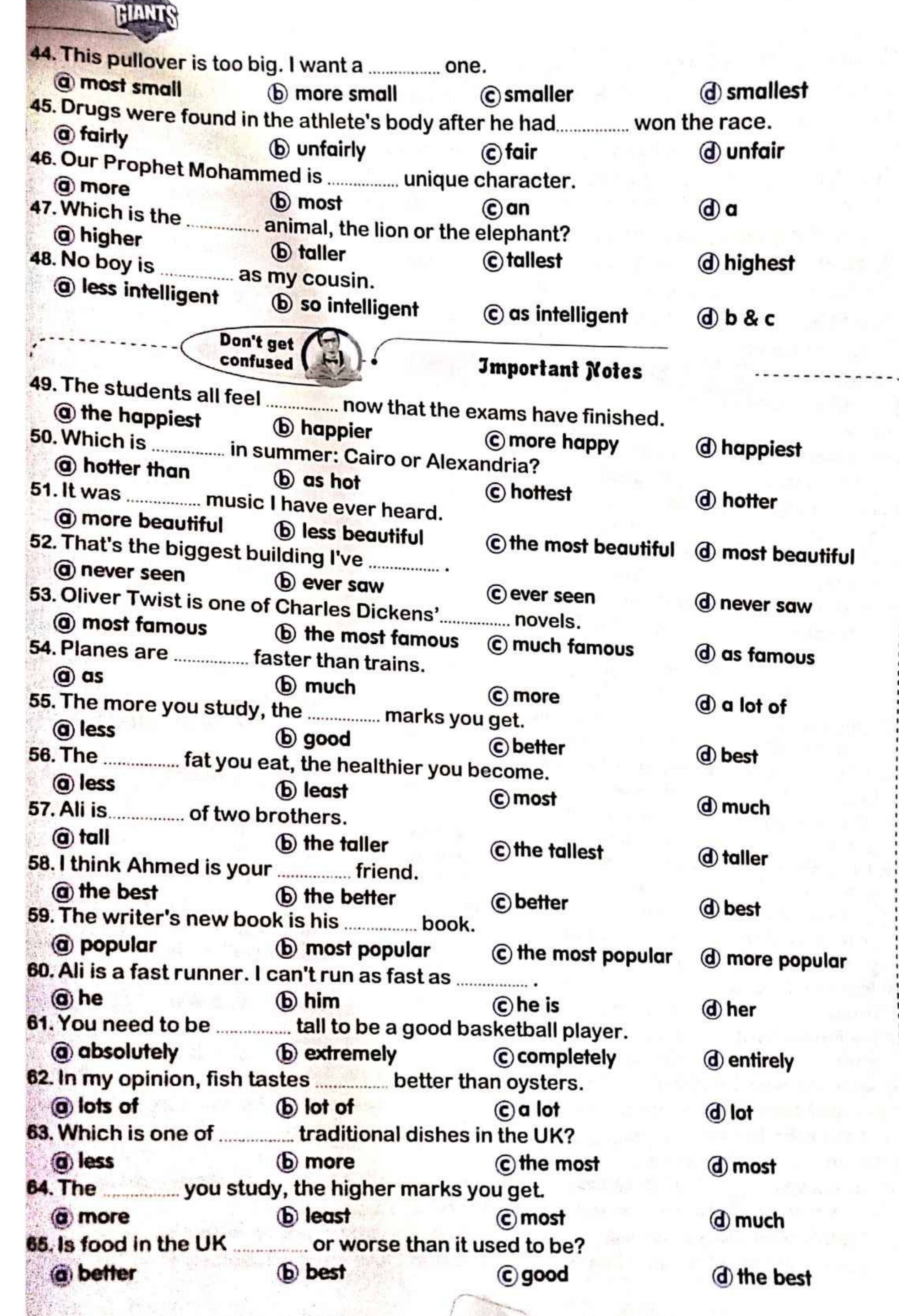
ⓐ a few ⓑ the fewest ⓒ most ⓓ the less

42. He .... to find a job, but he had no luck.

ⓐ tried hard ⓑ tried hardly ⓒ hardly tried ⓓ hard tried

43. He bought .... car.

ⓐ fastest ⓑ fast ⓒ a faster ⓓ faster



44. This pullover is too big. I want a .... one.
ⓐ most small ⓑ more small ⓒ smaller ⓓ smallest

45. Drugs were found in the athlete's body after he had.............. won the race.
ⓐ fairly ⓑ unfairly ⓒ fair ⓓ unfair

46. Our Prophet Mohammed is .... unique character.
ⓐ more ⓑ most ⓒ an ⓓ a

47. Which is the .... animal, the lion or the elephant?
ⓐ higher ⓑ taller ⓒ tallest ⓓ highest

48. No boy is .... as my cousin.
ⓐ less intelligent ⓑ so intelligent ⓒ as intelligent ⓓ b & c

Important Notes

49. The students all feel .... now that the exams have finished.
ⓐ the happiest ⓑ happier ⓒ more happy ⓓ happiest

50. Which is .... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?
ⓐ hotter than ⓑ as hot ⓒ hottest ⓓ hotter

51. It was .... music I have ever heard.
ⓐ more beautiful ⓑ less beautiful ⓒ the most beautiful ⓓ most beautiful

52. That's the biggest building I've ....
ⓐ never seen ⓑ ever saw ⓒ ever seen ⓓ never saw

53. Oliver Twist is one of Charles Dickens'.............. novels.
ⓐ most famous ⓑ the most famous ⓒ much famous ⓓ as famous

54. Planes are .... faster than trains.
ⓐ as ⓑ much ⓒ more ⓓ a lot of

55. The more you study, the .... marks you get.
ⓐ less ⓑ good ⓒ better ⓓ best

56. The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
ⓐ less ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

57. Ali is.............. of two brothers.
ⓐ tall ⓑ the taller ⓒ the tallest ⓓ taller

58. I think Ahmed is your .... friend.
ⓐ the best ⓑ the better ⓒ better ⓓ best

59. The writer's new book is his .... book.
ⓐ popular ⓑ most popular ⓒ the most popular ⓓ more popular

60. Ali is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as ....
ⓐ he ⓑ him ⓒ he is ⓓ her

61. You need to be .... tall to be a good basketball player.
ⓐ absolutely ⓑ extremely ⓒ completely ⓓ entirely

62. In my opinion, fish tastes .... better than oysters.
ⓐ lots of ⓑ lot of ⓒ a lot ⓓ lot

63. Which is one of .... traditional dishes in the UK?
ⓐ less ⓑ more ⓒ the most ⓓ most

64. The .... you study, the higher marks you get.
ⓐ more ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

65. Is food in the UK .... or worse than it used to be?
ⓐ better ⓑ best ⓒ good ⓓ the best

66. My detergent washes much .... than that.
ⓐ a lot of white ⓑ more whiter ⓒ most white ⓓ whiter

67. My wife is .... younger than me.
ⓐ a little ⓑ less ⓒ more ⓓ few

68. Going by plane is............... more expensive than going by bus.
ⓐ a lot ⓑ a lot of ⓒ lots of ⓓ many

69. I love all my family, but I love my father............... of all.
ⓐ more ⓑ much ⓒ the most ⓓ most

70. Today is............... hotter than yesterday.
ⓐ a little ⓑ little ⓒ less ⓓ the least

71. Aya is the same............... as Diana.
ⓐ age ⓑ young ⓒ old ⓓ older

72. Of all my roommates I like Nada ....
ⓐ good ⓑ the best ⓒ best ⓓ better

73. The sooner he moves out, ... it will be for all of us.
ⓐ the best ⓑ good ⓒ the better ⓓ best

74. What a silly thing! She is .... older than I thought.
ⓐ fairly ⓑ quite ⓒ rather ⓓ much

75. I have .... books than our friends.
ⓐ much ⓑ few ⓒ fewer ⓓ little

76. Yesterday was hot and today is ....
ⓐ hottest ⓑ hotter than ⓒ a hotter ⓓ hotter

Don't get confused

Think carefully

77. This exam seems .... than the previous one; you don't have to worry.
ⓐ more difficult ⓑ the easiest ⓒ easier ⓓ much difficult

78. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really............... .
ⓐ younger ⓑ older ⓒ youngest ⓓ oldest

79. She read as .... as she could.
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ more ⓓ less

80. I met two applicants yesterday. The .... looked less smart.
ⓐ late ⓑ later ⓒ latter ⓓ latest

81. Jana is a better cook than Toka. This means ....
ⓐ Toka can't cook as good as Jana.
ⓑ Toka isn't a cook as good as Jana.
ⓒ Toka can cook as badly as Jana.
ⓓ Toka can't cook as well as Jana.

82. Mai is smarter than ....
ⓐ me ⓑ I am ⓒ mine ⓓ a & b

83. His flat is as expensive as ....
ⓐ me ⓑ I am ⓒ mine ⓓ a & b

84. Jana can swim further than I can. This means ....
ⓐ I can't swim as far as Jana.
ⓑ Jana can swim as far as I can.
ⓒ I can swim further than Jana.
ⓓ a & c are correct.

85. Ali ran .... than Ahmed.
ⓐ less quick ⓑ as quickly ⓒ quicker ⓓ more quickly

86. Susan is more attractive than her sister. This means ....
ⓐ Susan's sister looks attractive
ⓑ Susan's sister is not as attractive as her
ⓒ Susan is not so attractive as her sister
ⓓ Susan looks more attractively than her sist

1 Writing Vocabulary

* تعبيرات تستخدم في كتابة التقرير:

over three-quarters	أكثر من ثلاث أرباع	the majority of	الأغلبية
third	ثلث	with the highest number	بأعلى عدد
low number of	عدد قليل من	In conclusion	ختاما
around half	حوالي النصف	fewer than	اقل من
similar numbers of	اعداد مماثلة من	only a few	فقط القليل
half the number of	نص عدد	in other words	بطريقة أخرى
less than a third	اقل من الثلث	rather than	بدلا من
three-quarters	ثلاث أرباع	little by little	شيئا فشيئا

It can be seen that there is a significant difference	يمكن ملاحظة أن هناك فرقًا كبيرًا
The most surprising thing about the figures is	الشيء الأكثر إثارة للدهشة في الأرقام هو
That may reflect the fact that	قد يعكس ذلك حقيقة أن
It is especially interesting to note that	من المثير للاهتمام بشكل خاص ملاحظة أن

2 Chapter two

a good heart	طيب القلب	a broken heart	محطم القلب/ حزين	rude	وقح
ashamed	يشعر بالخزى	veil	حجاب / ساتر	kind	عطوف
bride	عروسة	grateful	ممتن	unused	غير مستخدم / غير معتاد
candle	شمعة	shake	يهز	disappear	يختفى
fortune	ثروة	stir	يقلب	fight	يحارب / معركة

3 Vocabulary for Translation

reform	إصلاح	seek to	يسعي الي	standard of living	مستوي المعيشة
pollution	التلوث	vital role	دور حيوي	social issues	قضايا اجتماعية
odds - hardships	الصعاب	awareness	الوعي	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
unemployment	البطالة	protect from	يحمي من	contribute	تساهم
economy	الاقتصاد	solve	يحل	traffic jam	ازدحام المرور
tourism	السياحة	rationalize	يرشد / يقتصد	press	صحافة
progress	التقدم	a source of	مصدر لـ	income	دخل
invest	يستثمر	stimulate	ينشط / يحفز	concerning	فيما يتعلق
investor	مستثمر	birth control	تنظيم النسل	production	الإنتاج
investment	الاستثمار	over population	الزيادة السكانية	achievements	الانجازات
violence	العنف	contribute to	يساهم في	conference	مؤتمر
needs	احتياجات	civilized	مدني	economy	اقتصاد
efforts	مجهودات	gap	فجوة	rationalization	ترشيد
hinder	يعوق	creation	إبداع	official	رسمي / موظف
knowledge	معرفة	reject	ينبذ / يرفض	discussion	مناقشة



Speech الخطبة (الخطاب)

◈ A speech is an official verbal presentation which aims to achieve a specific goal.
* الخطاب هو عرض رسمي شفوي يهدف إلي تحقيق هدف معين.

◈ Any speech aims to persuade your listeners to focus on the subject of discussion.
* يهدف أي خطاب إلي إقناع المستمعين للتركيز علي موضوع المناقشة

◈ Any speech consists of three parts:

1 Introduction المقدمة — 2 Body الموضوع — 3 Conclusion الخاتمة

1) The introduction المقدمة

- tell your audience **who you are** — خبر جمهورك من أنت
- tell your audience **what you are talking about** — خبر جمهورك عن ماذا سوف تتحدث
- **use a hook** to attract your audience clearly. — تخدم جملة جاذبة لجذب انتباه جمهورك
- The hook may be a **rhetorical question, surprising sentence** or a **quote**. — تكون الجملة الجاذبة سؤال بلاغي أو جملة مفاجئة أو اقتباس

2) The body الموضوع

- It **includes** your topic. — تحتوي علي موضوعك
- **Divide** your body into parts. Every part **supports** one of your main **ideas**. — قسم موضوعك إلي أجزاء بحيث يدعم كل جزء احد أفكارك الرئيسية

3) The conclusion الخاتمة

- It **summarises** your topic. — تلخص موضوعك
- It **restates** and **sums up** what you said in the speech. — تلخص وتعيد صياغة ما قلته في الخطبة
- It expresses your opinion and **suggests** a solution or action. — تعبر عن رأيك و تقترح حلا

Tips for successful public speaking نصائح للخطاب العام الناجح

◈ Use clear language. — أستخدم لغة واضحة
◈ Use short statements. — أستخدم جمل قصيرة
◈ Pause after key statements. — توقف بعد الجمل الرئيسية
◈ Make eye contact. — كون تواصل بالعين
◈ Organise your speech well. — نظم خطابك بشكل جيد





Exercises on Writing

1. To attract your audience in the speech, you should use .... in the introduction.
   ⓐ complex language ⓑ contrast ⓒ hook ⓓ summary
2. To introduce a good speech, you should use ....
   ⓐ complex statements ⓑ complicated statements
   ⓒ large statements ⓓ short statements
3. You can tell your audience who you are in the .... in your speech.
   ⓐ closing ⓑ body ⓒ conclusion ⓓ introduction
4. When you conclude your speech, you should ....
   ⓐ tell your audience what you are talking about
   ⓑ divide your body into parts. every part supports one of your main ideas
   ⓒ restate and sum up what you said in the speech
   ⓓ tell your audience who you are
5. When you start your speech, you should ....
   ⓐ summarise your topic
   ⓑ divide your body into parts. Every part supports one of your main ideas
   ⓒ restate and sum up what you said in the speech
   ⓓ tell your audience who you are
6. In your speech body, you should ....
   ⓐ summarise your topic
   ⓑ divide your body into parts. Every part supports one of your main ideas
   ⓒ restate and sum up what you said in the speech
   ⓓ tell your audience who you are
7. A .... is an official verbal presentation which aims to achieve a specific goal.
   ⓐ review ⓑ invitation ⓒ article ⓓ speech
8. You summarise the content of your speech in the ....
   ⓐ introductory ⓑ body ⓒ conclusion ⓓ introduction
9. You can explain the ideas of your speech in the ....
   ⓐ introductory ⓑ body ⓒ conclusion ⓓ introduction
10. Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
    ⓐ Wael did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
    ⓑ Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone
    ⓒ Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
    ⓓ Wael, did you understand Why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
11. Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
    ⓐ Yes I'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami Tamer and Adel on Friday.
    ⓑ Yes, I'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday.
    ⓒ Yes, I m going to return from hurgada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday.
    ⓓ Yes, i'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday.
12. We use "However" in a paragraph or an essay to express.............. .
    ⓐ summary ⓑ contrast ⓒ addition ⓓ introduction
13. When writing an essay or a paragraph, you start with a/an .... sentence.
    ⓐ ending ⓑ closing ⓒ introductory ⓓ conclusion
14. When concluding an essay about cleanliness, we can use one of the following.............. .
    ⓐ Firstly, we should know what causes diseases
    ⓑ Moreover, cleanliness is a key to avoid diseases
    ⓒ To sum up, we should follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation
    ⓓ Nevertheless, we need to spread national awareness

15. When you start writing an essay about the newly located Cairo Museum, you can use ....
ⓐ Moreover, the newly located Cairo Museum shows the greatness of the Ancient Egyptian.
ⓑ To sum up, the newly located Cairo Museum is a splendid place to visit
ⓒ However, the newly located Cairo Museum was moved from its original location.
ⓓ Without a doubt, the newly located Cairo Museum is a splendid place to visit.

16. One of the following sentences CAN'T be used when you CONCLUDE writing an essay on the merits of the internet:
ⓐ To sum up, the internet is one of the most useful inventions
ⓑ In my opinion, the internet has a lot of disadvantages in case we use it badly
ⓒ In my view, the internet is very useful to all of us
ⓓ In conclusion, the internet has made the world a small village

Exercises on Translation

1. The state strives to improve life conditions for its citizens in various fields.

(أ) تعمل الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها في مختلف المجالات.
(ب) عملت الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها فى مختلف المجالات.
(ج) عملت الدولة على تدمير الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها فى مختلف المجالات.
(د) عملت الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لموظفيها فى مختلف المجالات.

2. Education aims at creating an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the challenges of modern life.

(أ) يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري غير قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة العصرية.
(ب) يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة المصرية.
(ج) يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على وجه تحديات الحياة العصرية.
(د) يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة العصرية.

٣. لا يمكن لأحد أن يهزمك أو يعرقل نجاحك طالما تتسلح بالعلم والأمل.

ⓐ No one can't defeat you or hinder your success as long as you are armed with knowledge and hope.
ⓑ No one can defeat you or hinder your successful as long as you are armed with knowledge and hope.
ⓒ No one can defeat you or hinder your success as long as you are armed with knowledge and hope.
ⓓ No one can defeat you or hinder your success as long as you are armed to knowledge and hope.

٤. تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات القومية العملاقة كمحطات توليد الطاقة الشمسية واستصلاح الأراضى فى صعيد مصر.

ⓐ The government is implementing many mega national projects such as solar energtic stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
ⓑ The government is implementing many mega national projects such as solar power stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
ⓒ The government is implementing many mega international projects such as solar power stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
ⓓ The government is implementing much mega national projects such as solar power stations and ground reclamation in Upper Egypt.

ashamed	خجول / يشعر بالخجل	▸ feeling embarrassed or bad about something
bride	عروسة	▸ a woman who is getting married
candle	شمعة	▸ something made of wax you burn to produce light
fortune	ثروة	▸ a lot of money
veil	حجاب / نقاب	▸ a piece of fine material worn to protect or hide your face
grateful	ممتن	▸ feeling thankful and lucky
shake	يرج / يهز	▸ move quickly from side to side or up and down
stir	يقلب	▸ mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it

1. A .... means a lot of money.
   ⓐ fortune ⓑ veil ⓒ bride ⓓ candle
2. A piece of fine material worn to protect or hide your face is a-an ....
   ⓐ fortune ⓑ veil ⓒ bride ⓓ ashamed
3. .... means feeling embarrassed or bad about something.
   ⓐ Astonished ⓑ Ashamed ⓒ Grateful ⓓ Convict
4. A .... is a woman who is getting married.
   ⓐ widow ⓑ maid ⓒ bride ⓓ candle
5. A .... is something made of wax you burn to produce light.
   ⓐ veil ⓑ brain ⓒ candle ⓓ bride
6. You have a heart of .... not to be moved by her tears.
   ⓐ marble ⓑ stone ⓒ candle ⓓ veil
7. The nurse .... the thermometer and put it under my armpit.
   ⓐ shook ⓑ dropped ⓒ stirred ⓓ hit
8. To be .... is feeling thankful and lucky.
   ⓐ veil ⓑ ashamed ⓒ grateful ⓓ convict
9. To .... is to move quickly from side to side or up and down.
   ⓐ shake ⓑ stir ⓒ behave ⓓ grateful
10. To .... is to mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it.
   ⓐ escape ⓑ ashamed ⓒ shake ⓓ stir
11. She .... a change in her plan and decided to stay.
   ⓐ had ⓑ made ⓒ did ⓓ tried
12. The house was dark except for one .... burning in a window.
   ⓐ candle ⓑ fire ⓒ battery ⓓ lamp
13. .... the sauce gently until it begins to boil.
   ⓐ Skip ⓑ Drop ⓒ Hit ⓓ Stir
14. The teams are in .... heart and ready for the season's matches.
   ⓐ bad ⓑ well ⓒ good ⓓ broken
15. Unfair bosses and .... customers make us unhappy on the job.
   ⓐ polite ⓑ kind ⓒ generous ⓓ rude

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They'd better leave early, ... ?
   ⓐ hadn't they ⓑ wouldn't they ⓒ had they ⓓ would they
2. We taught .... to fight.
   ⓐ ours ⓑ ourselves ⓒ our ⓓ we
3. I agree with most of what he said, but I don't agree to ....
   ⓐ something ⓑ nothing ⓒ everything ⓓ anything
4. Al Daifi, ... man you met yesterday, is .... honest man.
   ⓐ a / a ⓑ the / a ⓒ the / an ⓓ a / an
5. He's .... attractive but not what I'd call gorgeous.
   ⓐ quite ⓑ quiet ⓒ quit ⓓ quick
6. Why do you think young people use............ language in their chats?
   ⓐ foreign ⓑ informal ⓒ former ⓓ formal
7. My mother usually .... delicious dishes every time we have guests!
   ⓐ impairs ⓑ repairs ⓒ prepares ⓓ performs
8. The young man received a............for rescuing the two tourists who got lost in the desert
   ⓐ money ⓑ profit ⓒ reward ⓓ loss
9. Ali had to react politely so as not to insult his friend. React is a synonym for ....
   ⓐ comfort ⓑ connect ⓒ respond ⓓ mistake
10. The workers .... against the cruel treatment of their employer.
   ⓐ suggested ⓑ protested ⓒ consisted ⓓ protected
11. I'd prefer to have dinner at home .... go to restaurants.
   ⓐ rather than ⓑ other than ⓒ to ⓓ neither than
12. Our team .... that victory because of the excellent tactics they had followed.
   ⓐ deserved ⓑ observed ⓒ deprived ⓓ lacked
13. I must .... my doctor; I feel chest pain.
   ⓐ result ⓑ insist ⓒ consult ⓓ insult
14. You should drink the right .... of water every day.
   ⓐ number ⓑ member ⓒ mount ⓓ amount
15. My mother usually .... fresh bread every morning.
   ⓐ is buying ⓑ buy ⓒ bought ⓓ buys
16. Come on boys, let's .... some work!
   ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ made ⓓ did
17. She arrived .... the office very late.
   ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ to
18. Most of our windows need............ .They are very dusty.
   ⓐ clean ⓑ to clean ⓒ to cleaning ⓓ cleaning
19. .... studying medicine is difficult, many students are eager to join that top faculty.
   ⓐ Despite ⓑ However ⓒ Because of ⓓ Although
20. There are a lot of things in our............ use, made from trees.
   ⓐ every day ⓑ everyday ⓒ day ⓓ ever day
21. He was a great novelist though his first three novels were not a ....
   ⓐ succeed ⓑ success ⓒ successful ⓓ succeeding
22. He was a great novelist though his first three novels were not ....
   ⓐ succeed ⓑ success ⓒ successful ⓓ succeeding





(A) Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Egyptian tennis player got into the final .... of the tournament.
   ⓐ court ⓑ around ⓒ round ⓓ team
2. Educationists always try to .... students' productivity levels.
   ⓐ rise ⓑ raise ⓒ move ⓓ decline
3. I .... anyone not to cry at the end of the film.
   ⓐ defy ⓑ give ⓒ reflect ⓓ obtain
4. Sports stars are .... for thousands of youngsters.
   ⓐ bias ⓑ stereotype ⓒ role models ⓓ colossal
5. There was a lot of .... towards women in the past, and they weren't treated as favourably as males.
   ⓐ equality ⓑ justice ⓒ prejudice ⓓ freedom
6. The oral exam constitutes 10 percent of the final ....
   ⓐ signal ⓑ greed ⓒ degree ⓓ grade
7. I felt very proud .... my son when he got his master's degree.
   ⓐ on ⓑ off ⓒ of ⓓ at
8. It was dark when I woke up because the sun had not yet...............
   ⓐ risen ⓑ arisen ⓒ blown ⓓ fallen
9. After ...., she felt lonely.
   ⓐ her husband has died ⓑ her husband's death
   ⓒ her husband was dying ⓓ had died
10. I didn't meet my friend today .... he had left early.
    ⓐ before ⓑ until ⓒ as ⓓ by the time
11. Which of the following sentences is structurally INCORRECT?
    ⓐ No sooner had I returned home than I had lunch.
    ⓑ Hardly had I returned home when I had lunch.
    ⓒ I had scarcely returned home when I had lunch.
    ⓓ No sooner had I returned home then I had lunch.
12. After I .... for 20 minutes, my friend arrived and apologised to me.
    ⓐ have been waiting ⓑ had been waiting ⓒ has been waiting ⓓ was waiting
13. I didn't go to school until I .... breakfast.
    ⓐ have ⓑ had ⓒ have had ⓓ had had
14. We won't be able to live on Mars until we............... enough water there.
    ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ will be finding ⓓ found
15. The problem is difficult to solve. This means ....
    ⓐ It is difficult problem to solve. ⓑ It is a problem difficult solve.
    ⓒ It is difficult to solve the problem. ⓓ It is difficult solve the problem.
16. Who is .... , Ahmed or Ali?
    ⓐ old ⓑ oldest ⓒ older ⓓ as old as
17. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
    ⓐ Having repaired, the car became ready for the long journey.
    ⓑ After the car had repaired, it became ready for the long journey.
    ⓒ Having been repaired, the car became ready for the long journey.
    ⓓ After the car has been repaired, it became ready for the long journey.

18. Which of the following isn't punctuated correctly?

ⓐ I made a new 20-year-old friend today.

ⓑ The woman, who lives next door to us is going to travel abroad.

ⓒ I bought a list of things: a bottle of milk, a packet of tea and five loaves of bread.

ⓓ Yasser, stop making noise; you're disturbing us.

19. What are the two paragraphs where you should put your thesis?

ⓐ you only need to state it once

ⓑ body Paragraph

ⓒ introduction and Conclusion

ⓓ introduction and Body Paragraph

20. "Moreover, it is not a good idea to skip breakfast as it has several health benefits." This sentence can be considered a part of .... of an essay.

ⓐ a body

ⓑ a conclusion

ⓒ an introduction

ⓓ a summary

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left." or "Whatever it is, there won't be much taste in it." Of course there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future.

Nevertheless, not all experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a food shortage, but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it.

Moreover in most industrialized countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are already in a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like Soya beans. However, skeptical we may be about their claim that they can produce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!

21. There won't be food shortage in the future if the food is ....

ⓐ fairly distributed

ⓑ unfairly distributed

ⓒ of high quality

ⓓ of low quality

22. The main idea of the passage is...............

ⓐ the advantages of eating soya beans

ⓑ the causes of food shortage and its solution

ⓒ the distribution of food

ⓓ population increasing all over the world

23. The problem of food can be solved if we ....

ⓐ use the internet and mass media

ⓑ use advanced methods of cultivation

ⓒ use more water from the sea

ⓓ purify the river water

24. We feed animals on grain to produce ....

ⓐ high quantity beef

ⓑ fat and food supplies

ⓒ skin and vegetables

ⓓ high quality beef

25. Which sentence of the following can best summarise the last paragraph?
   ⓐ **Soya beans can change the taste of meat**
   ⓑ **Soya beans, steak and food ingredients**
   ⓒ **Beans, fats and skin**
   ⓓ **Soya beans as a replacement of meat**

26. According to the passage, using vegetable ingredients is one of the methods to overcome the shortage of ....
   ⓐ **protein** ⓑ **fats** ⓒ **vitamins** ⓓ **calcium**

27. According to the passage, food production is growing .... the population.
   ⓐ **as slow as** ⓑ **as fast as** ⓒ **faster than** ⓓ **slower than**

28. According to the passage, our diet may be .... in the future.
   ⓐ **the same** ⓑ **difficult** ⓒ **different** ⓓ **traditional**

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everybody likes to feel that she or he is special. Sadly, many of us grow up believing that we're not special at all. We wish that we could be more attractive or better at sports. We wish we had more money or more beautiful clothes. Like the Tin Man, the Scarecrow, or the Cowardly Lion from The Wizard of Oz, we think we're not good enough just as we are. In the film, The Tin Man wishes he had a heart. The Scarecrow wishes that he had a brain, and the Lion wants courage. Eventually, each of them realizes that he already has what he wants. Nearly all parents want us to be the best we can be. They occasionally attempt to encourage us to do better by comparing us to others. They mean well, but the message we usually get is that we're not good enough. We start to believe that the only way we can be special is by being better than somebody else, but we are frequently disappointed. There will always be somebody out there that is better than we are at something. There are a lot of people around who may not be as intelligent as we are, but who are better at sports. Or they may not be as handsome, but they have more money. It is unthinkable for us to be better than everybody else all the time. Like the Tin Man, the Scarecrow, and the Cowardly Lion, we all need what we believe will make us better people. Our parents often forget to tell us that we are special, that we are good enough just as we are.

Either way, it's up to us to remind <u>them</u> sometimes that each of us, in our own way, is special.

29. The writer wrote this text to ....
   ⓐ **explain the importance of being yourself**
   ⓑ **suggest how people can change their way of life**
   ⓒ **talk about your family problems**
   ⓓ **describe how intelligent we are**

30. This essay was most likely written by a ....
   ⓐ **parent** ⓑ **teacher** ⓒ **coach** ⓓ **young person**

31. What does the writer say about our parents?
   ⓐ **They frequently forget to tell us that we are special.**
   ⓑ **They always tell us that we are good enough.**
   ⓒ **They always tell us that we are special.**
   ⓓ **They never forget to tell us that we are special.**

32. The writer of this essay believes that ....
   ⓐ **the richer you are, the better you are**
   ⓑ **not everyone can be special**
   ⓒ **intelligent people are more special than others**
   ⓓ **we are all good enough just the way we are**

33. Tin man wishes to ....

ⓐ have more money
ⓑ be better at sports
ⓒ be more beautiful
ⓓ have a heart

34. The underlined word "disappointed" is a synonym to ....

ⓐ pleased
ⓑ dissatisfied
ⓒ ashamed
ⓓ excited

35. The underlined "them" refers to ....

ⓐ teachers
ⓑ parents
ⓒ youth
ⓓ coaches

36. The best title for this essay could be ....

ⓐ Being special
ⓑ Selfishness
ⓒ Comparisons
ⓓ Being a parent

Ⓒ Translation

37. Mothers are the cornerstone in any family. If they give up their role as housewives, there will be some unpleasant consequences.

(أ) الأمهات هم حجر الزاوية في أي عائلة. إذا تخلوا عن دورهم كربات بيوت ، فستكون هناك بعض الظروف غير السارة
(ب) الأمهات هم حجر الزاوية في أي عائلة. إذا تخلوا عن قواعدهم كربات بيوت ، فستكون هناك بعض العواقب غير السارة.
(ج) الأمهات هم حجر الزاوية في أي عائلة. إذا تخلوا عن دورهم كزوجات ، فستكون هناك بعض العواقب غير السارة.
(د) الأمهات هم حجر الزاوية في أي عائلة. إذا تخلوا عن دورهم كربات بيوت ، فستكون هناك بعض العواقب غير السارة

38. Tourism is one of the most important sources of national income as it brings in a lot of hard currency which is invested in plenty of projects.

(أ) تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع .
(ب) تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لذلك تجلب الكثير من العملات الغريبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.
(ج) تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم إنفاقها في الكثير من المشاريع.
(د) تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل العالمى لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.

٣٩. من المعروف أن الاستخدام الخاطئ لمواقع الإنترنت ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعى يهدر الوقت والجهد ويدمر الصحة، فمن الضرورى تحديد مقدار الوقت الذى تقضيه عبر الإنترنت.

ⓐ It is good known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages health.
ⓑ It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damage health.
ⓒ It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages healthy.
ⓓ It is well known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages health.

٤٠. يجب ألا يعاقب الأطفال بدنياً ، فهذا النوع من العقاب له تأثيراً سيئاً على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل، فيجب على الآباء أن يربوا أطفالهم على الأخلاق الحميدة.

ⓐ Children should not be punished physically, as this type of punishment has a bad effect on the child's future life.
ⓑ Children should not punish physically, as this type of punishment has a bad effect on the child's future life.
ⓒ Children should not be punished physically, as this type of punishment has a bad affect on the child's future life.
ⓓ Children should not be punish physically, as this type of punishment has a bad effect on the child's future life.

incident	حادث / واقعة	cornerstone	حجر الزاوية		كلمات القطع
handicapped	معاق / عاجز	consequences	العواقب	taste	مذاق
academic	أكاديمي / جامعى	sources	مصادر	pessimistic	متشائم
excellence	التفوق	hard currency	العملات الصعبة	supplies	إمدادات
forest fire	حريق غابة	punishment	العقاب	nevertheless	بالرغم من
raging	مستعر	various fields	مختلف المجالات	despondency	اليأس
attempts	محاولات	hinder	يعرقل	developing countries	دول نامية
prescription	وصفة طبية	knowledge	المعرفة	shortage	نقص
defeat	يهزم	armed with	يتسلح بـ	methods	طرق
applicant	طالب وظيفة	limit	يحد / حد	cultivation	زراعة
detergent	مطهر / مادة منظفة	mate	صديق	sufficiently	بشكل كافي
insult	إهانة	expand	يتوسع / يتمدد	distribute	يوزع
victory	فوز / نصر	expansion	توسع	conservative	متحفظ
tactics	تكتيكات	expenses	نفقات / مصاريف	preference	تفضيل
chest pain	ألم فى الصدر	exploit	استغلال / يستغل	resolve	يحل
constitute	يشكل	export	يصدر	ingredients	مكونات
innocent	بريء	growth	النمو	substance	مادة
demand	يطلب	guide	يرشد / يوجه	complaint	شكوى
psychology	علم النفس	hatred	الكراهية	artificial	صناعي
shyness	خجل	expose	يعرض	skin	جلد
accomplish	ينجز	essential	أساسي	fat	دهون
ignorance	جهل	isolate	يعزل	attractive	جذاب
peace agreement	اتفاق السلام	isolation	عزلة	scarecrow	خيال مآته
significant	هام	individual	فرد	cowardly	جبان
overseas firms	الشركات الخارجية	main	أساسي / رئيسي	handsome	وسيم
performance	أداء	publicity	شهرة	eventually	فى النهاية
gorgeous	رائع / باهر	precious	ثمين / قيم	disappointed	محبط
sauce	صلصة	in charge of	مسئول عن	unthinkable	غير مقبول
splendid	رائع / مشرق / عظيم	conference	مؤتمر	courage	شجاعة
effort	الجهد	fulfill	ينجز	intelligent	ذكى
waste	يهدر	face	يواجه / يتصد إلي	attempt	محاولة

Unit 3 Beyond imagination

1 Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
planet (n)	كوكب
approach (v)(n)	طريقة / نهج / يقترب
mass-produced (adj)	منتج بكثرة
immerse (v)	يغمر/ يغطس
immersive (adj)	مبهر / جذاب
implement (v)	يطبق/ ينفذ
innovation (n)	إبداع / ابتكار
innovative (adj)	ابتكاري/ إبداعي
solar system (n)	المجموعة الشمسية
universe (n)	الكون
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
astronomer (n)	عالم الفلك
spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضاء
experiment (v)(n)	يجرب / تجربة
spectacular (adj)	مذهل / مدهش
spectacularly (adv)	بشكل مذهل
inconvenient (adj)	غير ملائم
surface (n)	سطح

2 Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
surround (v)	يحيط
adapt (v)	يتكيف / يتأقلم
conquer (v)	يغزو / يخضع / يقهر
advance (v)(n)	تقدم / تطور / يتقدم
constantly (adv)	باستمرار
competitive (adj)	تنافسي
permanent (adj)	دائم / مستمر/ باق
process (n)	عملية / نظام
operation (n)	عملية (جراحية)
packaging (n)	تعبئة / تغليف
illustrated (adj)	مصور
curious (adj)	فضولي / متطفل
essential (adj)	ضروري / جوهري
practical (adj)	عملي
require (v)	يتطلب / يستلزم
scare (v)	يفزع / يخيف
forms (n)	أشكال
support (v)(n)	يدعم / دعم
evidence (n)	دليل
expand (v)	يتوسع / يتمدد
visuals (n)	مؤثرات بصرية
speaker (n)	سماعة
audience (n)	جمهور
display (v)(n)	عرض / يعرض
tutor (n)	معلم
potentially	من الممكن / من المحتمل
explore (v)	يستكشف
liquid (n)	سائل
hidden (adj)	مخبأ
robot (n)	إنسان آلي
exist (v)	يوجد
powerful (adj)	قوي / ذو نفوذ
evolve (v)	يتطور
shape (n)(v)	شكل / يشكل
invent (v)	يخترع
invention (n)	اختراع
beyond (prep)	ما وراء / خلف
imagination (n)	خيال / تخيل
advert (n)	إعلان
flat (n)(adj)	شقة / مستو
lie (v)(n)	يقع / يكذب / كذبة
educational (adj)	تعليمي



3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
surround sound	الصوت المجسم
artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي
competitive price	سعر تنافسي
science fiction	خيال علمي
burning questions	أسئلة ملحة
do well	يؤدي بشكل جيد
make noise	يسبب ضوضاء
develop an approach	يطور نهجاً
take an approach	يتخذ منهجاً
carry out (do-perform) an experiment	يجري تجربة
on a big (large) scale	على نطاق واسع
essential for	ضروري لـ
on average	في المتوسط
on display	معروض
after all	بالرغم من كل شيء / مع ذلك
instead of	بدلاً من
dig into	ينقب
it's likely that	من المحتمل أن
play music	يعزف موسيقى
carry out (do-perform) an operation	يجري عملية جراحية



4 Definitions

Word	Arabic	Definition
planet	كوكب	a very large round object in space that moves around the sun or another star
speaker	سماعة	the part of a radio, television, or computer, or of a piece of electrical equipment for playing recorded sound, through which the sound is played
immersive	مبهر / غامر	impressive
surround	يحيط	to be everywhere around something
immerse	يغمر / يغطس	to become completely involved deeply in an activity
implement	يطبق / ينفذ	to put a plan or system into operation
mass-produced	منتج بكثرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
approach	طريقة / مدخل / نهج	a way of considering or doing something
spectacularly	بشكل مذهل	in a very beautiful way that people admire
inconvenient	غير ملائم	causing problems or difficulties (unsuitable)
process	عملية / سلسلة من التغيرات	a series of actions that you take in order to achieve a result
experiment (v)	يجرب	to try something in order to discover what it is like or find out more about it
astronaut	رائد فضاء	a person who travels and works in a spacecraft
imagination	خيال / تخيل	the ability to form pictures in the mind
operation	عملية (جراحية)	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged
solar system	النظام الشمسي	the sun and the planets that go around it
universe	الكون	all space, including all the stars and planets

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
inconvenient	غير ملائم	annoying - unsuitable	suitable - convenient
approach	طريقة / يقترب / نهج	method - attitude - go near	leave - exit
implement	يطبق / ينفذ	carry out - apply	neglect - ignore
conquer	يغزو / يخضع / يتغلب على	beat - overcome - occupy	give up - release - liberate
innovation	ابداع	creation - variation	tradition - imitation - replica
constantly	باستمرار	continually - frequently	occasionally - rarely
immerse	يغمر	sink - soak - occupy	float - ignore - reject
permanent	دائم	endless - constant	temporary - (short-term)

6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
approach	يقترب	approach	طريقة / مدخل / نهج	approachable	ودود
implement	يطبق/ ينفذ	implementation	تطبيق/ تنفيذ		
mass-produce	ينتج بكثرة	mass-production	إنتاج بالجملة	mass-produced	منتج بكثرة
innovate	يبدع / يبتكر	innovation	إبداع / ابتكار	innovative	مبدع / إبداعي
operate	يشغل / يجري عملية	operation	عملية (جراحية)	operative	فعال
immerse	يغمر/ يغطس	immersion	انغماس	immersive	مبهر / غامر
surround	يحيط	surroundings	الجوار	surrounding	مجاور
experiment	يجرب	experiment	تجربة	experimental	تجريبي



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

invention	اختراع	⊃	**innovation**	الابتكار / الإبداع
experience	خبرة / تجربة حياتية	⊃	**experiment**	تجربة علمية / يجرب
process	عملية (ذات خطوات محددة)	⊃	**operation**	عملية (جراحية/حسابية) / تشغيل
advertise	يعلن (عن سلعة...)	⊃	**announce**	يعلن / يصرح
wonder	يتساءل/ يتعجب	⊃	**wander**	يتجول
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	⊃	**fortunately**	لحسن الحظ
planet	كوكب	⊃	**plant**	نبات / يزرع
surface	سطح	⊃	**roof**	سطح المنزل
rather than	بدلا من	⊃	**other than**	بخلاف / غير / بالإضافة إلي
improve	يحسن	⊃	**prove**	يثبت
lie / lied / lied (lying)	يكذب	⊃	**lie / lay / lain**	يرقد / يقع

soil, land, earth, ground & dust

soil	تربه زراعية	▸ We can grow plants here. It is a fertile **soil**.
land	اليابسة/ أرض	▸ The sailor could reach the **land**.
earth	الأرض (كوكب)	▸ The spaceship returned to the **earth**.
ground	أرض / أرضية علمية	▸ I sat down on the **ground**.
dust	تراب ناعم / غبار	▸ He drove off in a cloud of **dust**.

invent, discover & explore

invent	يخترع (شيء جديد لم يوجد من قبل)	▸ Edison **invented** the electric lamp.
discover	يكتشف (شيء موجود و غير معروف)	▸ Columbus **discovered** America.
explore	يستكشف (خاصة بالأماكن)	▸ Columbus landed on America and **explored** it.



astronaut, astronomer & astrologer

astronaut	رائد فضاء	He is a person who has been trained for travelling in a spacecraft.
astronomer	عالم فلك	He is someone who studies the movement of plants.
astrologer	منجم	He is someone who tries to predict the future.

result, result from & result in

result	نتيجة	Unemployment is the **result** of the economic policy.
result from	ينـجم عن	The food shortage **results from** the lack of crops
result in= lead to	يؤدي الى	Smoking **results in** cancer.

require, enquire & acquire

require: need	يتطلب	What does this mission **require**?
enquire: ask about	يستفسر	I'd like to **enquire** about available tours.
acquire: get	يحصل على / يكتسب	She **acquired** her degree while living in London.

provide .. with & provide ... for

provide (شخص) with	يمد بـ / يزود بـ	Who **provides** him with money?
provide (شيء) for (شخص)	يوفر	Who **provides** money for him?

Provide + شيء + for + شخص → يوفر شيء لشخص

Provide + شخص + with + شيء → يمد شخص بشيء

help (to - inf. - with)

help to+ inf.	يساعد يأتي بعدها المصدر بـ to	He **helped** me **to do** my homework.
help + inf.	يساعد يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون (to)	He **helped** me **do** my homework.
help with + n.	يساعد بعدها الاسم	He **helped** me **with** my homework.

help + مفعول + (to + المصدر / مصدر / with + اسم) → يساعد

temporary & permanent

- **temporary** مؤقت — He tries to find a **temporary** job during the summer holiday.
- **permanent** دائم — Their stay is not temporary, it is **permanent**.



Read the article about the sound

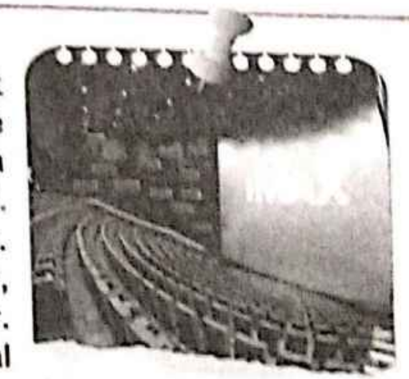


"Surround sound[1]" is a system[2] that uses 3 or more speakers[3] to make you feel like you are surrounded by sound. Surround sound experiments[4] go as far back as the 1930s. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 in the Walt Disney Film Fantasia, which used Fantasound. This was a system designed[5] to totally immerse[6] the audience[7] in the film like the visuals[8] did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement[9] on a big scale[10], as Fantasound needed 54 speakers. It wasn't until 1975, with the invention[11] of Dolby Stereo, requiring[12] just four basic[13] speakers that 'surround sound' became practical[14]. It was used spectacularly[15] in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the introduction of Dolby Surround technology. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient[16]. Now, a whole new approach[17] has been developed, by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers.

The team had experimented before, in 2015, they created[18] an illustrated[19] book which had speakers hidden inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them over. Now they have developed a printing process[20] which can print[21] whole rolls[22] of the paper-thin[23] speakers, rather than one sheet at a time. They have used this to make the T-ring, a 360 - degree paper speaker, a sound experience more immersive[24] than even a cinema, and can be potentially mass-produced[25] at a competitive[26] price. Professor Hubler from the University predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for audio advertising and packaging[27]. Imagine the packaging on bottles and tins playing music or adverts[28] for you.

(1) صوت مجسم
(2) نظام
(3) سماعة
(4) تجربة
(5) يصمم
(6) يغمر
(7) جمهور
(8) مرئيات
(9) ينفذ
(10) على نطاق كبير
(11) اختراع
(12) يتطلب
(13) أساسي
(14) عملي
(15) بشكل مذهل
(16) غير ملائم
(17) مدخل
(18) يخلق
(19) مصور
(20) عملية
(21) يطبع
(22) بكرة
(23) رقيق
(24) مبهر
(25) منتج بكثرة
(26) تنافسي
(27) تغليف
(28) إعلان

Technology in the cinema

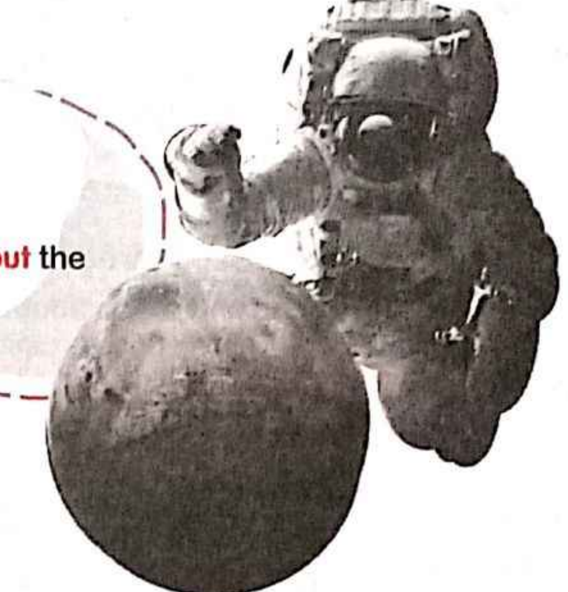


When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film experience even more real. In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different approach[1]. Their films were shown on very large, tall screens. Special[2] speakers were put behind the screen, which helped to make the sound better and louder. In addition[3], the films were made using a special process which made the pictures look much more real. The problem with these types of films was the cost[4]. They had to build special square[5] cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in seats[6] which all faced the screen. You also needed special cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all educational[7] often about nature. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded[8] by snowy mountains.

(1) نهج / طريقة
(2) خاص
(3) بالإضافة
(4) تكلفة
(5) مربع / ميدان
(6) مقعد
(7) تعليمي
(8) محاط بـ

Since 2000, however, similar technology has allowed traditional films to be made in the same way. These are mass-produced and shown in traditional cinemas. As a result, many modem films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look real and not flat. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to immerse you even more into the experience. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to feel the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

Read Tarek's question in the blog



www.teenastronomers...

Teen Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any burning questions, please email us at: teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au.

Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth? - Tarek, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you for your question, Tarek. Astronomers[1] like us are constantly[2] searching for planets[3] which may support human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely[4] that if such a planet exists[5], it will be outside our solar system[6]. Until we have invented the technology to get us to these planets, we won't be able to study the conditions[7] there. But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can until we have found some evidence[8]. One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is essential for[9] all life forms[10].

Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent[11] liquid[12] water on Mars, which made a lot of people excited. After all, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, on average[13], the temperature[14] on Mars is about minus 60 degrees Celsius. In winter it can go down as low as 125 degrees below freezing[15]. When we've found a way for astronauts to survive these extreme temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface of Mars to collect[16] useful data[17].

Mars is hopefully[18] just one step into the universe[19]. Once we've conquered Mars, it will be easier to expand into the universe beyond with future advances[20] in space[21] technology.

١) عالم فلك
٢) باستمرار
٣) كوكب
٤) من المحتمل
٥) يوجد
٦) المجموعة الشمسية
٧) ظرف / حالة
٨) دليل
٩) ضروري لـ
١٠) أشكال
١١) دائم
١٢) سائل
١٣) معدل
١٤) درجة حرارة
١٥) متجمد
١٦) يجمع
١٧) بيانات
١٨) تأمل
١٩) الكون
٢٠) تقدم
٢١) فضاء



Earth is one of the eight planets of our solar system. Astronomers have been able to study most of these planets for many years. However, we will start to learn more about them when we can send **astronauts**[21] further than the moon, where they have been already. Scientists have already sent **spacecraft**[22] onto the **surface**[23] of planets such as Mars, and with each journey, we can learn more and more about the **universe**[24] around us.



Listening

Presenter: We asked three students to **research**[1] the **latest**[2] **inventions**[3] and come back and tell us about their favourites. OK, first Omar… what did you find?

Omar: The best invention I read about was these smart trainers. They have 'smart' transport tickets sewn into the insides of the shoes. This means if you're travelling on **public transport**[4] and you're wearing the trainers you can just get on the bus, tram or underground without having to show your ticket. At the moment, they cost about £140, so I don't think a huge number of people will be wearing them yet. But there were big queues outside shoe shops when they first went on sale.

Presenter: **Eman … how about you?**

Eman: I found out about some amazing inventions, but my **favourite**[5] invention is this robo-bird. It's already been used at the Edmonton **International**[6] airport in Canada. It's a **robot**[7] bird which chases away real birds. It seems that in the past real birds have caused problems for planes taking off and landing. These **robotic**[8] birds **look like**[9] real **falcons**[10], which are **hunting**[11] birds, and **scare**[12] other types of birds away. They can even move their **wings**[13] up and down like real birds. They'll make airports much safer.

Presenter: **Samir … what did you discover?**

Samir: The best invention I found for sure is a **high-tech**[14] robot **tutor**[15]. It's about 16 inches tall and has arms, legs and a face. It has a camera which can tell if the student is losing **attention**[16] and will **adapt**[17] its **style**[18], so you don't get bored. The best thing is that it dances when you get a question right!

يبحث
احدث
اختراع
نقل عام
مفضل
دولي
إنسان آلي
آلي العمل
يشبه
صقر
الصيد
يخيف
أجنحة
تقنية عالية
معلم
انتباه
يتأقلم
نمط / أسلوب



Audioscript

Journalist: Today, I'm talking to a space scientist and astronomer, Professor El-Taweel, about where we are most likely to find life in our solar system. So, professor, I suppose most people think we'll first find life on Mars, is that right?

Professor: Well, many countries are sending spacecraft to that planet at the moment, so it's possible, yes. I think we'll certainly find water. But once we've finished exploring Mars, I think that we'll find other places that are just as likely to have life.

Journalist: **Really? Can you give me an example?**

Professor: Yes. Enceladus is one of the planet Saturn's many moons, but it is very interesting. In 2005, a spacecraft took photos of a huge amount of water coming up from the surface of the moon then flying out into space. Once we've sent a spacecraft back to Enceladus that can take some of this water, we'll know where it comes from and if there is life on the moon.

Journalist: **That's amazing. Are there any other places like this?**

Professor: Yes, Saturn's largest moon, called Titan, has lakes on the surface. These are probably made from gases, not water, but we have already sent a small spacecraft to Titan. When we've sent another one that can study the lakes, we will know more.

Journalist: **Anywhere else?**

Professor: Yes, there is also one of the planet Jupiter's moons, called Europa. Some scientists think there might be more water here than on earth. The problem is that the water on Europa lies about 15 kilometres below a frozen surface. We won't be able to study this until we've got powerful machines that can dig into the moon.



Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Unless a new .... is found to control traffic, we will never find a solution to the dilemma. (2022)
   ⓐ curriculum ⓑ respect ⓒ approach ⓓ altitude
2. They have benefited .... the new law. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ from ⓑ of ⓒ off ⓓ over
3. I'm afraid he's come at a/an .... time. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ convenient ⓑ inconvenient ⓒ comfortable ⓓ uncomfortable
4. I think we will find life on other .... (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ plains ⓑ planes ⓒ plans ⓓ planets
5. .... are constantly searching for planets which may support human life.
   ⓐ Astrologers ⓑ Astronomers ⓒ Archaeologists ⓓ Psychologists

6. She could make a/an .... big cake in the shape of a tower! It is extremely surprising.
ⓐ inconvenient ⓑ inconveniently ⓒ spectacularly ⓓ terrible

7. Can you tell me about the largest .... ? – I think it is Jupiter by surface area.
ⓐ universe ⓑ astronaut ⓒ plant ⓓ planet

8. Their house is .... by tall buildings. It's the only small building in the city.
ⓐ surrounded ⓑ rounded ⓒ surrendered ⓓ circled

9. The word '............' means made in large quantities, using machines.
ⓐ surround sound ⓑ implemented ⓒ inconvenient ⓓ mass-produced

10. The .... of my laptop aren't very good. I can't hear the music well.
ⓐ speakers ⓑ keys ⓒ microphones ⓓ screens

11. A .... is a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better.
ⓐ paramedic ⓑ biologist ⓒ performer ⓓ surgeon

12. Practically, some of the new rules won't be .... in our branch of the company.
ⓐ implied ⓑ implanted ⓒ immersed ⓓ implemented

13. .... have been able to study most of the planets for many years; it's their job.
ⓐ Astrologers ⓑ Architectures ⓒ Astronomers ⓓ Archeologists

14. A/An .... is when surgeons cut open a patient's body to repair it or remove a damaged organ.
ⓐ process ⓑ operation ⓒ mission ⓓ procession

15. Earth is one of the eight planets in the ....
ⓐ solar system ⓑ sun style ⓒ lunar system ⓓ sun system

16. The .... is all space, including all the stars and planets.
ⓐ universe ⓑ globe ⓒ world ⓓ Earth

17. The new game was so real that I was totally .... in it. I forgot I was just playing.
ⓐ overslept ⓑ reversed ⓒ immersed ⓓ existed

18. Neil Armstrong was the first person to set foot on the .... of the moon.
ⓐ top ⓑ flat ⓒ surface ⓓ roof

19. Inside a spacecraft, a/an .... could float weightlessly, hardly in contact with the floor.
ⓐ astronaut ⓑ surgeon ⓒ representative ⓓ astronomer

20. The .... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.
ⓐ impact ⓑ face ⓒ scar ⓓ surface

21. You should .... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.
ⓐ appear ⓑ float ⓒ inverse ⓓ immerse

22. We need to encourage .... in industry.
ⓐ innovation ⓑ planets ⓒ surgery ⓓ damage

23. Plastic toys are very cheap because thousands of them are .... in factories.
ⓐ mass-produced ⓑ miss-produced ⓒ mess-produced ⓓ math-produced

24. All the trains were cancelled, which was very .... , as I couldn't get to college.
ⓐ inspiring ⓑ suitable ⓒ inconvenient ⓓ convenient

25. Many customers are influenced by designer names and fancy ....
ⓐ operations ⓑ distances ⓒ packaging ⓓ planets

26. If you burn yourself, immediately .... the affected part in cold water.
ⓐ immerse ⓑ connect ⓒ charge ⓓ calculate

27. I developed a new .... to deal with naughty students.
ⓐ evidence ⓑ science fiction ⓒ organisation ⓓ approach

28. Unfortunately, the accident left the young man .... disabled.
ⓐ permanently ⓑ permanent ⓒ temporary ⓓ temporarily

29. She has a/an .... on her lung to remove a tumour.
ⓐ evidence ⓑ science fiction ⓒ operation ⓓ audience



Exercises on Main Vocabulary

30. One of the most important things is to find a planet with water as it is .... for life.
ⓐ minor ⓑ famous ⓒ essential ⓓ unimportant

31. He tried to run away but gave up when he found himself ....
ⓐ surrounded ⓑ implemented ⓒ immersed ⓓ mass-produced

32. Some people believe that girls can't do sports that .... strength such as powerlifting.
ⓐ disappear ⓑ appear ⓒ inquire ⓓ require

33. Products need to be well .... to be sold and make profits.
ⓐ realised ⓑ printed ⓒ advertised ⓓ published

34. What is the best .... for a headache?
ⓐ cause ⓑ illness ⓒ treatment ⓓ surgeon

35. It doesn't sound like a very .... solution.
ⓐ practical ⓑ botanical ⓒ surrounded ⓓ universe

36. If you want to attract customers, you need to .... in mass media.
ⓐ involve ⓑ advertise ⓒ suicide ⓓ survive

37. She accepted his diagnosis without ....
ⓐ surface ⓑ surgery ⓒ comment ⓓ commence

38. The hotel offers a high standard of service at .... price.
ⓐ curious ⓑ competitive ⓒ argumentative ⓓ illustrated

39. These materials are .... into other packaging products.
ⓐ cycled ⓑ immersed ⓒ recycled ⓓ consisted

40. The president is more .... than the prime minister.
ⓐ difficulty ⓑ powerful ⓒ power ⓓ intelligence

41. The government has............... economic aid to include many regions.
ⓐ expanded ⓑ damaged ⓒ exploded ⓓ hid

42. The only way to .... a fear is to face it.
ⓐ process ⓑ display ⓒ conquer ⓓ surround

43. The stars are more .... from the earth than the sun.
ⓐ innovation ⓑ descent ⓒ distance ⓓ distant

44. The competitors were chosen at random from the ....
ⓐ audience ⓑ treatment ⓒ experiment ⓓ surgery

45. I've done some .... to find out the cheapest way of travelling there.
ⓐ implement ⓑ research ⓒ researcher ⓓ evidence

46. Many of these teachers are struggling to .... financially.
ⓐ survive ⓑ die ⓒ innovate ⓓ immerse

47. Some animals have a remarkable ability to .... to changing environments.
ⓐ adopt ⓑ adapt ⓒ debit ⓓ debate

48. The .... must remain seated during the performance.
ⓐ innovation ⓑ spacecraft ⓒ audience ⓓ monitor

49. They hired a/an .... to help him with his English at home.
ⓐ lawyer ⓑ interviewee ⓒ trainee ⓓ tutor

50. Ali was .... to know what happened.
ⓐ spectacularly ⓑ article ⓒ immersive ⓓ curious

51. We will start to learn more about planets when we can send.......... further than the moon.
ⓐ professors ⓑ astronauts ⓒ astronomers ⓓ surgeons

52. The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to .... their work.
ⓐ immerse ⓑ display ⓒ damage ⓓ surround

53. Shopping online .... less time and effort.

ⓐ survives ⓑ requires ⓒ involves ⓓ conquers

54. Can you come at 10.30? I know it's .... for you, but I must see you.

ⓐ convenient ⓑ inconvenient ⓒ continent ⓓ contestant

55. It has been a/an .... successful year.

ⓐ artificial ⓑ introduced ⓒ awfully ⓓ spectacularly

56. The play was so good that I was totally .... in the story. I forgot I was in a theatre!

ⓐ implemented ⓑ boring ⓒ immersed ⓓ bored

57. The car had a powerful sound system with four ....

ⓐ spokesmen ⓑ speakers ⓒ implements ⓓ spokeswomen

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

58. The accident left him with permanent brain damage. The antonym of "permanent" is........

ⓐ endless ⓑ constant ⓒ temporary ⓓ continuous

59. He's constantly changing his mind. The synonym of "constantly" is ....

ⓐ rarely ⓑ occasionally ⓒ hardly ⓓ frequently

60. She got some books out of the library and immersed herself in history and culture. Immerse here means ....

ⓐ object ⓑ avoid ⓒ hate ⓓ interest

61. It will be very inconvenient for me to have no car. The word 'inconvenient' here can be replaced by ....

ⓐ suitable ⓑ unsuitable ⓒ acceptable ⓓ reasonable

62. Innovation and creation are ....

ⓐ different meaning ⓑ opposites ⓒ antonyms ⓓ synonyms

63. Many cosmonauts were sent to the moon to collect samples. Cosmonauts can be replaced with ....

ⓐ astrologers ⓑ astronauts ⓒ astronomers ⓓ spacecraft

64. What are the advantages and disadvantages to evolving technology? The word evolving means ....

ⓐ revolving ⓑ involving ⓒ developing ⓓ including

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

65. Rescuers used a special .... to find people trapped in collapsed buildings.

ⓐ realize ⓑ advice ⓒ device ⓓ advance

66. ....intelligence is the development of machines to perform tasks that normally require human intelligence.

ⓐ Natural ⓑ Artificial ⓒ High ⓓ Mechanical

67. I like to .... with different light filters on my camera.

ⓐ experiences ⓑ an experiment ⓒ an experience ⓓ experiment

68. I think technology could be used in museums to provide audio information about the objects on ....

ⓐ purpose ⓑ duty ⓒ display ⓓ charge

69. .... a bigger scale, technology has helped save lives.

ⓐ In ⓑ To ⓒ On ⓓ By

70. You have to be .... aware of your surroundings when walking home late at night.

ⓐ consonant ⓑ constant ⓒ constantly ⓓ immersive



Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

71. With the development of the printing .... , we can produce more books much more quickly than before.
ⓐ process ⓑ operation ⓒ tool ⓓ job
72. My brother is going to .... in social engineering; it is the branch he likes most.
ⓐ realise ⓑ specialise ⓒ emphasise ⓓ economise
73. My income's rather variable, but I earn £73 a day ....
ⓐ to average ⓑ of average ⓒ by average ⓓ on average
74. Instead .... buying a new pair of shoes, I had my old ones repaired.
ⓐ of ⓑ off ⓒ out ⓓ up
75. He spoke of his .... desire to play for England.
ⓐ burningly ⓑ burn ⓒ burning ⓓ burnt
76. Do you still consider space .... a waste of money?
ⓐ exportation ⓑ explosion ⓒ explanation ⓓ exploration
77. My uncle is a brilliant surgeon; he usually performs emergency .... successfully.
ⓐ co-operation ⓑ processions ⓒ operations ⓓ processes
78. He has attained the highest .... in his music exams.
ⓐ grade ⓑ degree ⓒ licence ⓓ disagree
79. Failure to pay your parking fine will result .... being arrested.
ⓐ with ⓑ for ⓒ to ⓓ in
80. We .... our car in the local newspaper to sell it.
ⓐ treated ⓑ immersed ⓒ advertised ⓓ announced
81. My teacher provides paintings and paper .... me.
ⓐ with ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ from
82. The hotel .... a shoe-cleaning service for guests.
ⓐ improves ⓑ proofs ⓒ proves ⓓ provides
83. She had to help her husband .... his work in his shop.
ⓐ done ⓑ do ⓒ to doing ⓓ doing
84. The .... orbits the sun.
ⓐ ground ⓑ position ⓒ land ⓓ Earth
85. The tree grows well in a sandy ....
ⓐ soil ⓑ floor ⓒ ground ⓓ location

Don't get confused Think carefully

86. Mai .... about her age to get married.
ⓐ lay ⓑ lain ⓒ laid ⓓ lied
87. The .... uses a transmitter that connects to your computer.
ⓐ advice ⓑ advise ⓒ devise ⓓ device
88. Once we have finished .... Mars, we'll probably find other places that have life.
ⓐ finding out ⓑ exploring ⓒ inventing ⓓ discovering
89. The children stopped talking at the teacher's ....
ⓐ road ⓑ pattern ⓒ approach ⓓ steel

صيغ وأزمنة المستقبل Future forms and tenses

❶	will / shall + inf.	المستقبل البسيط
❷	(am - is - are) + going to + inf.	المضارع المستمر
❸	(am - is - are) + v + ing	المضارع البسيط
❹	التصريف الأول للفعل (v or v + s)	المستقبل المستمر
❺	will be + ing.	المستقبل التام
❻	will have + P.P.	

1 will / shall + inf.

الإثبـــات Affirmation will / shall + inf.

* تأتى shall مع I - we

- We will study English tomorrow.
- I shall build a new house next year.

النفـــى Negative won't / shan't + inf.

- We won't study English tomorrow.
- I shan't build a new house next year.

الســـؤال Question Will / Shall + الفاعل + Inf. ?

- Will you study English tomorrow?
  ✔ Yes, we will. ✘ No, we won't.
- What will you do tomorrow?

المبنى للمجهول Passive will / shall be + inf.

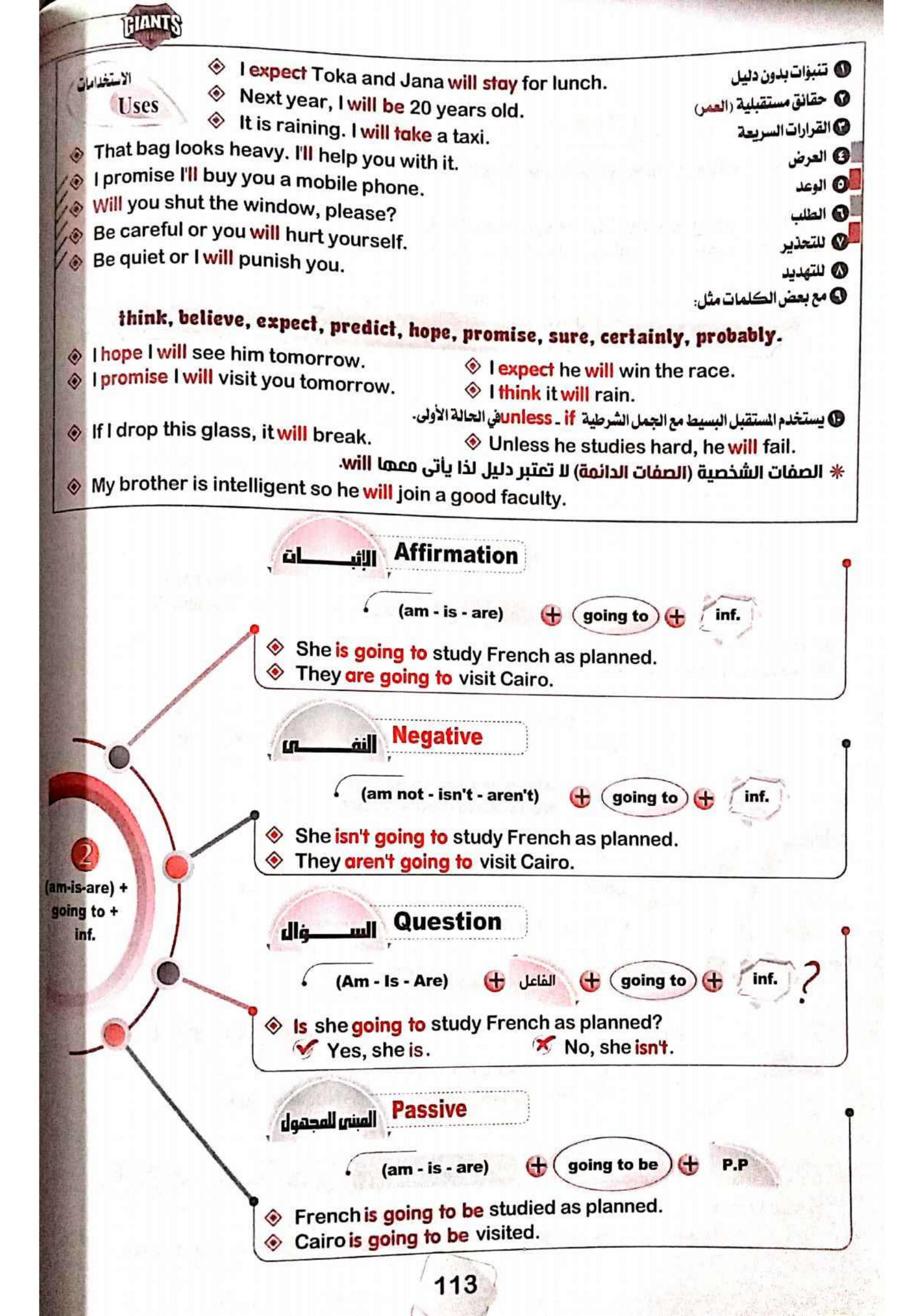
- English will be studied tomorrow by us.
- A new house will be built next year.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

* وهى كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط ولاحظ أنها تأتى أول الجملة وأخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غداً
next + مدة زمنية	القادم
in the future	في المستقبل
soon	قريبا
shortly	قريبا
in a few (months - weeks - days - hours - minutes ...)	

- I hope it won't rain tomorrow.
- Next week, we shall visit the museum.
- I will travel abroad in the future.
- They will soon speak English well.
- Excuse me; I'll be with you shortly.
- I will visit my uncle in a few days.
- She will finish her study in a few months.



GIANTS

Uses الاستخدامات

1. تنبؤات بدون دليل
   - I expect Toka and Jana will stay for lunch.
2. حقائق مستقبلية (العمر)
   - Next year, I will be 20 years old.
3. القرارات السريعة
   - It is raining. I will take a taxi.
4. العرض
   - That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
5. الوعد
   - I promise I'll buy you a mobile phone.
6. الطلب
   - Will you shut the window, please?
7. للتحذير
   - Be careful or you will hurt yourself.
8. للتهديد
   - Be quiet or I will punish you.
9. مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

think, believe, expect, predict, hope, promise, sure, certainly, probably.

- I hope I will see him tomorrow.
- I promise I will visit you tomorrow.
- I expect he will win the race.
- I think it will rain.

10. يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية if - unless في الحالة الأولى.
   - If I drop this glass, it will break.
   - Unless he studies hard, he will fail.

* الصفات الشخصية (الصفات الدائمة) لا تعتبر دليل لذا يأتى معها will.
- My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.

2 (am-is-are) + going to + inf.

Affirmation الإثبات

(am - is - are) + going to + inf.

- She is going to study French as planned.
- They are going to visit Cairo.

Negative النفى

(am not - isn't - aren't) + going to + inf.

- She isn't going to study French as planned.
- They aren't going to visit Cairo.

Question السؤال

(Am - Is - Are) + الفاعل + going to + inf. ?

- Is she going to study French as planned?
  - ✔ Yes, she is.
  - ✘ No, she isn't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + going to be + P.P

- French is going to be studied as planned.
- Cairo is going to be visited.

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ تنبؤات مع وجود دليل

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
- He can't swim. He is going to drown.
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.

(مع الصفات المؤقتة لانها تعتبر دليل)

❷ الخطط المستقبلية (plan - made a plan)

- Toka is going to play. She has planned that.
- I have a plan. I am going to start my project.

❸ النوايا (intend - intention)

- He is going to visit London. He has intended that.
- We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.

❹ القرارات المسبقة (decide - make a decision - made up .... mind)

- They have decided they are going to study.
- She has made up her mind. She is going to leave.
- I've made my decision. I am going to travel abroad.

❺ أشياء على وشك الحدوث:

- Be careful! You are going to break it.
- Watch out! You're going to fall.

لاحظ

❶ بعض الكلمات الدالة علي will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

think - believe - sure

- It is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
- I think it will rain.

❷ الصفات الشخصية/ الدائمة لا تعتبر دليل أما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل

- My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.
- He is very ill so I am sure he is going to see a doctor.

Present Continuous ③

(am-is-are) + V + ing.

Affirmation الإثبات

(am - is - are) + v + ing.

- She is studying French as arranged.
- They are cooking meals as prepared.

Negative النفي

(am not - isn't - aren't) + v + ing.

- She isn't studying French as arranged.
- They aren't cooking meals as prepared.

Question السؤال

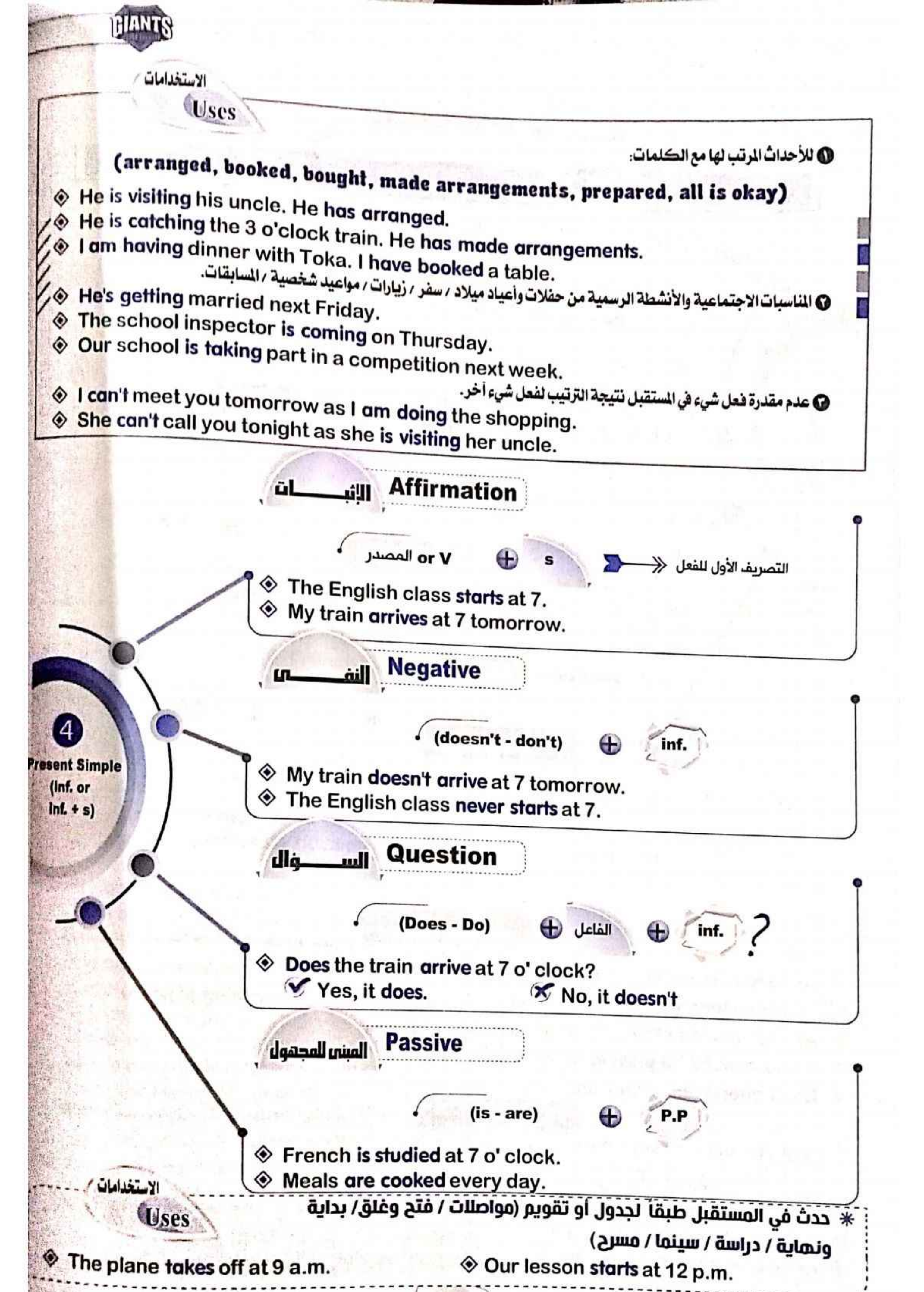
(am - is - are) + الفاعل + v + ing ?

- Is she studying French as arranged?
  - ✔ Yes, she is.
  - ✘ No, she isn't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + being + P.P

- French is being studied as arranged.
- Meals are being cooked as prepared.



الاستخدامات
Uses

❶ للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات:

(arranged, booked, bought, made arrangements, prepared, all is okay)

- He **is visiting** his uncle. He **has arranged**.
- He **is catching** the 3 o'clock train. He **has made arrangements**.
- I **am having** dinner with Toka. I **have booked** a table.

❷ المناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيارات / مواعيد شخصية / المسابقات.

- He's **getting** married next Friday.
- The school inspector **is coming** on Thursday.
- Our school **is taking** part in a competition next week.

❸ عدم مقدرة فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة الترتيب لفعل شيء آخر.

- I **can't** meet you tomorrow as I **am doing** the shopping.
- She **can't** call you tonight as she **is visiting** her uncle.

4 Present Simple (Inf. or Inf. + s)

الإثبات Affirmation

التصريف الأول للفعل ← المصدر or V + s

- The English class **starts** at 7.
- My train **arrives** at 7 tomorrow.

النفي Negative

(doesn't - don't) + inf.

- My train **doesn't arrive** at 7 tomorrow.
- The English class **never starts** at 7.

السؤال Question

(Does - Do) + الفاعل + inf. ?

- **Does** the train **arrive** at 7 o' clock?
  ✔ Yes, it **does**. ✘ No, it **doesn't**

المبنى للمجهول Passive

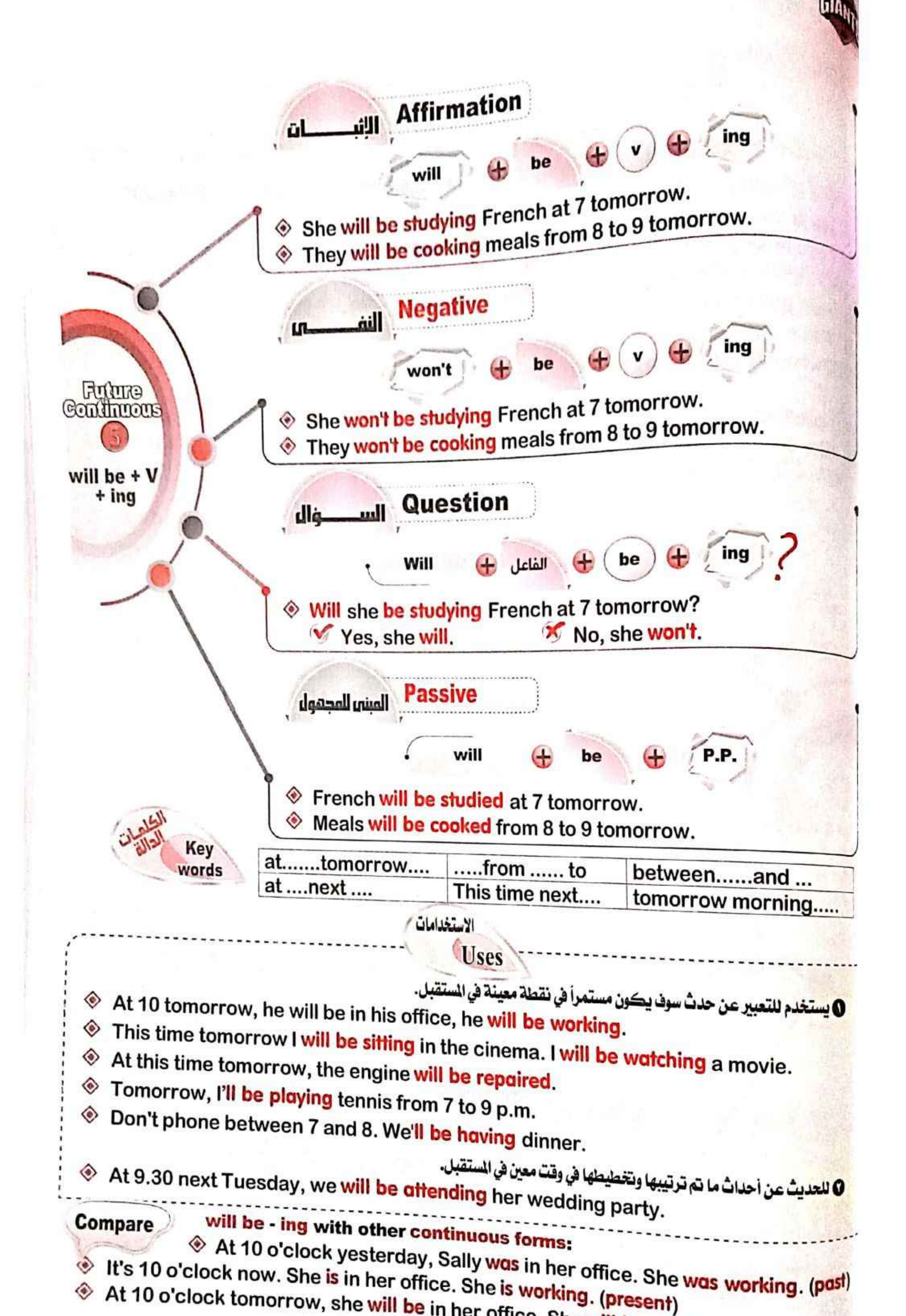
(is - are) + P.P

- French **is studied** at 7 o' clock.
- Meals **are cooked** every day.

الاستخدامات
Uses

* حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لجدول أو تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلق/ بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)

- The plane **takes** off at 9 a.m.
- Our lesson **starts** at 12 p.m.



Future Continuous 5

will be + V + ing

الإثبات Affirmation

will + be + v + ing

- She **will be studying** French at 7 tomorrow.
- They **will be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

النفي Negative

won't + be + v + ing

- She **won't be studying** French at 7 tomorrow.
- They **won't be cooking** meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

السؤال Question

Will + الفاعل + be + ing ?

- **Will** she **be studying** French at 7 tomorrow?
  ✓ Yes, she **will**. ✗ No, she **won't**.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

will + be + P.P.

- French **will be studied** at 7 tomorrow.
- Meals **will be cooked** from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

at.......tomorrow....	.....from ...... to	between......and ...
at ....next	This time next....	tomorrow morning.....

الاستخدامات Uses

❶ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في المستقبل.

- At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he **will be working**.
- This time tomorrow I **will be sitting** in the cinema. I **will be watching** a movie.
- At this time tomorrow, the engine **will be repaired**.
- Tomorrow, I'**ll be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'**ll be having** dinner.

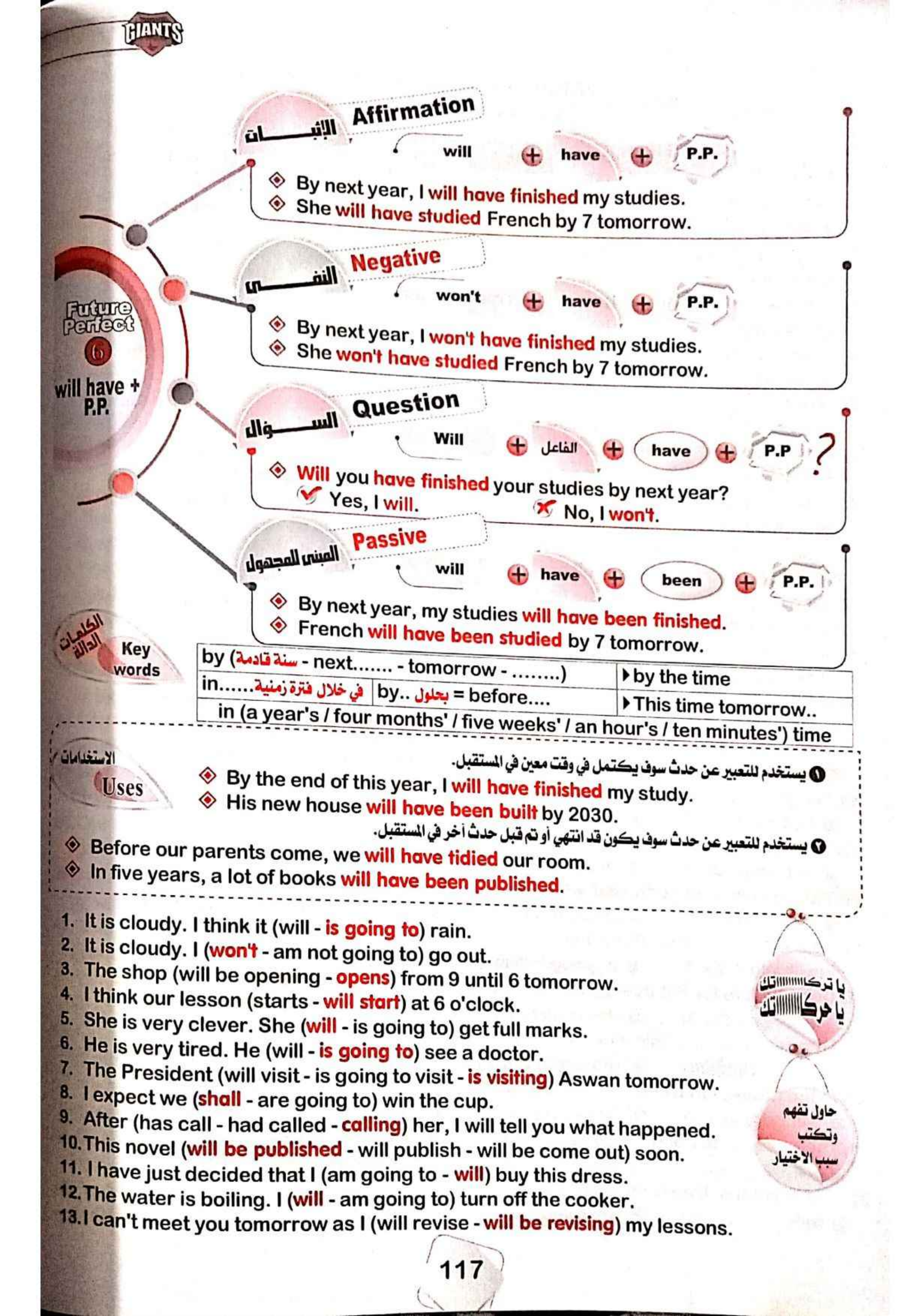
❷ للحديث عن أحداث ما تم ترتيبها وتخطيطها في وقت معين في المستقبل.

- At 9.30 next Tuesday, we **will be attending** her wedding party.

Compare

will be - ing with other **continuous forms:**

- At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally **was** in her office. She **was working**. (past)
- It's 10 o'clock now. She **is** in her office. She **is working**. (present)
- At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** in her office. She **will be working**. (future)



Future Perfect 6
will have + P.P.

الإثبـــات Affirmation

will + have + P.P.

- By next year, I **will have finished** my studies.
- She **will have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

النفـــي Negative

won't + have + P.P.

- By next year, I **won't have finished** my studies.
- She **won't have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

الســـؤال Question

Will + الفاعل + have + P.P ?

- **Will** you **have finished** your studies by next year?
  ✔ Yes, I **will**. ✘ No, I **won't**.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

will + have + been + P.P.

- By next year, my studies **will have been finished**.
- French **will have been studied** by 7 tomorrow.

الكلمات الدالة Key words

by (سنة قادمة - next....... - tomorrow - ....)		▸ by the time
in......في خلال فترة زمنية	by.. بحلول = before....	▸ This time tomorrow..
in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time		

الاستخدامات Uses

❶ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكتمل في وقت معين في المستقبل.

- By the end of this year, I **will have finished** my study.
- His new house **will have been built** by 2030.

❷ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهي أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

- Before our parents come, we **will have tidied** our room.
- In five years, a lot of books **will have been published**.

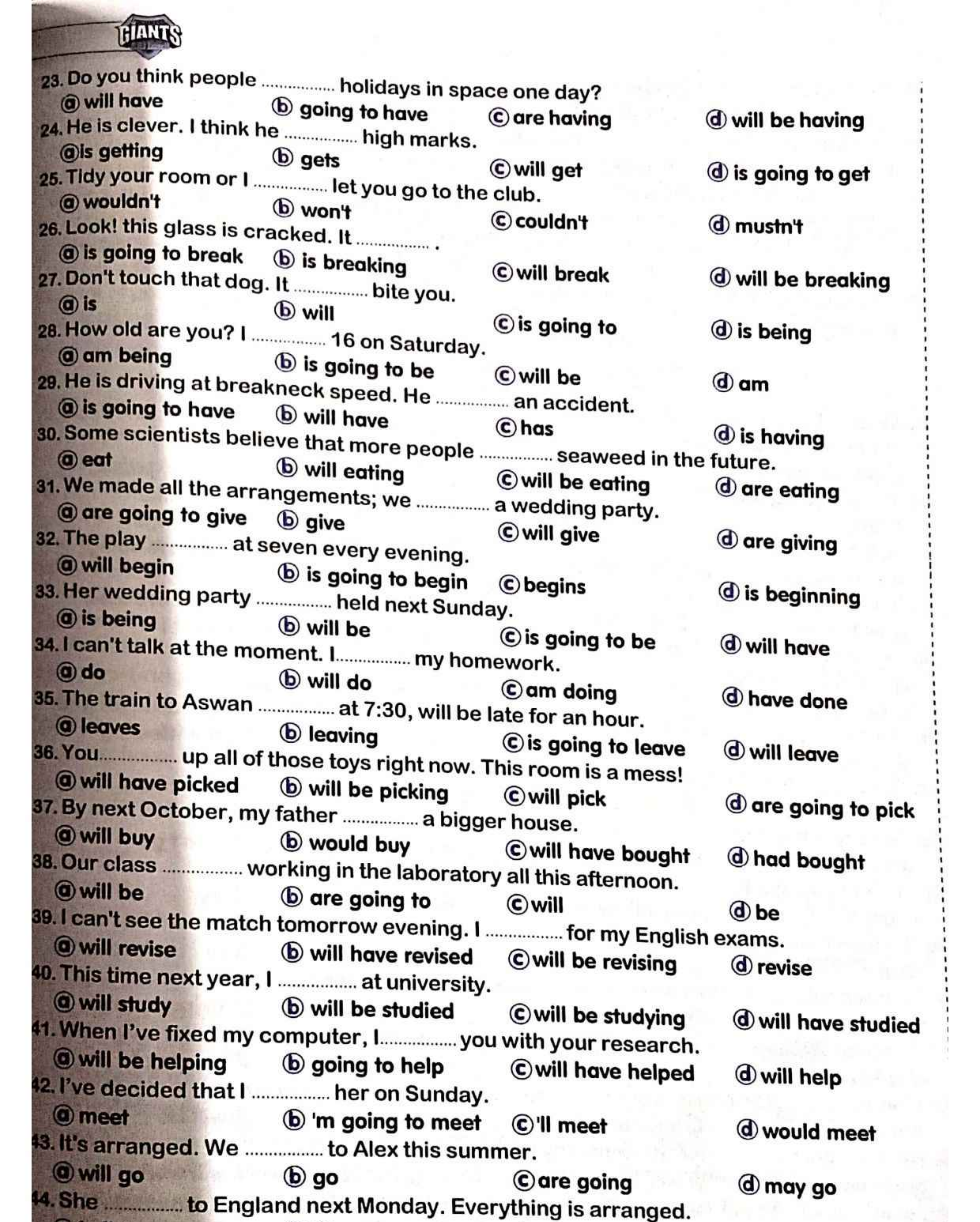
يا تركـــاتك يا حركـــاتك

حاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

1. It is cloudy. I think it (will - **is going to**) rain.
2. It is cloudy. I (**won't** - am not going to) go out.
3. The shop (will be opening - **opens**) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
4. I think our lesson (starts - **will start**) at 6 o'clock.
5. She is very clever. She (**will** - is going to) get full marks.
6. He is very tired. He (will - **is going to**) see a doctor.
7. The President (will visit - is going to visit - **is visiting**) Aswan tomorrow.
8. I expect we (**shall** - are going to) win the cup.
9. After (has call - had called - **calling**) her, I will tell you what happened.
10. This novel (**will be published** - will publish - will be come out) soon.
11. I have just decided that I (am going to - **will**) buy this dress.
12. The water is boiling. I (**will** - am going to) turn off the cooker.
13. I can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise - **will be revising**) my lessons.



1. I .... 60 next month. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ will be ⓑ am going to be ⓒ am ⓓ will have been
2. We hope he .... the championship next year. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ will have won ⓑ will be wining ⓒ is going to win ⓓ will win
3. I can't meet up with you because I .... all evening.
   ⓐ was revising ⓑ will revise ⓒ will be revising ⓓ have revised
4. I'm sure robots .... doctors and nurses more and more in the future.
   ⓐ will help ⓑ have helped ⓒ going to help ⓓ will be helped
5. I expect Rami .... a successful engineer one day.
   ⓐ will be ⓑ are ⓒ going to be ⓓ have been
6. More people .... electric cars in the future. Therefore we will cut down pollution.
   ⓐ were using ⓑ have to use ⓒ going to use ⓓ will be using
7. I think we .... the match.
   ⓐ are going to win ⓑ are winning ⓒ win ⓓ will win
8. Hassan has got full marks; I think he .... the faculty he likes.
   ⓐ is going to join ⓑ joins ⓒ joined ⓓ going to join
9. I .... to Sharm El Sheikh as planned.
   ⓐ am going to go ⓑ shall go ⓒ will go ⓓ go
10. Who do you think .... the final match?
    ⓐ would win ⓑ had won ⓒ will win ⓓ is going to win
11. I don't know how to log into the internet. - It's easy. I .... you now, don't worry.
    ⓐ am going to show ⓑ won't show ⓒ will show ⓓ going to show
12. Be careful, the bus .... you: it is very near.
    ⓐ isn't going to hit ⓑ will hit ⓒ had hit ⓓ is going to hit
13. I .... 16 next week. Are you going to come to my birthday party?
    ⓐ am being ⓑ will be ⓒ am going to be ⓓ was
14. Will you .... the bus to school next week?
    ⓐ be take ⓑ be taken ⓒ take ⓓ taken
15. Watch out! You .... yourself.
    ⓐ will have cut ⓑ are going to cut ⓒ are cutting ⓓ will cut
16. Take a coat to London next week because it .... cold.
    ⓐ be ⓑ going to be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ would be
17. I think it .... this afternoon.
    ⓐ will rain ⓑ is going to rain ⓒ is raining ⓓ will be raining
18. Don't be late for the bus because it .... wait for you.
    ⓐ will ⓑ aren't going to ⓒ won't ⓓ don't will
19. I am sure I .... this mountain soon.
    ⓐ will be climbing ⓑ am going to climb ⓒ will climb ⓓ am climbing
20. In the future, I think we .... electric cars.
    ⓐ will drive ⓑ be driving ⓒ drive ⓓ are driving
21. They .... to build a new hospital in the city next year.
    ⓐ will ⓑ going ⓒ are going ⓓ will be
22. The branch of tree is shaking, it ....
    ⓐ falls ⓑ will fall ⓒ is falling ⓓ is going to fall



23. Do you think people .... holidays in space one day?
ⓐ will have ⓑ going to have ⓒ are having ⓓ will be having
24. He is clever. I think he .... high marks.
ⓐ is getting ⓑ gets ⓒ will get ⓓ is going to get
25. Tidy your room or I .... let you go to the club.
ⓐ wouldn't ⓑ won't ⓒ couldn't ⓓ mustn't
26. Look! this glass is cracked. It ....
ⓐ is going to break ⓑ is breaking ⓒ will break ⓓ will be breaking
27. Don't touch that dog. It .... bite you.
ⓐ is ⓑ will ⓒ is going to ⓓ is being
28. How old are you? I .... 16 on Saturday.
ⓐ am being ⓑ is going to be ⓒ will be ⓓ am
29. He is driving at breakneck speed. He .... an accident.
ⓐ is going to have ⓑ will have ⓒ has ⓓ is having
30. Some scientists believe that more people .... seaweed in the future.
ⓐ eat ⓑ will eating ⓒ will be eating ⓓ are eating
31. We made all the arrangements; we .... a wedding party.
ⓐ are going to give ⓑ give ⓒ will give ⓓ are giving
32. The play .... at seven every evening.
ⓐ will begin ⓑ is going to begin ⓒ begins ⓓ is beginning
33. Her wedding party .... held next Sunday.
ⓐ is being ⓑ will be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ will have
34. I can't talk at the moment. I............... my homework.
ⓐ do ⓑ will do ⓒ am doing ⓓ have done
35. The train to Aswan .... at 7:30, will be late for an hour.
ⓐ leaves ⓑ leaving ⓒ is going to leave ⓓ will leave
36. You............... up all of those toys right now. This room is a mess!
ⓐ will have picked ⓑ will be picking ⓒ will pick ⓓ are going to pick
37. By next October, my father .... a bigger house.
ⓐ will buy ⓑ would buy ⓒ will have bought ⓓ had bought
38. Our class .... working in the laboratory all this afternoon.
ⓐ will be ⓑ are going to ⓒ will ⓓ be
39. I can't see the match tomorrow evening. I .... for my English exams.
ⓐ will revise ⓑ will have revised ⓒ will be revising ⓓ revise
40. This time next year, I .... at university.
ⓐ will study ⓑ will be studied ⓒ will be studying ⓓ will have studied
41. When I've fixed my computer, I............... you with your research.
ⓐ will be helping ⓑ going to help ⓒ will have helped ⓓ will help
42. I've decided that I .... her on Sunday.
ⓐ meet ⓑ 'm going to meet ⓒ 'll meet ⓓ would meet
43. It's arranged. We .... to Alex this summer.
ⓐ will go ⓑ go ⓒ are going ⓓ may go
44. She .... to England next Monday. Everything is arranged.
ⓐ is flying ⓑ flies ⓒ fly ⓓ would fly
45. Perhaps I .... him next week.
ⓐ will see ⓑ am seeing ⓒ am going to see ⓓ see



46. Mr Al Daifi .... married next Sunday.
ⓐ will get ⓑ will have got ⓒ is getting ⓓ is going to get
47. Don't be late. The bus .... at exactly ten o'clock!
ⓐ leaves ⓑ going to leave ⓒ has left ⓓ left
48. .... me a favour, please?
ⓐ Will you do ⓑ Are you doing ⓒ Do you do ⓓ Are you going to do
49. By five o'clock tonight, I .... all my homework.
ⓐ finish ⓑ am finishing ⓒ will finish ⓓ 'll have finished
50. The cup is on the edge of the table. It .... fall.
ⓐ is going to ⓑ will ⓒ shall ⓓ being

Exercises on Future Forms ⊃ Level 2

51. Within the next hundred years, we .... a way to use water for fuel.
ⓐ will have been found ⓑ are going to find
ⓒ will be found ⓓ will have found
52. A: I am going out. Do you want to come with me? B: Why not? I .... my jacket.
ⓐ take ⓑ am taking ⓒ am going to take ⓓ will take
53. A: What .... at the weekend? B: I intend to visit my friends in the village.
ⓐ are you going to do ⓑ did you do ⓒ you will do ⓓ you are doing
54. In three decades, schools .... computers instead of teachers.
ⓐ will be used ⓑ is going to use ⓒ will use ⓓ will have used
55. Farmers .... the rainforest because they are cutting down more trees.
ⓐ will be damaged ⓑ will damage
ⓒ going to damage ⓓ are going to damage
56. We have agreed where and when to meet; we .... at the club tonight as arranged.
ⓐ are going to meet ⓑ will meet ⓒ meet ⓓ are meeting
57. The sky is clear. I think it ....
ⓐ is going to rain ⓑ will rain ⓒ isn't going to rain ⓓ won't rain
58. The sky is too dark, I .... for a walk.
ⓐ won't be going ⓑ won't have gone ⓒ am not going to go ⓓ won't go
59. I'm determined. I .... and succeed. You will see.
ⓐ am trying ⓑ shall try ⓒ do try ⓓ try
60. We won't have finished .... 7 pm.
ⓐ at ⓑ by ⓒ for ⓓ in
61. Our school .... part in the sports competition next year.
ⓐ shall take ⓑ takes ⓒ is taking ⓓ going to take
62. The year 2025..............the four-hundredth anniversary of the founding of the university.
ⓐ is being ⓑ will have been ⓒ will be ⓓ is going to be
63. Mother.............. the house work between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.
ⓐ is doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ will be
64. Next month, I .... for the company for six years.
ⓐ will have worked ⓑ will be working ⓒ am going to work ⓓ will work
65. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .... my homework.
ⓐ would be doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ may do
66. In 2030, I .... a teacher for 20 years.
ⓐ will be ⓑ am going to be ⓒ have been ⓓ will have been

67. Tomorrow I .... a football match with my friend. I have phoned him.
ⓐ will watch ⓑ am watching ⓒ will be watching ⓓ watch

68. What time .... your plane take off?
ⓐ does ⓑ would ⓒ will ⓓ is

69. Mr Ali has an appointment with a dentist. He .... a doctor next Monday.
ⓐ see ⓑ is seeing ⓒ saw ⓓ will see

70. I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village; I............spend the weekend there.
ⓐ am going to ⓑ will ⓒ was going to ⓓ may

71. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It .... busy there today!
ⓐ is being ⓑ was ⓒ is going to be ⓓ has been

Exercises on Passive in Future Forms

72. Don't worry. Your phone .... by tomorrow morning. (2021)
ⓐ will have fixed ⓑ is going to be fixed
ⓒ is going to fix ⓓ will have been fixed

73. I think more desert land .... by 2030.
ⓐ will have been reclaimed ⓑ will have reclaimed
ⓒ will reclaim ⓓ will be reclaimed

74. In the future, most of our work .... by machines.
ⓐ will be doing ⓑ has been done ⓒ will be done ⓓ will do

75. In the near future companies think simple operations .... by robots.
ⓐ will be done ⓑ will be doing ⓒ will do ⓓ will have done

76. A new bridge .... here by the government by the end of this year.
ⓐ will build ⓑ will be building ⓒ will have been built ⓓ will have built

77. By 2040, we hope that oil .... replaced by clean energy.
ⓐ will have ⓑ will have been ⓒ will be ⓓ would have been

Don't get confused: Think carefully

78. I hope .... an army officer when I grow up.
ⓐ to be ⓑ will be ⓒ being ⓓ would be

79. Don't pick up the phone. I .... it.
ⓐ answer ⓑ am answering ⓒ would answer ⓓ am going to answer

80. He is going to visit us next week. This means that .... next week.
ⓐ he has arranged to visit us ⓑ he has planned to visit us
ⓒ he has prepared to visit us ⓓ he has thought of visiting us

81. There's a train .... at six o'clock tomorrow. I hope I will catch it.
ⓐ will leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ is going to leave ⓓ leaving

82. He is visiting us next week. This means that .... next week.
ⓐ he has arranged to visit us ⓑ he has planned to visit us
ⓒ he has decided to visit us ⓓ he has promised to visit us

Part 2 Lessons



Unit 3

Beyond imagination

1 Key Vocabulary

sensor (n)	مستشعر / جهاز استشعار	record (v)(n)	سجل / يسجل / رقم قياسي	drugs (n)	عقاقير / مخدرات
monitor (v)(n)	مراقب / يراقب	treat (v)	يعالج / يعامل	survive (v)	ينجو / يعيش
method (n)	طريقة / نظام / كيفية	treatment (n)	علاج / معاملة / معالجة	advertise (v)	يعلن
distance (n)	مسافة	surgeon (n)	جراح	measure (v)(n)	يقيس / قياس
consultant (n)	استشارى	surgery (n)	جراحة	condition (n)	ظرف / حالة / شرط
device (n)	جهاز	surgical (adj)	جراحي	impact (v)(n)	تأثير / يؤثر

2 Main Vocabulary

addicted	مدمن	evolve (v)	يتطور	discuss (v)	يناقش
recognise (v)	يدرك / يعرف	involve (v)	يتضمن / يتورط	perform (v)	يؤدي / يمثل
freezing (adj)	متجمد	hacker (n)	قرصان / مخترق	decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)
equipment (n)	معدات	charge (v)(n)	يتقاضى أجر / تكلفة / يشحن	human (n)	بشر
cure (v)(n)	علاج / يعالج	recycle (v)	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد استخدام	paper-thin	رفيع جدا / نحيل / دقيق
roll (v)(n)	بكرة / لفة / يتدحرج	transform (v)	يحول / يغير	safety (n)	أمان
accurately (adv)	بدقة	artificial (adj)	اصطناعي	save (v)	ينقذ / يدخر
create (v)	يخلق / يبدع	issue (n)	قضية / مشكلة	benefit (v)(n)	فائدة / يستفيد
complicated (adj)	معقد	last (v)	يستمر / يدوم	individual (adj)(n)	فرد / فردي
option (n)	خيار/اختيار	latest (adj)	أحدث	belief (n)	اعتقاد
identify (v)	يحدد	handle (v)	يستعمل /يتناول	assistant (n)	بائع / مساعد
director (n)	مخرج / مدير	mission (n)	مهمة	diabetes (n)	مرض السكر
replace (v)	يستبدل	escape (v)	يهرب	application (app) (n)	تطبيق
distant (adj)	بعيد	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	accuracy (n)	دقة

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

below freezing	تحت درجة التجمد
keep in touch	يبقي علي اتصال
self-driving cars	عربات ذاتية القيادة
keep in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال مع
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
health care	الرعاية الصحية
create an opportunity	يخلق فرصة
controlled by humans	يتحكم فيه الإنسان

in fact (in truth)	في الواقع
addicted to	مدمن لـ
be connected to	متصل بـ
throw away	يرمي / يتخلص من
thanks to	بفضل
communicate in	يتواصل بـ (لغة)
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
electric cars	سيارات كهربائية



4 Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
sensor	مستشعر / جهاز الإحساس	a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
treatment	علاج	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill
surgeon	جراح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better
drugs	أدوية / عقاقير	medicines or things that make medicines
record	سجل	information about something that is written on computer, film, etc. or stored down so that it can be looked at in the future

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
artificial	اصطناعي	unnatural - (man-made)	natural
survive	ينجو / يعيش	be alive	die
complicated	معقد	complex - very difficult	simple - easy
advantages	مميزات	pros - merits	disadvantages - cons-demerits
distant	بعيد	faraway - remote	nearby - close



6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
treat	يعالج / يعامل	treatment	علاج	treatable	قابل للعلاج
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded	مسجل
		recorder	جهاز تسجيل		
survive	ينجو / يحيا	survival	البقاء علي قيد الحياة	surviving	ناج
recycle	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد استخدام	recycling	إعادة التصنيع	recycled	معاد تصنيعه
differ	يختلف	difference	اختلاف / فرق	different	مختلف
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية	identified	محدد
measure	يقيس	measure	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
distance	يبعد / يقصي	distance	مسافة	distant (adj)	بعيد



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	**decide on + n.**	يختار
depend on	يعتمد علي	**based in**	مقره في
on the one hand	من ناحية	**on the other hand**	من ناحية أخرى
cure (v)(n)	علاج / يعالج	**care**	عناية / رعاية
sensible	حكيم	**sensitive**	حساس
degree	درجة حرارة/ مؤهل جامعي / درجة علمية	**grade**	مستوى / صف دراسي / درجة امتحان

Possible future uses of AI

Experts[1] all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence[2] (AI) in the future, but how will this affect our lives? Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants[3]. That means many shops and businesses won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements[4] to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced[5].

Many people think that self-driving cars will have replaced[6] traditional cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music. AI will also help us to communicate[7] in any language. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to[8] AI.

1) خبير
2) ذكاء اصطناعي
3) مساعد / بائع
4) اعلان
5) منتج بكثرة
6) يستبدل
7) يتواصل
8) بفضل

Read the comments which followed a blog called 'A world without technology'

Posted 8 Sept 2021.17.30 **Eduardo**

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We depend on[1] smartphones, tablets, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it helps me keep in touch with[2] him. On a bigger scale[3], technology has helped save lives in Mexico. We have very advanced warning systems which give people more time to escape[4] to safety[5] if an earthquake[6] is coming. On the other hand[7], cyber security has become a big issue[8]. Computer hackers[9] can cause serious harm to individuals[10] and organisations[11]. Important information can be stolen. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

Posted 9 Sept 2021.13.50 **Hadia 123**

Technology surrounds[12] us. It's everywhere. It's hard to imagine[13] a life without technology. But of course, we could live without it. Only forty years ago people survived without smart phones or the internet. On the whole[14], I think technology can be dangerous because people can become addicted[15] to it. They forget about simple things like walking in nature and being with friends.

Posted 11 Sept 2021.16 30 **Joat 19**

I don't agree with the last comment. The benefits of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover new cures for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but on balance, we can't live without it now.

1) يعتمد على
2) يبقي علي تواصل مع
3) علي نطاق أوسع
4) يهرب
5) أمان
6) زلزال
7) من ناحية اخري
8) قضية
9) هكر
10) فرد
11) منظمة
12) يحيط
13) يتخيل
14) في المجمل
15) مدمن



An argumentative essay

مقال جدلي

The advantages and disadvantages of evolving technology

Introduction

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger **screens**[1] or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. **On a bigger scale,** computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every **organisation**[2] become more and more **powerful**[3]. We now **depend on** everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

body paragraph

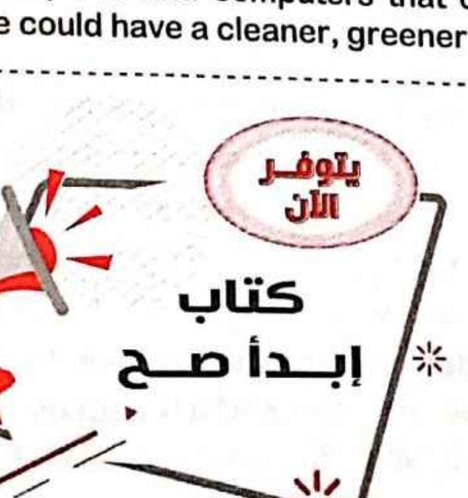
On the one hand, this **makes things easier for** all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be **connected to**[4] the internet anywhere, so you can always **find out**[5] information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very **bad for**[6] the **environment**[7]. We all want to buy the latest phones, televisions or computer games, but that often means **throwing away**[8] the old ones. You can **recycle**[9] some parts of old **equipment**[10], but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

Conclusion

On the whole, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can **improve**[11] our everyday lives. **On balance**, however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology on old equipmentIt is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the **latest**[12] technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for **decades**[13], we could have a cleaner, greener world.

١) شاشة
٢) منظمة
٣) قوي
٤) متصل بـ
٥) يكتشف
٦) ضار لـ
٧) البيئة
٨) يرمي
٩) يعيد تدوير
١٠) معدات
١١) يحسن
١٢) أحدث
١٣) عقد (١٠ سنوات)





Listening

Presenter: In the last 70 years, Technology has changed **dramatically**[1] in the field of **medicine**[2] Back then they didn't have computers, smart phones or even the internet. These days robots are used to **carry out**[3] **operations**[4]. They are still controlled by humans but using **robots**[5] allows doctors to **perform**[6] the operations with more control and **accuracy**[7]. But will robots be performing operations completely on their own one day? Let's ask our **medical**[8] expert, Reuben.

Reuben : One thing you may've heard about is Artificial intelligence or AI. A number of companies think within the next year or two, robots will have started to perform some very simple operations autonomously run by computers. Soon **surgeons**[9] won't even need to be in the room. It'll even be possible to perform an operation from another country.

Presenter: Wow! Incredible Another really exciting **development**[10] is how we can use our smartphones to **monitor**[11] our health. What have you got here?

Reuben : Well, this **app**[12] is connected to a little **sensor**[13] on my arm. It tells me my blood sugar level I click a button on my phone and place it near the sensor. It makes a little sound, and there you can see my glucose level is 7.3 It's especially helpful for people with **diabetes**[14], which is a disease which **occurs**[15] when your blood sugar is too high.

Presenter: **Amazing! So, what next?**

Reuben : Well, it's my **belief**[16] that by the next decade AI in particular , will have **transformed**[17] health care completely, and will be saving lives. Using data from patient / medical **records**[18], AI will be able to **identify**[19] and name illnesses, design **treatment**[20] plans, and **create**[21] new **drugs**[22] way faster than any doctor or **consultant**[23]. Some people worry that AI systems will replace doctors and nurses, but I don't think so. They'll be able to **concentrate on**[24] tasks which depend uniquely on human skills instead , such as empathy . But what is certain is that we'll all be healthier and living longer due to new technology.

1. بشكل كبير
2. الطب
3. ينفذ
4. عملية
5. إنسان آلي
6. يؤدي
7. دقة
8. طبي
9. جراح
10. تنمية
11. يراقب
12. تطبيق
13. جهاز استشعار
14. مرض السكر
15. يحدث
16. اعتقاد
17. يحول
18. سجل
19. يحدد
20. علاج
21. يخلق
22. عقاقير
23. استشاري
24. يركز على



Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Pollution levels in the Nile are being .... closely.
   ⓐ survived ⓑ hacked ⓒ captured ⓓ monitored
2. We ought to hire a public relations .... to help improve our image.
   ⓐ consultant ⓑ hacker ⓒ temperature ⓓ layer
3. A security .... detects any movement or change in temperature.
   ⓐ devise ⓑ device ⓒ advice ⓓ advise
4. It can be difficult for someone with a criminal .... to find work.
   ⓐ decade ⓑ discuss ⓒ record ⓓ device
5. You should .... older people with respect.
   ⓐ cure ⓑ treatment ⓒ treaty ⓓ treat
6. There must be a revolution in the .... of diseases such as cancer.
   ⓐ care ⓑ treatment ⓒ treaty ⓓ treat
7. The hospital is famous for its pioneering work in heart ....
   ⓐ surgical ⓑ surgery ⓒ surgeon ⓓ surgically
8. .... masks help prevent the spread of germs.
   ⓐ Surgical ⓑ Surgery ⓒ Surgeon ⓓ Surgically
9. .... are medicines or things that make medicines.
   ⓐ Drugs ⓑ Drums ⓒ Drags ⓓ Sensors
10. A .... is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat and sound.
   ⓐ lighter ⓑ sensation ⓒ heater ⓓ sensor
11. The new .... appears to have no harmful side effects.
   ⓐ diabetes ⓑ issue ⓒ drug ⓓ dug
12. A woman who .... the accident was able to describe what happened.
   ⓐ survived ⓑ hacked ⓒ captured ⓓ benefited
13. The new product was .... in the local newspaper.
   ⓐ announced ⓑ advertised ⓒ cured ⓓ hacked
14. The test is designed to .... children's reading ability.
   ⓐ recycle ⓑ replace ⓒ escape ⓓ measure
15. She is in a stable .... following the accident.
   ⓐ director ⓑ device ⓒ condition ⓓ cure
16. People who are addicted to.............. need help.
   ⓐ distance ⓑ drugs ⓒ equipment ⓓ measure
17. He'd completely changed - I didn't .... him
   ⓐ find out ⓑ identity ⓒ realise ⓓ recognise
18. In the desert, days are hot but nights are ....
   ⓐ freeze ⓑ frozen ⓒ freezing ⓓ hot
19. All .... used during a medical operation must be sterile.
   ⓐ temperature ⓑ equipment ⓒ advertise ⓓ methods
20. There's no instant way of finding a .... for COVID-19.
   ⓐ treat ⓑ cure ⓒ heal ⓓ core
21. We want to develop an awareness of the .... of eating healthy foods.
   ⓐ damages ⓑ demerits ⓒ cons ⓓ benefits
22. Greed is a common .... weakness.
   ⓐ consultant ⓑ safety ⓒ human ⓓ humane
23. He undertakes a risky .... behind enemy lines.
   ⓐ surgery ⓑ mission ⓒ tusk ⓓ mansion

24. The government has .... new guide lines on food safety.
ⓐ hacked ⓑ survived ⓒ escaped ⓓ issued

25. We must .... the cause of the problem before we look for solutions.
ⓐ cure ⓑ identity ⓒ identify ⓓ recognise

26. The instructions are too .... for children, they won't understand it.
ⓐ obvious ⓑ clear ⓒ complicated ⓓ simple

27. Very small changes in weight are difficult to.............. accurately.
ⓐ replace ⓑ perform ⓒ measure ⓓ create

Exercises on Main Vocabulary

28. The place was .... from a quiet farming village into a busy port.
ⓐ transmitted ⓑ transplanted ⓒ transformed ⓓ made

29. Almost all your household junk can be re-used or ....
ⓐ cycling ⓑ recycling ⓒ cycled ⓓ recycled

30. Is there enough .... to charge him with murder?
ⓐ prove ⓑ evidence ⓒ legend ⓓ court

31. Our armed forces have to .... to meet new threats.
ⓐ evolve ⓑ revolve ⓒ involve ⓓ evolvement

32. The older machines are gradually being .... by new ones.
ⓐ replaced ⓑ transplanted ⓒ recycled ⓓ involved

33. The .... is away today. Would you like to speak to her assistant?
ⓐ candidate ⓑ director ⓒ applicant ⓓ trainee

34. The children's performance was so ... that all the audience clapped their hands happily.
ⓐ impressive ⓑ disappointed ⓒ depressed ⓓ expensive

35. The investigators are searching for a/an .... that he is the murderer.
ⓐ Improvement ⓑ prove ⓒ evidence ⓓ development

36. He left his .... in charge when he went away on holiday.
ⓐ equipment ⓑ decade ⓒ application ⓓ assistant

37. Advertising has to .... an attractive image for the product it is selling.
ⓐ create ⓑ survive ⓒ addict ⓓ consult

38. Most smokers are suffering from heart and lung ....
ⓐ medicines ⓑ cures ⓒ processes ⓓ diseases

39. A new approach to teaching was .... in public schools.
ⓐ implemented ⓑ sent ⓒ behaved ⓓ caused

40. She .... herself in completing her research.
ⓐ operated ⓑ evolved ⓒ immersed ⓓ recognised

41. There seems to be no historical .... for most of the legends about King Arthur.
ⓐ knights ⓑ causes ⓒ chivalry ⓓ evidence

42. The city was .... by tall, strong gates.
ⓐ created ⓑ implemented ⓒ surrounded ⓓ promoted

43. I think our teachers should try using different .... in teaching.
ⓐ operations ⓑ educational ⓒ surgeries ⓓ methods

44. I have .... slices of raw beef.
ⓐ paper money ⓑ paper knife ⓒ paper-thin ⓓ paper clip

45. The vacuum cleaners contain.............. that detect the amount of dust and type of floor.
ⓐ senses ⓑ implements ⓒ tenses ⓓ sensors

46. Doctors keep the health .... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.
ⓐ paper ⓑ records ⓒ placements ⓓ figures

47. It's important to .... a good impression when you meet a new client.
ⓐ conquer ⓑ create ⓒ immerse ⓓ survive

48. I didn't .... Khaled in his uniform.
ⓐ earn ⓑ improve ⓒ survive ⓓ recognise

49. He .... his style of painting while working as a magazine illustrator.
ⓐ evolved ⓑ exploded ⓒ hid ⓓ survived

50. The company is run by a board of ....
ⓐ directors ⓑ distances ⓒ injuries ⓓ cuts

51. According to historical .... , she was married at the age of eighteen.
ⓐ retirement ⓑ treatments ⓒ drugs ⓓ records

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

52. The boys and girls did well in the exams, but .... , the girls got higher marks.
ⓐ in the balance ⓑ by balance ⓒ balanced ⓓ on balance

53. It was cold. .... fact, it was freezing.
ⓐ Of ⓑ With ⓒ On ⓓ In

54. He failed in his efforts to give.............. smoking.
ⓐ up ⓑ down ⓒ on ⓓ of

55. Since immigrating to Canada, Mark has been struggling to .... with his friends.
ⓐ keep the touch ⓑ stay in touch ⓒ keep on touch ⓓ stay to touch

56. The town councillor is .... of responding the public's needs.
ⓐ in change ⓑ in charge ⓒ responsibility ⓓ on charge

57. Her speech made a great impact .... the audience.
ⓐ of ⓑ with ⓒ on ⓓ in

58. .... stole hundreds of people's card details.
ⓐ Sensors ⓑ Surgeons ⓒ Hackers ⓓ Consultants

59. While sailing around the world, she used a satellite phone to .... in touch with her family?
ⓐ stay ⓑ be ⓒ keep ⓓ all are ok

60. People who are addicted .... drugs need help.
ⓐ on ⓑ to ⓒ with ⓓ by

Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

61. Many people think that self- driving cars will have.............. traditional cars within the next few years.
ⓐ replaced ⓑ placed ⓒ emplaced ⓓ unplaced

62. Getting fit again has been a long slow ....
ⓐ operation ⓑ operated ⓒ process ⓓ processed

63. The poor injured driver had two major .... in two weeks.
ⓐ operations ⓑ operated ⓒ processes ⓓ processed

64. The project is designed to provide young people .... work.
ⓐ with ⓑ for ⓒ at ⓓ from

65. The famous actress disclosed exclusive news, but she .... about her age!
ⓐ lay ⓑ lain ⓒ lied ⓓ lain

66. He has a .... of electrical wire in the garage.
ⓐ role ⓑ roll ⓒ rule ⓓ ruler

67. In the next few decades, computers will do more work. A 'decade' is a ....
ⓐ period of a hundred years ⓑ period of ten years
ⓒ period of two weeks ⓓ name of a place

العبارات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل Future time clauses

* تتكون العبارة الزمنية من:

الرابط الزمني (تعبير ظرفي)	عبارة زمنية	عبارة رئيسية
After	I have done my homework,	I'll go to bed.

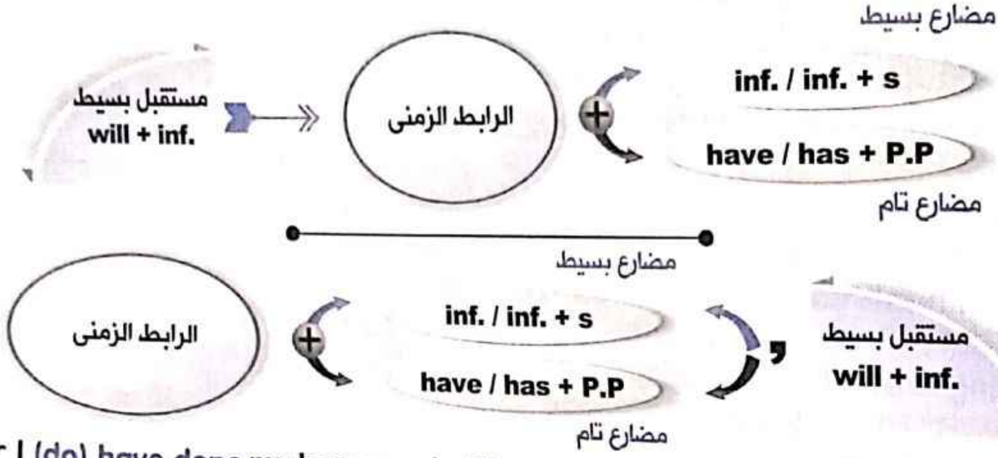
* يمكن أن تتضمن العبارة الزمنية أحد الروابط الزمنية مثل:

	when عندما	till / until حتى
after بعد		because بسبب
before قبل	while بينما	

* يمكن أن تتضمن العبارة الزمنية أحد التعبيرات الظرفية مثل:

as soon as بمجرد أن	once عندما	immediately حالاً بعد
by the time قبل	the moment في اللحظة التي	the minute في الدقيقة التي

* لاحظ تكوين العبارة الزمنية:



- After I (do) have done my homework, I'll go to bed.
- She will call me as soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London.
- When it gets warmer, the snow will start to melt.

مضارع بسيط

won't + مصدر + until + inf. / inf. + s | have / has + P.P

مضارع تام

- He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
- I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.

ركز

* يمكننا استخدام أي صيغة من صيغ المستقبل في العبارة الرئيسة
- After I have finished my study, I am going to travel abroad as planned.

* لا يمكننا استخدام will في العبارة الزمنية (الجملة التي بها الرابط الزمني)
- When she comes, she will tell you everything. (will come ×)

* إذا لم يأتى فاعل بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية يأتى بعدهم اسم أو الفعل مضاف إليه ing مثل:

after بعد	when عندما	until حتى
before قبل	while بينما	till حتى

- After studying, I will sleep. (= After I have studied.....)

Exercises on • Linking words in the present

(2021)

1. He will inform us of the new date after he .... it.
ⓐ knew ⓑ knows ⓒ will knew ⓓ had known
2. Once he .... the research, he'll start writing the report
ⓐ has been doing ⓑ will do ⓒ has done ⓓ had done
3. Don't worry, once I .... of the exam result, I will tell you.
ⓐ have informed ⓑ was informed ⓒ have been informed ⓓ am informing
4. Don't worry; I .... until you feel better.
ⓐ didn't leave ⓑ won't leave ⓒ hadn't left ⓓ will leave
5. When we .... enough information, we'll tell you.
ⓐ have ⓑ had ⓒ had had ⓓ will have
6. I'll keep working hard until I .... the exam.
ⓐ pass ⓑ passes ⓒ will pass ⓓ had passed
7. Never quit a job you have, till you .... another one.
ⓐ found ⓑ have found ⓒ will find ⓓ will have found
8. I .... able to write the report until I've done the research.
ⓐ wasn't ⓑ didn't be ⓒ won't be ⓓ wouldn't be
9. Normal people won't travel in space until it .... less expensive.
ⓐ had become ⓑ become ⓒ has become ⓓ will become
10. Once you................ your homework, will you tidy your room please?
ⓐ have finished ⓑ will finish ⓒ had finished ⓓ finishes
11. When I .... the experiments, we'll collect all the results.
ⓐ have done ⓑ will do ⓒ has done ⓓ does
12. .... I've connected to the internet, I'll download some new songs.
ⓐ Once ⓑ Till ⓒ Before ⓓ As
13. Don't worry; I won't leave until you ....
ⓐ have been arrived ⓒ had arrived ⓑ will arrive ⓓ have arrived
14. Once I .... making the cake, I'll give you some to taste.
ⓐ will finish ⓑ had finished ⓒ have finished ⓓ will be finishing
15. After I have studied, I .... TV.
ⓐ going to watch ⓑ watch ⓒ will watch ⓓ watches
16. My brother will go to the park when he .... his homework
ⓐ finishes ⓑ had finished ⓒ finish ⓓ will finish
17. When I've fixed my computer, I................ you with your research.
ⓐ will be helping ⓑ going to help ⓒ will have helped ⓓ will help
18. The moment you .... at the airport, I will be waiting for you.
ⓐ 've arrived ⓑ are arriving ⓒ will be arriving ⓓ will arrive
19. Once .... the research, I will start writing the report.
ⓐ I've done ⓑ I am doing ⓒ 'll do ⓓ I'd done
20. I won't buy a car until I .... a lot of money.
ⓐ have saved ⓑ saved ⓒ will save ⓓ had saved
21. When you .... school, will you join university?
ⓐ leaves ⓑ leave ⓒ will leave ⓓ left

22. I .... there for you. Don't worry.
ⓐ am being ⓑ am going to be ⓒ will have been ⓓ will be

23. .... to Canada tomorrow? - Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa.
ⓐ Do you travel ⓑ Are you travelling
ⓒ You will travel ⓓ Are you going to travel

24. The school inspector .... on Thursday.
ⓐ will come ⓑ is going to come ⓒ is coming ⓓ comes

25. Seif and I .... the final match at the stadium tomorrow. I wonder if you could join us.
ⓐ will watch ⓑ are watching ⓒ are going to watch ⓓ watch

26. I can't meet you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.
ⓐ had met ⓑ am meeting ⓒ will meet ⓓ going to meet

27. Watch out! The car .... you!
ⓐ is going to hit ⓑ is hitting ⓒ hits ⓓ will hit

28. I've enrolled on an English course. It .... on Sunday next week.
ⓐ will start ⓑ is starting ⓒ is going to start ⓓ starts

29. For the next year, Ahmed .... on an engineering project in Alexandria.
ⓐ was working ⓑ will have worked ⓒ will be working ⓓ had been working

30. I can't play tennis with you this evening as I .... an urgent task for hours.
ⓐ will be doing ⓑ can't be doing ⓒ should have done ⓓ will do

31. All next year, scientists .... on an effective vaccine against COVID-19.
ⓐ have worked ⓑ will be working ⓒ will work ⓓ will have worked

32. I can't go to the cinema with you this evening as I............my lessons for tomorrow's test.
ⓐ will revise ⓑ will be revising ⓒ had to revise ⓓ going to revise

33. In next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist.
ⓐ talk ⓑ will be talking ⓒ talking ⓓ have talked

34. In a few years' time, I think that all my friends .... at university!
ⓐ will studying ⓑ going to study ⓒ is studying ⓓ will be studying

35. I can't come to the sports club next week because I .... to Aswan.
ⓐ will travel ⓑ will be travelling ⓒ will travelling ⓓ will be traveled

36. They .... a new factory in this area by the end of 2030.
ⓐ will have built ⓑ will be building ⓒ will build ⓓ are building

37. He .... sick for six days tomorrow.
ⓐ will be ⓑ are going to be ⓒ is ⓓ will have been

38. At the end of this month, they .... in their house for one year.
ⓐ are being ⓑ are going to be ⓒ will have been ⓓ will be

39. At five o'clock tomorrow, she............ on a train to Alex.
ⓐ will be travelling ⓑ will have travelled ⓒ going to travel ⓓ travels

40. In four years' time, she .... her education.
ⓐ will be finished ⓑ will finish
ⓒ will have finished ⓓ will have been finished

41. We won't stop climate change .... everyone understands the benefits of renewable energy. It's the only way.
ⓐ once ⓑ after ⓒ when ⓓ until

42. By next May, I .... a new house.
ⓐ will build ⓑ am going to build ⓒ will have built ⓓ will be building

43. Don't phone me tonight. I .... a shower.
ⓐ have ⓑ will have had ⓒ will have ⓓ am having

44. I can't meet you this evening. I .... the shopping.
ⓐ am doing ⓑ do ⓒ have done ⓓ may do

45. Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. I .... the kids to school.
ⓐ may drive ⓑ driving ⓒ drive ⓓ will be driving

46. The new station .... by the prime minister next week.
ⓐ opened ⓑ is being opened ⓒ will open ⓓ will be opened

47. By the end of today, Ola .... four bars of chocolate.
ⓐ will have eaten ⓑ eats ⓒ will be eating ⓓ has eaten

48. .... a cure for cancer in the next ten years?
ⓐ Will we have developed ⓑ Do we develop
ⓒ We'll be developing ⓓ We will develop

49. We hope that by tomorrow the situation ....
ⓐ is improving ⓑ improve ⓒ was improving ⓓ will have improved

50. I'm excited that I .... next door to my best friend from tomorrow!
ⓐ live ⓑ will have lived ⓒ have lived ⓓ will be living

51. Hmm, good idea! I .... the money hidden in this box until later.
ⓐ will be keeping ⓑ have kept ⓒ will keep ⓓ will have kept

52. I want to see you tomorrow. .... all day?
ⓐ were you studying ⓑ Will you study ⓒ Will you be studying ⓓ have you studied

Don't get confused — **Think carefully**

53. We won't be able to live in deserts until we .... enough water there.
ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ finding ⓓ had found

54. We wouldn't be able to live in deserts until we .... enough water there.
ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ finding ⓓ had found

55. We wouldn't be able to live in deserts until .... enough water there.
ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ finding ⓓ had found

56. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ I promise I have helped you. ⓑ I promise I am going to help you.
ⓒ I promise I am helping you. ⓓ I promise I will help you.

57. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ By the time he leaves the house, he will have checked his email.
ⓑ By the time he left the house, he will have checked his email.
ⓒ By the time he had left the house, he will have checked his email.
ⓓ By the time he leaves the house, he will be checked his email.

58. It's already quite late, so little James .... when you arrive.
ⓐ is sleeping ⓑ will sleep ⓒ will have slept ⓓ will be sleeping

59. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ After she finishes her lunch, she will have met some friends.
ⓑ After she finish her lunch, she will meet some friends.
ⓒ After she has finished her lunch, she will have met some friends.
ⓓ After she has finished her lunch, she will meet some friends.

1 Writing Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
blog	مدونة	argumentative essay	مقال جدلي	as a result	ونتيجة لذلك
comment	تعليق	descriptive essay	مقال وصفي	on a big scale	على نطاق واسع
express	تعبر عن	narrative essay	مقال روائي	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
expression	تعبير	expository essay	مقال تفسيري	on the whole	في المجمل
in addition	بالإضافة الى	persuasive essay	مقال اقناعي	on balance	وبالتوازى
warning	تحذير	sentence	جملة	on average	في المتوسط
positive effects	الاثار الايجابية	phrase	عبارة	on one hand	من جهة
negative effects	الاثار السلبية	paragraph	فقرة	on the other hand	من جهة أخري
advantages and disadvantages	مزايا و عيوب	merits and demerits	مزايا و عيوب	pros and cons	مزايا و عيوب

2 Chapter three

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
that's your lot	لن تحصل على المزيد	put a finger on	يحدد	dusty	مغبر
gloomy	كئيب	apprenticeship	تدريب	celebration	احتفال
spider	عنكبوت	wrap	يغلف / يلف	skin	جلد
web	شبكه	pale	شاحب	argument	جدال / خلاف
apprentice	صبى / متمرن	elderly	كبير السن	realise	يدرك

3 Vocabulary for Translation

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
principles	مبادئ	disputes	نزاعات / خلافات	attitude	سلوك / اتجاه / موقف
shortage	نقص	eliminate	يقضي على	aim to/ at	يهدف إلى
factors	عوامل	relations	علاقات	be aware of	على وعي بـ
organize	ينظم	service	خدمة	destruction	الدمار / التخريب
host	يستضيف	ignore	يتجاهل	deterioration	تدهور
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	talent	موهبة	consequences	عواقب / نتائج
revolution	ثورة	reclaim	يستصلح	construction	بناء / تشييد
destruction	تخريب	require	يتطلب	consumption	استهلاك
value	قيمة	enable	يمكن	virtues	فضائل
rate	معدل	self-reliance	الاعتماد على الذات	vision	رؤية
crime	جريمة	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي	alternatives	بدائل
exert	يبذل	self-control	ضبط النفس	burdens	أعباء
policy	السياسة	self-sacrifice	التضحية بالذات	developing countries	الدول النامية
benefits	فوائد	tolerance	تسامح		

Types of Essay أنــواع المقال

1 Persuasive Essay المقال الاقناعي

- The writer seeks to persuade / convince the reader to support his specific point of view about a topic. يسعى الكاتب إلى إقناع القارئ ليدعم وجهة نظره في موضوع ما.
- It requires reasons, facts and evidences on the topic. ويتطلب أسباب وحقائق ودلائل

Opinion Essay مقال الرأي

- The writer expresses an opinion and supports that opinion with facts and examples. يعبر فيه الكاتب عن رأيه ويدعم هذا الرأي بالحقائق والأمثلة.
- The writer can use phrases such as "I think" or "I believe". يستطيع الكاتب استخدام عبارات مثل ((أعتقد)) أو ((أظن)).

2 Reflective Essay مقال تأملي

- It describes a real experience, imagined event, special object, or place, something you read, watched or heard. يصف المقال التأملي خبرة حقيقية أو حدث تخيلي أو موضوع خاص أو مكان أو شيء قرأته أو شاهدته أو سمعت عنه.
- The writer analyses his experiences and explains what can be learned from them. يحلل الكاتب تجاربه ويشرح ماذا يمكننا ان نتعلم منهم

3 Descriptive Essay مقال وصفي

- It describes the topic. يصف الموضوع
- It appeals to the five senses (touch, smell, sight, sound, and taste) and use sensory details. يخاطب الحواس الخمس ويستخدم تفاصيل حسية
- It uses personifications, metaphors, similes and creative styles. يستخدم التجسيدات الاستعارات والتشبيهات والأساليب الإبداعية.

4 Narrative Essay مقال قصصي / سردي

- It narrates / tells a story or a situation. أو موقف يروي قصة
- It includes a sequence of actions. يشمل سرد تسلسل من الأحداث
- It includes the setting of the scene (time & place). يشمل إعدادات المشهد (الوقت والمكان).

5 Expository / Informative Essay مقال تفسيري

- It defines something or gives information. إنه يعرف شيئا ما أو يعطي معلومات
- It explains a process and gives instructions. يعطي تعليمات
- It needs research and the writer's knowledge. يحتاج لبحث و معرفة الكاتب

6 Argumentative Essay مقال جدلي

- It expresses an extended argument for a particular thesis statement. يعبر عن نقاش واسع لبيان أطروحة معينة.
- The author takes a clearly defined stance on their subject and builds up an evidence-based case for it. يتخذ المؤلف موقفا محددا بخصوص موضوعه و يؤيده بالأدلة.

how to express about advantages and disadvantages كيفية التعبير عن المزايا والعيوب

advantages المزايا

On the one hand,	من ناحية.....
On the whole	فى المجمل
What I like about.....	ما يعجبنى فى .....
The advantage of ... is that	ميزة .....هو
The best thing about ....is	افضل شئ فى .....هو

disadvantages العيوب

On the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
On the whole	فى المجمل
What I don't like about.....	ما يعجبنى فى .....
The disadvantage of ... is that	عيب .....هو
The worst thing about ....is	افضل شئ فى .....هو

GIANTS

Exercises on Writing

1. A/An .... essay provides a detailed sensory description of something.
   ⓐ narrative ⓑ descriptive ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
2. A/An .... essay seeks to make the reader agree with the writer's point of view.
   ⓐ narrative ⓑ descriptive ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
3. A/An .... essay defines something or gives instructions.
   ⓐ narrative ⓑ descriptive ⓒ argumentative ⓓ expository
4. A/An .... essay narrates a story.
   ⓐ narrative ⓑ descriptive ⓒ argumentative ⓓ expository
5. "Describe what it might be like to live on another planet." This is a title for a/an .... essay.
   ⓐ descriptive ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
6. A/An .... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "What is the greatest challenge facing young people today?".
   ⓐ expository ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ argumentative
7. A/An .... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "A situation I will never forget".
   ⓐ expository ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ descriptive
8. "Write a story about your first day of school." This is a title for a/an .... essay.
   ⓐ descriptive ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
9. A/An ... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "Steps to learn English".
   ⓐ expository ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ descriptive
10. A/An .... essay is a type of essay that the writer seeks to make the reader agree with the writer's point of view.
    ⓐ descriptive ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
11. A/An .... essay is a type of essay that appeals to the senses of touch, smell, sight, sound, and taste.
    ⓐ descriptive ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
12. "Explain how the invention of the printing press changed European society in the 15th century." This is a title for a/an .... essay.
    ⓐ descriptive ⓑ argumentative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ expository
13. A narrative essay is the one that ....
    ⓐ provides a clear, focused explanation of a topic.
    ⓑ presents an extended evidence-based argument.
    ⓒ tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one.
    ⓓ provides a detailed sensory description of something.

Exercises on Translation

1. Creative thinking, which is necessary for success in life, is the process by which individuals bring new ideas.

(أ) التفكير الإبداعي ، الضروري للنجاح في الحياة ، هو العملية التي يجلب المجتمع من خلالها أفكارًا جديدة.
(ب) التفكير الإبداعي ، الضروري للنجاح في الحياة ، هو العملية التي يجلب الأفراد من خلالها أفكارًا جديدة.
(ج) التفكير النقدى ، الضروري للنجاح في الحياة ، هو العملية التي يجلب الأفراد من خلالها أفكارًا جديدة.
(د) التفكير الإبداعي ، الضرورة للنجاح في الحياة ، هو العملية التي يجلب الأفراد من خلالها أفكارًا جيدة.

2. Caring for people with special needs and providing them with a decent life is a national duty that the individuals and the government must do together.

(أ) رعاية ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة وتوفير الحياة الكريمة لهم واجب وطني على الأفراد والحكومة القيام به معًا.
(ب) رعاية ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة وتوفير الحياة الكريمة لهم واجب دولى على الأفراد والحكومة القيام به معًا.
(ج) رعاية ذوي القدرات الخاصة وتوفير الحياة الكريمة لهم واجب وطني على الأفراد والحكومة القيام به معًا.
(د) رعاية ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة وتوفير الحياة الكريمة لهم واجب وطني على الأسرة والحكومة القيام به معًا.

3. The government establishes projects to increase national production and encourage the private sector to invest their capital.

(أ) تقوم الحكومة بإنشاء مشاريع لزيادة الإنتاج الدولى ، وتشجيع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال .
(ب) قامت الحكومة بإنشاء مشاريع لزيادة الإنتاج المحلي ، وتشجيع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال .
(ج) تقوم الحكومة بإنشاء مشاريع لزيادة الإنتاج المحلي ، وتشجيع القطاع العام على استثمار رأس المال .
(د) تقوم الحكومة بإنشاء مشاريع لزيادة الإنتاج المحلي ، وتشجيع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال .

٤. تلعب الرياضة دوراً حيوياً فى حياتنا . فمن خلالها نكتسب الكثير من الفضائل مثل التعاون.

ⓐ Sport plays a vital rule in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
ⓑ Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we require many virtues such as cooperation.
ⓒ Sports plays a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.
ⓓ Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.

٥. لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائما دوراً حيوياً فى تحسين المجتمع ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى.

ⓐ Egyptian women have always played a vital role in improving society and the grown of the Egyptian economy.
ⓑ Egyptian women have always played a vital role in improving society and the growth of the Egyptian economic.
ⓒ Egyptian women have always played a vital role in improving society and the growth of the Egyptian economy.
ⓓ Egyptian women have always played a vital rule in improving society and the growth of the Egyptian economy.

٦. إن تحقيق التقدم لبلدنا الحبيب سيظل مجرد حلم مستحيل إذا لم نتمكن من مواجهة الزيادة السكانية.

ⓐ Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are not able to face over pollution.
ⓑ Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are not able to face overpopulation.
ⓒ Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just an impossible dream if we are able to face over population.
ⓓ Achieving progress for our beloved country will remain just a possible dream if we are not able to face over population.

Exercises on

apprenticeship	تدريب مهنى	you learn a job while you are doing it
argument	جدال	you do not agree with someone
dusty	مغبر / ملئ بالغبار	it is dry and dirty
gloomy	كليبد مظلم	it is dark and sad
behave yourself	احسن التصرف	you should behave well
a spider's web	شبكة عنكبوت	something a spider uses to catch insects

1. A/An .... means you learn a job while you are doing it.
   ⓐ argument ⓑ apprenticeship ⓒ dusty ⓓ web
2. If someone tells you to .... yourself ,it means you should behave well
   ⓐ behave ⓑ punish ⓒ blame ⓓ ashamed
3. A spider's .... is something a spider uses to catch insects.
   ⓐ veil ⓑ web ⓒ dusty ⓓ gloomy
4. A/An .... you do not agree with someone.
   ⓐ argument ⓑ dusty ⓒ behave ⓓ gloomy
5. If something is dry and dirty, that means it is ....
   ⓐ veil ⓑ dusty ⓒ argument ⓓ bride
6. Unfair bosses and .... customers make us unhappy on the job.
   ⓐ polite ⓑ kind ⓒ generous ⓓ rude
7. If I got a / an .... to a proper trade, I'd be financially secure for life.
   ⓐ apprenticeship ⓑ degree ⓒ grade ⓓ work
8. We're having a small .... for Dad's birthday.
   ⓐ celebration ⓑ anniversary ⓒ memory ⓓ celebrity
9. You're looking .... - are you feeling well?
   ⓐ healthy ⓑ pale ⓒ rude ⓓ good
10. If something is............... , it is dark and sad.
    ⓐ gloomy ⓑ veil ⓒ web ⓓ pleasant
11. If people are ...., they are unhappy and have no hope.
    ⓐ pale ⓑ gloomy ⓒ hopeful ⓓ cheerful
12. Many families fail to............. the importance of a well-balanced diet.
    ⓐ realise ⓑ get ⓒ release ⓓ hint
13. The .... preys on small flies and other insects using its web.
    ⓐ ant ⓑ scorpion ⓒ spider ⓓ snake
14. It's impossible to put a / an .... on the number of homeless people in London.
    ⓐ arm ⓑ toe ⓒ elbow ⓓ finger
15. He .... a bandage carefully around my injured wrist.
    ⓐ threw ⓑ wrapped ⓒ tore ⓓ removed
16. Don't let that glue come into contact with your ....! It hurts to remove.
    ⓐ shirt ⓑ phone ⓒ skin ⓓ leather
17. Doctors recommend that young children and the .... get vaccinated.
    ⓐ elder ⓑ elderly ⓒ older ⓓ eldest
18. Those involved in the fraud created a .... of fake companies to hide their activities.
    ⓐ set ⓑ club ⓒ web ⓓ lists
19. I worked as a/an .... electrician for 18 months.
    ⓐ employer ⓑ profession ⓒ trainer ⓓ apprentice
20. It takes years, maybe a lifetime, to heal a .... heart.
    ⓐ damage ⓑ broken ⓒ good ⓓ bad



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think everyone is getting ready for the wedding party, ... ?
   ⓐ isn't she ⓑ aren't they? ⓒ isn't he? ⓓ don't I
2. Both Ali and Ahmed .... at the cinema yesterday.
   ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ have been ⓓ are being
3. I can hear .... knocking at the door.
   ⓐ anyone ⓑ no one ⓒ everyone ⓓ someone
4. ...., I don't like the man.
   ⓐ Personally ⓑ Theoretical ⓒ Terribly ⓓ Fantastically
5. This television program gives you the .... news.
   ⓐ last ⓑ latest ⓒ least ⓓ later
6. Neither Samira nor Nadia .... well.
   ⓐ answers ⓑ answer ⓒ are answering ⓓ have answered
7. He's given a tour round historic places every time he visits Cairo, ... ?
   ⓐ hasn't he ⓑ isn't he ⓒ does he ⓓ he isn't
8. I want you to tell me the .... truth.
   ⓐ all ⓑ exactly ⓒ really ⓓ whole
9. When will you .... come and see us in our new house?
   ⓐ can ⓑ be able to ⓒ able to ⓓ be able
10. I only want .... little sugar in my tea, please.
    ⓐ a ⓑ the ⓒ such ⓓ too
11. She always said that when she grew up she wanted to be ....
    ⓐ doctor ⓑ a doctor ⓒ the doctor ⓓ doctors
12. There is a new television programme called: '................ wants to be a millionaire?'.
    ⓐ Which ⓑ What ⓒ Who ⓓ Whose
13. I expect you think I'm .... because I don't understand that.
    ⓐ smart ⓑ stupid ⓒ deaf ⓓ crazy
14. Does anyone honestly .... what a politician says nowadays?
    ⓐ discover ⓑ think ⓒ believe ⓓ credit
15. Which of these tenses is Present Simple? It is ....
    ⓐ He spoke ⓑ He is speaking ⓒ He speaks ⓓ He will speak
16. Don't worry, there's no need to answer .... I'm not in a hurry.
    ⓐ firstly ⓑ fairly ⓒ immediately ⓓ easily
17. As of now we still don't know if we will be .... to fulfill our contract.
    ⓐ reliable ⓑ able ⓒ capable ⓓ enable
18. At ...., I think she's very pretty.
    ⓐ little ⓑ lost ⓒ less ⓓ least
19. Jill: 'Look at all the work I've done, aren't you impressed?' Frank: ....
    ⓐ I am amazing! ⓑ I am amazed! ⓒ I amaze! ⓓ I am being amazed!
20. Every week I work five days and I get two days ....
    ⓐ after ⓑ off ⓒ not ⓓ no
21. I like it .... it rains.
    ⓐ when ⓑ who ⓒ why ⓓ whom
22. There are eight pets in my house. Six are cats and .... are dogs.
    ⓐ others ⓑ another ⓒ the other ⓓ the others
23. Maria is married .... my cousin.
    ⓐ with ⓑ for ⓒ to ⓓ into

TEST Unit 3



A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists have discovered permanent liquid water on Mars. Permanent is an antonym for ....
   ⓐ renewable ⓑ temporary ⓒ continuous ⓓ everlasting
2. Noha had a .... big birthday cake in the shape of the pyramids!
   ⓐ constantly ⓑ spectacularly ⓒ shortly ⓓ accurately
3. The wood goes through a/an .... which turns it into paper.
   ⓐ experience ⓑ operation ⓒ profession ⓓ process
4. Earth is one of the eight planets of our ....
   ⓐ planet system ⓑ sun system ⓒ solar discipline ⓓ solar system
5. Scientists have already sent spacecraft onto the .... of planets such as Mars.
   ⓐ flat ⓑ surround ⓒ face ⓓ surface
6. We can learn more and more about the .... around us.
   ⓐ social ⓑ universal ⓒ universe ⓓ environmental
7. The equipment encourages the children to .... in different ways.
   ⓐ approach ⓑ teach ⓒ implement ⓓ practice
8. Once I.............. the research, I'll start the report.
   ⓐ had done ⓑ does ⓒ has done ⓓ have done
9. My grandson Omar .... 10 next Friday.
   ⓐ is going to be ⓑ was ⓒ will be ⓓ has been
10. Within the next few years, we .... able to see tigers in the wild, only in zoos.
    ⓐ going to be ⓑ wouldn't be ⓒ won't be ⓓ won't have been
11. I .... out tomorrow. I haven't decided yet.
    ⓐ am going ⓑ will go ⓒ will be going ⓓ am going to go
12. We have already made all the preparations. We......our sister's wedding party tomorrow.
    ⓐ are giving ⓑ will give ⓒ are going to give ⓓ gave
13. We.............. a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
    ⓐ would have ⓑ are having ⓒ were having ⓓ have
14. According to the timetable the next bus .... at 10 a.m.
    ⓐ will move ⓑ moves ⓒ is going to move ⓓ is moving
15. By 2050, I think that astronomers.............. new planets outside our solar system.
    ⓐ will have found ⓑ find ⓒ have found ⓓ are finding
16. There are plans to build new cycle lanes through the city, but they have not yet .... it, so I still take the bus.
    ⓐ survived ⓑ implemented ⓒ surrounded ⓓ immersed
17. Which of the following is structurally correct?
    ⓐ They didn't leave until they have signed the contract.
    ⓑ They don't leave until they have signed the contract.
    ⓒ They won't leave until they have signed the contract.
    ⓓ They will leave until they have signed the contract.
18. To make the following sentence correctly punctuated, ... I can't meet you tonight Adel because I'm meeting my uncle at the airport.
    ⓐ insert a comma before because ⓑ start "airport" with a capital letter
    ⓒ insert a comma before "Adel" ⓓ remove the apostrophe between "I" and "m"

19. When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing, you can say ....
ⓐ In the other way ⓑ On the other hand ⓒ By the other hand ⓓ On one side

20. The following is part of a/an .... essay.

Stanley Bridge is one of the most famous architectural works in Alexandria. It is 400 metres long and 30 metres wide. It has four towers designed in the Islamic style used in the royal palace of Al Montazah. The Bridge was built with the aim of enlarging the Alexandria beachside and decreasing traffic in that area.

ⓐ argumentative ⓑ narrative ⓒ persuasive ⓓ descriptive



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Basel Rashid, who was a famous detective, working for businessmen to protect them and solve mysteries related to their work, had finished working on a crime in Aswan and was out to go home on the Spanish Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of year. Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy businessman, Mr. Mourad asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead: he had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Basel believed Mourad's story and, together with a doctor, who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that Mourad had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people. After examining the train and Mourad's body, Basel realised that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as Mourad. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. This was why the Spanish train had been so full on that journey.

21. Basel found out there were 13 suspects because ....
ⓐ Mourad told him while dying ⓑ he checked their identities
ⓒ he knew they hated Mourad ⓓ the doctor told him so

22. The central idea of the story is "..............".
ⓐ Criminals would help to protect each other
ⓑ Crime would be committed by the help of the police
ⓒ Criminals always face their fears of death ⓓ The Spanish train mysterious crime

23. Mourad thought he was certainly in danger so ....
ⓐ he was suffering from heart problems ⓑ he asked Basel for help
ⓒ the detective warned him not to take that train
ⓓ the doctor had examined him the day before

24. The sentence that can summarise the last paragraph is ....
ⓐ identifying who Mr Mourad really was and his real job
ⓑ protecting the other passengers from the murders
ⓒ discovering Mourad's secret passport and his work as a spy
ⓓ finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked the detective's help

25. Basel did not want to help Mr Mourad ....
ⓐ to take part in his murder ⓑ as he was the murderer
ⓒ to kill the other criminals ⓓ as he thought he was a liar

26. Basel was in Aswan ....
ⓐ because he worked as a policeman
ⓑ because he was on a secret mission
ⓒ to investigate Mourad's murder
ⓓ to arrest people who killed Mourad

27. Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad, he............. .
ⓐ was right not to help Mr Mourad
ⓑ helped the doctor to reach the truth
ⓒ suspected few of the passengers
ⓓ regretted helping Mr Mourad

28. According to the passage, one must .... the others when they ask.
ⓐ help
ⓑ ignore
ⓒ encourage
ⓓ defeat

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When we look to the future and consider technology and its effects on education and employment round the world, there are definitely reasons for optimism. It may be easiest to see some of these in parts of the world such as the Middle East, Asia and Africa where the creation of global markets for services, such as IT, which previously didn't exist is allowing talented individuals to have successful careers. We see people in these regions who may not have had access to traditional forms of face-to-face education, such as university studies, taking advantage of online courses to learn computer science. They can then go on to develop codes and create and sell applications, none of which would have been possible without the internet and the associated technology that goes along with it.

This phenomenon, however, isn't only happening in the Middle East, Asia and Africa. We're also seeing new possibilities for employment opening up in other parts of the world where a larger proportion of the population can access conventional university education. We see companies which allow people to make crafts at home, such as handmade jewellery, and sell those items to people all over the world online. These people can become entrepreneurs and they're opening up markets that wouldn't have existed forty years ago.

All of this suggests that young people today need to develop different types of skills than those who came before them. They need to be able to work independently and manage their time effectively so they can potentially do things like developing a new skill online on their own. They also need to learn how to present and market their work online as well as other skills that we associate with entrepreneurship, like how to keep financial records for your business.

29. Students are taking advantage of online courses to learn computer science ....
ⓐ **thanks to technology.**
ⓑ **despite having no access to the internet.**
ⓒ **although they have access to traditional forms of face-to-face education.**
ⓓ **because they are against change.**

30. According to the passage, we have reasons for optimism because ....
ⓐ **we have education and employment round the world.**
ⓑ **of the impacts of technology on education and employment round the world.**
ⓒ **the creation of global markets for services didn't exist.**
ⓓ **we have access to traditional forms of face-to-face education.**

31. According to the passage, creating and selling an app requires ....
ⓐ **only the internet.**
ⓑ **having a lot of money.**
ⓒ **the integration of different types of technology.**
ⓓ **being optimistic.**

32. Young people need to .... to cope with modern life with high technology.
ⓐ **work dependently.**
ⓑ **develop different types of skills.**
ⓒ **look for traditional jobs.**
ⓓ **avoid being pessimistic.**

33. According to the passage, the markets for online crafts ....
ⓐ require no technology to be sold.
ⓑ started to flourish forty years ago.
ⓒ help no people to become entrepreneurs.
ⓓ didn't exist forty years ago.

34. The underlined word "phenomenon" refers to ....
ⓐ the lack of online courses.
ⓑ encouraging face-to-face education.
ⓒ avoiding the harms of technology.
ⓓ the use of technology to have employment or earn money.

35. What is the main idea of the passage?
ⓐ The demerits of some types of technology
ⓑ The importance of technology
ⓒ Online markets
ⓓ Face-to-face education

36. We see people in these regions who may not have had access to traditional forms of face-to-face education. In this sentence, "these" refers to ....
ⓐ regions in the Middle East.
ⓑ regions all over the world.
ⓒ regions in Africa.
ⓓ regions in Africa, Asia and the Middle East

C Translation

37. We use the best methods to raise our young children because they are our hope for the near future and the basis for the progress of our beloved country.

(أ) نستخدم أفضل الطرق لرفع أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.

(ب) نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل المجاور وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.

(ج) نستخدم أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.

(د) استخدمنا أفضل الطرق لتربية أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس لتقدم بلدنا الحبيب.

38. Learning foreign languages and computer skills is a necessity for every learner at the present time to obtain a suitable job.

(أ) يعد تعليم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.

(ب) يعد تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.

(ج) يعد تعلم اللغات الغربية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.

(د) يعد تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على مهمة مناسبة.

٣٩. إن القراءة وسيلة لتنمية الثقافة وتحصيل المعرفة النافعة فى وقت الفراغ، بينما ممارسة الرياضة تساعد فى الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية.

ⓐ Reading is a way to develop culture and gain useful knowledge at free time, whilst exercise helps maintain physical fitness.
ⓑ Reading is a way to develop culture and win useful knowledge at free time, and exercise helps maintain physical fitness.
ⓒ Reading is a way to develop culture and gain useful knowledge at free time, despite exercise helps maintain physical fitness.
ⓓ Reading is a way to develop culture and gain useful knowledge at free time, and exercise helps maintain mental fitness.

٤٠. إن تحسين الإنتاج وزيادة الصادرات ضروريان لتحقيق الاستقرار الاقتصادي.

ⓐ Improving production and increasing imports are necessary to achieve economic stability.
ⓑ Improving production and increasing exports are necessity to achieve economic stability.
ⓒ Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economically stability.
ⓓ Improving production and increasing exports are necessary to achieve economic stability.

Enrich your Language Extra Vocabulary

جميع الكلمات الصعبة
التى مرت علي الطالب في أسئلة
الوحدة الثالثة

كلمات القطع

English	Arabic
detective	محقق
mystery	لغز
crime	جريمة
wealthy	ثرى
danger	خطر
murder	قتل
discover	يكتشف
identity	هوية
criminal	مجرم
examining	فحص
suspect	مشتبه
taken part	يشارك
Spanish	اسبانى
employment	توظيف
education	تعليم
optimism	تفاؤل
creation	خلق
exist	يوجد
access	وصول
codes	شفرات
proportion	نسبة
conventional	تقليدى
entrepreneur	رائد أعمال
possibilities	احتمالات
jewellery	مجوهرات
independently	بشكل مستقل
develop	يطور
financial	مالى
records	سجلات
feedback	تغذية رجعية
prompts	محفز

English	Arabic
ability	قدرة
absence	غياب
accept	يقبل
account	حساب
accuse of	يتهم بـ
achieve	يحقق / ينجز
achievement	تحقيق / انجاز
adapt to	يتأقلم
admit	يعترف
adopt	يتبني
solidarity	التضامن
stability	الاستقرار
conscience	ضمير
advertisement	إعلان
take place	يحدث
take part in	يشارك في
taxes	ضرائب
witness	شاهد / يشهد
blame	يلوم
author	مؤلف
amateur	هاوي
ambition	الطموح
dilemma	ورطة / خيار بين أمور صعبة
altitude	علو / ارتفاع / سمو
Jupiter	كوكب المشترى
damaged organ	عضو تالف
scald	يسمط / يحرق جلده بسائل حار
legal advice	استشارة قانونية
tumour	ورم
powerlifting	رفع الأثقال
attract	يجذب / يستهوى
diagnosis	تشخيص / تحليل الداء

English	Arabic
methods	طرق
progress	التقدم
raise	يربي
basis	أساس
foreign	اجنبي
necessity	ضرورة
obtain	يحصل على
suitable	مناسب
knowledge	المعرفة
culture	الثقافة
fitness	اللياقة
physical	بدني
production	الإنتاج
exports	صادرات
imports	واردات
achieve	يحقق
addiction	الإدمان
advanced	متقدم
liberate	يتحرر
diabetes	مرض السكر
participate in	يشارك في
optimistic	متفائل
manage	يدير / ينظم
mental	عقلي
in charge of	مسئول عن
conference	مؤتمر
fulfill	ينجز
face	يواجه / يتصد إلي
facilities	تسهيلات
lead to	يؤدي الى
needs	احتياجات
motivation	تحفيز

R1



Units 1, 2 & 3

Main Vocabulary

link	رابط / يربط
astronaut	رائد فضاء
astronomer	عالم فلك
award	منحة / جائزة / يمنح
contribution	مساهمة
promote	يدعم / يحسن / يرقى
immerse	يغمر / يغمس
inspiring	ملهم
title	عنوان / لقب
physicist	فيزيائى
prejudice	ظلم / تحيز / تمييز
achievement	انـجاز
impressive	مبهر
purpose	غرض
theatre	مسرح
focus	تركيز / يركز
attention	انتباه
target	هدف
audience	جمهور
presentation	مقدمة / عرض
creative	مبدع
wooden	خشبى
puppet	دمية
musical	موسيقى
actress	ممثلة
career	حياة مهنية
signal-hopping	القفز بين الإشارات (نوع من التواصل)
wireless	لاسلكى
communication	تواصل
chemist	كيميائى / صيدلى
radioactivity	نشاط إشعاعى
objective	موضوعى
knowledge	معرفة
develop	يطور
recommend	يوصى / يرشح
skill	مهارة
spaceship	سفينة فضاء
mission	مهمة
passengers	ركاب
training	تدريب
trip	رحلة
variety	تشكيلة
in common	مشترك
computing	الحوسبة
engineering	الهندسة
developer	مطور
senior	اعلي مرتبة / رئيس
software	برامج
programming	برمجة
basis	أساس
electric-powered	تعمل بالكهرباء
mechanical	ميكانيكى
racing cars	عربات السباق
advert	إعلان
competition	منافسة
advance	تقدم
cost	تكلفة / يكلف
receive	يستقبل
take off	يقلع / ينطلق
consequently	بالتالى
due to	بسبب
finally	أخيراً
firstly	أولا
personally	شخصيا
secondly	ثانيا
conclude	يختم /يستنتج
whilst	بينما / ولكن
feel about	يشعر تجاه
find out	يكتشف
travel into	يسافر فى
space	الفضاء
earth	الأرض / تراب
play	مسرحية / يلعب
famous	مشهور
influence	تاثير / يؤثر





DIGITHEATRE REVIEW

Scientists from history come to life in a new online show involving wooden puppets, music and theatre called *Jina and the Stem sisters.*


Marie Curie


Hedy Lemarr


Mae Jemison


Ada Lovelace

It's a musical with great songs and a wonderful message. The show tells the story of some of the most inspiring women in science and mathematics.

In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost in a forest. There she meets women who have made important contribution to the history of STEM. The women include **Hedy Lamarr**, who was both an actress and inventor. Whilst at the top of her film career, she invented a technology called signalhopping, which later was the basis for all modern wireless communication, including that found in mobile phones.

Other women that Jina meets are **Marie Curie**, who was a physicist and chemist famous for her research and experiments on radioactivity, and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and astronaut Marie Curie was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize award in two different fields.

Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space.

The scientists share their knowledge with Jina and help her to develop key skills to become a future STEM expert herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist **Ada Lovelace** and astronomer who show Jina the stars.

The show has been created for schools. It will hopefully encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcame the difficulties and prejudice in their way.

"The puppets were beautiful and completely immerse me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely recommend it."

FOCUS ON JOBS

CV

Name: Sara Ahmed

Education: Degree in Computing and Electronics Engineering PhD in Swarm Robotics

Job: Senior developer, ESB Robotics

Duties: Developing software for robots

Biggest achievement: developed a new robot which will teach young people about programming



CV



Name: Amani Safwat
Education: Degree in mechanical engineering
Job: Car engineer, Mahindra Racing
Duties: Prepares cars for race days
Biggest achievement: made a contribution to development of electric-powered racing cars

Competition time

Do you dream of becoming a **journalist**? If so, enter our competition to win the chance see your story in our magazine. If you've got a fascinating story to report from your local area, we want to hear from you.

Here are some top tips from our Editor to get you started.

The winning story will be published in "**In the News**". Find out more: www.IntheNewsnews.com

Top tips for writing a news story

- Present a view which is **objective**.
- Include the key facts, and make sure you check them.
- Try to avoid any **prejudice**.
- Don't include information that is inaccurate (not correct).
- Be careful not to include **confusing** figures.
- Interview people involved to get different **opinions**.








A Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1. We think that the person who won the quiz is a .... He looked up the answers online which was not allowed.
   ⓐ chat ⓑ bias ⓒ cheat ⓓ spin
2. You must be .... of yourself; you have made a silly mistake!
   ⓐ proud ⓑ pleased ⓒ afraid ⓓ ashamed
3. The .... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.
   ⓐ impact ⓑ face ⓒ scar ⓓ surface
4. It is a .... to think that women always do housework.
   ⓐ prejudice ⓑ stereotype ⓒ type ⓓ incident
5. What is the best .... for a headache?
   ⓐ cause ⓑ treatment ⓒ illness ⓓ surgeon
6. People who leak books and join in .... are punished for their crime.
   ⓐ piracy ⓑ pirates ⓒ cheat ⓓ chat
7. While I .... dinner, someone knocked on the door.
   ⓐ had ⓑ was having ⓒ did have ⓓ am having
8. Doctors keep the health .... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.
   ⓐ paper ⓑ records ⓒ placements ⓓ figures
9. After he had examined the athlete, the doctor.......him permission to join the competition.
   ⓐ gave ⓑ given ⓒ had given ⓓ gives
10. The train .... before we arrived at the station.
   ⓐ had left ⓑ has left ⓒ was leaving ⓓ will leave
11. Mr Ali .... at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.
   ⓐ has worked ⓑ is working
   ⓒ will have been working ⓓ had been working
12. The bridge over the valley is built on a .... scale than the one over the river.
   ⓐ big ⓑ bigger ⓒ biggest ⓓ the biggest
13. When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the .... experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.
   ⓐ most shocking ⓑ shocking ⓒ more shocking ⓓ less shocking
14. For the next year, Ahmed .... on an engineering project in Alexandria.
   ⓐ was working ⓑ will have worked ⓒ will be working ⓓ had been working
15. By 2050, I think that astronomers............... new planets outside our solar system.
   ⓐ will have found ⓑ find ⓒ have found ⓓ are finding
16. We won't be able to live on Mars until we .... enough water there.
   ⓐ will find ⓑ have found ⓒ will be finding ⓓ found
17. I felt really sick .... the party, so I went home.
   ⓐ while ⓑ when ⓒ during ⓓ on
18. She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. Contribution here is a synonym for ....
   ⓐ deprivation ⓑ donation ⓒ estimation ⓓ relation

19. My brother was finally .... that he had been selected for the new position as a sales manager.

ⓐ asked ⓑ said ⓒ informed ⓓ ordered

20. You should .... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.

ⓐ appear ⓑ float ⓒ inverse ⓓ immerse

21. This is the most difficult situation I ....

ⓐ had ever been faced ⓑ have ever faced
ⓒ had ever faced ⓓ have ever been faced

22. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?

ⓐ The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem."
ⓑ The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem".
ⓒ The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
ⓓ The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."

23. Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean. This shows .... in ideas.

ⓐ addition ⓑ contrast ⓒ possibility ⓓ reason

24. In a hook sentence, you need to ....

ⓐ sum up your essay by briefly revisiting the information covered.
ⓑ grab the reader's attention to read the essay.
ⓒ support, explain, illustrate, or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence.
ⓓ analyze two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both.

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Few women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut, who is one of the most important females in Egyptian history. She was pharaoh from around 1479 BCE to 1458 BCE, making her one of the longest ruling females. During her 21 years of rule, she improved trade with other countries, which had stopped for many years during a war.

Pictures from the walls of ancient temples show Hatshepsut's ships trading with a country called Punt (now part of East Africa), from where her ships brought back gold, valuable stones and animal skins. They also brought back trees, which were planted when they returned to Egypt. This is believed to be the first time foreign trees were grown in a different country. The journey to Punt was probably the first of other trading trips, which included visits to Byblos (now in Lebanon) and Sinai.

Money from this trade helped Hatshepsut to build many amazing buildings and bring many years of peace and wealth to Egypt. The many buildings that Hatshepsut had built were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past. Her most famous buildings include the temples at Beni Hasan and at Deir el-Bahri, which some people call one of the wonders of the ancient world. But she also helped to repair other older monuments that had been damaged and started a period of artistic creativity.

Hatshepsut had many statues made of herself and you can find them in many of the world's greatest museums today. Many of the statues that were made at this time were in the Thutmosidc style (named after her father Thutmose III), which people today consider as the typical ancient Egyptian style.

The mummy of Hatshepsut and lots of information about her can be found at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

GIANTS

25. What was Hatshepsut's main contribution to ancient Egypt?

ⓐ She had statues built.
ⓑ She brought peace and wealth to the country.
ⓒ She helped women become pharaohs.
ⓓ She was a female stereotype

26. Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?

ⓐ Many trees grew there.
ⓑ People hunted animals there.
ⓒ It was a rich country.
ⓓ It had many wars with ancient Egypt.

27. How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule?

ⓐ She improved trade with other countries.
ⓑ She won wars with other countries.
ⓒ She planted trees from other countries.
ⓓ She had many statues made of herself.

28. What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?

ⓐ They are unusual.
ⓑ They are in a style that people expect.
ⓒ They are more impressive than other statues.
ⓓ They are in a very unpopular style.

29. Why you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?

* ....

30. In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today?

* ....

31. According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were.......... .

ⓐ finally kept in Punt
ⓑ sold to African countries
ⓒ brought to Egypt
ⓓ restored before the reign of Hatshepsut

32. People consider Deir el-Bahri one of the wonders of the ancient world. "Wonders" is similar in meaning to.......... .

ⓐ obstacles ⓑ myths ⓒ marvels ⓓ superstitions

33. Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage?

ⓐ Not many women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut
ⓑ Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.
ⓒ We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums today.
ⓓ Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.

34. We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut.......... .

ⓐ at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization
ⓑ in East of Africa
ⓒ in the temples at Beni Hassan
ⓓ at a museum in Punt

35. Trade with other countries .... during Hatshepsut's rule.

ⓐ flourished ⓑ declined ⓒ stopped ⓓ was the same as

36. Hatshepsut .... during her reign.

ⓐ had a lot of amazing buildings built
ⓑ brought wealth to the country
ⓒ achieved peace
ⓓ all of the above

37. According to the article, which of the following gives incorrect information?

ⓐ During the reign of Hatshepsut, foreign trees were planted in Egypt.
ⓑ Hatshepsut had older monuments repaired.
ⓒ Hatshepsut ruled Egypt for more than twenty years.
ⓓ Today, people consider the Thutmoside style of making statues as a typical modern one.



❸ Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from A. B, C or D.

38. Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?

(أ) الابتكار لا نهاية له. فكلما ابتكر الإنسان أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، كلما سعى الى التقدم والرفاهية، مع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب إيجابية؟

(ب) الابتكار لا نهاية له. فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والتطور، كلما اشترى أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل. ولذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

(ج) الابتكار لا نهاية له. فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل. ومع لذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

(د) الرفاهية لا نهاية لها. فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، كلما ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسرع. ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن الرفاهية ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟

39. Women have played a pivotal role in the renaissance of ancient and modem societies. Through this role, they demonstrated their ability to achieve positive change in those societies.

(أ) لقد أظهرت المرأة دوراً محورياً فى نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، واستعرضت فى تلك الفترة قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير النسبى فى تلك المجتمعات.

(ب) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً فى بناء المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور رغبتها فى تحقيق التغيير الإيجابى فى تلك المجتمعات.

(ج) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً عادياً فى نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابى فى تلك الحضارات.

(د) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً فى نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابى فى تلك المجتمعات.

٤٠. من المتوقع أن تتوقف طباعة الصحف فى العقود القليلة القادمة. سنقرأ الأخبار عبر الإنترنت، لذلك سنحتاج إلى معرفة المزيد عن المواقع الإلكترونية الجديدة التى يمكن أن تعطينا وجهة نظر متوازنة.

ⓐ In the next few decades, I think that we will have continued printing newspapers. We won't be reading the news offline, so we will need to know about new books that can give us a balanced point of view.

ⓑ In the next few years, I think that we will have stopped painting newspapers. We will be borrowing the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a fixed point of view.

ⓒ In the next few decades, it is expected that printing newspapers will have stopped. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

ⓓ In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

٤١. يهدف منتدى شباب العالم المُقام فى مصر سنوياً إلى الدعم الكامل للشباب، وتحديد كل المشكلات التى تواجههم وحلها للاستفادة بشكل فعال من مهارتهم وإمكانياتهم فى تطوير المجتمع وتحقيق التنمية الشاملة.

ⓐ The International Men Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully support young people and identify and solve all the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive improvement.

ⓑ The World Youth Forum, which is annually held in Egypt, aims to fully support youth and identify and solve the problems they face, to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development

ⓒ The International Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, seems to fully care for young people and simplify and solve the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in improving society and achieving comprehensive development.

ⓓ The local Youth Forum, which is held in Egypt annually, aims to fully look for young people and identify and postpone all the problems they face to effectively benefit from their skills and capabilities in developing society and achieving comprehensive development.

٤٢. تهتم الدولة دائماً بحماية حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمؤلفين والناشرين، لذا تفرض عقوبة صارمة على القرصنة الفكرية وتسريب الكتب حفاظاً على حقوق المنتجين ودور النشر.

ⓐ The estate is always takes care of protect the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing homes.

ⓑ The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it propose a strict penalty on intellectual privacy and book diversion in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

ⓒ The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leaking in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

ⓓ The estate is always interested in protecting the intellectual liberty rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book lake in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.

43. Write an argumentative essay of about 200 words on one of these topics:

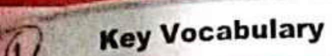
ⓐ Write about the advantages and disadvantages of international sports competitions such as the FIFA World Cup and the Olympic Games.

ⓑ Write about the pros and cons of tabloid and broadsheet reports.





Taking care of ourselves



1 Key Vocabulary

well-being (n)	العافية/السعادة	mental health (n)	الصحة العقلية	stress (v)(n)	الإجهاد / الضغط / يؤكد
burnout (n)	انهاك / إرهاق شديد	mental (adj)	ذهنى / عقلى	stressed (adj)	يشعر بالتوتر / مُجهد
scold (v)	يعنف / يوبخ	physical (adj)	بدنى	stressful	مسبب التوتر / مُرهق للأعصاب
frown (v)(n)	يتجهم/ يعبس / عبوس	promote (v)	يحسن / يرقى/ يروج	suppose (v)	يفترض
pout(v)(n)	يبوز /يكشر / يشمئز/اشمئزاز	promotion (n)	ترقية / ترويج	clear **off** (v)	ينصرف / يختفى / يزول
alter (v)	يغير / يُعدّل / يبدل	self- care (n)	العناية بالذات	cope **with** (v)	يتأقلم مع

2 Main Vocabulary

improve (v)	يتحسن / يحسن	concentrate (v)	يركز	blame (v)(n)	يلوم / اللوم
manage (v)	ينجح / يتمكن / يدير	concentration (n)	تركيز	benefit (v)(n)	يستفيد / فائدة
management (n)	إدارة	exhaustion (n)	إرهاق	consider (v)	يأخذ في الإعتبار
time management (n)	إدارة الوقت	exhausted (adj)	مرهق / منهك	counsellor (n)	مستشار / مرشد
self-management (n)	إدارة الذات	anxiety (n)	القلق / الضغط	creation (n)	الخلق / الكون
efficient (adj)	كفء	anxious (adj)	قلق / متوتر	pressure (n)	ضغط
affairs (n)	شئون / أحداث	experience (v)(n)	تجربة / يجرب	register (v)	يسجل
pressure (n)	ضغط / ثقل	behave (v)	يتصرف / يسلك	react (v)	يستجيب /يتجاوب مع
reduce (v)	يقلل	behaviour (n)	سلوك / تصرف	reaction (n)	رد فعل / تفاعل
priority (n)	أولوية	responsibility (n)	مسئولية	regret (v)(n)	الندم / يندم على
brainstorm	يستثير الفكر / عصف ذهنى	perfectly (adv)	تماما / بشكل رائع	regular (adj)	منتظم
issue (n)	شأن / قضية	avoid (v)	يتجنب	choice (n)	اختيار
frustrated (adj)	محبط	pain (n)	ألم	stretch (v)	يمد / يبسط
divide (v)	يقسم	alarm (n)	إنذار/منبه	category (n)	فئة

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

keep **up with** = cope **with**	يساير/يواكب/يتأقلم مع
mental **health** problem	مشكلة صحية عقلية
go **for** a walk	يتمشى / يتنزه
a five-**minute** break	استراحة لمدة خمس دقائق
in danger **of**	فى خطر
feel exhausted (stressed)	يشعر بالارهاق (التوتر)
on a regular **basis**	بشكل منتظم
avoid burnout	يتجنب الإرهاق
improve well-being	يزيد من السعادة

concentrate (focus) **on**	يركز على
divide..... **into**	يقسم .... الي
suffer **from**	يعانى من
benefit **from**	يستفيد من
pay attention **to**	ينتبه لـ
set **up**	ينشأ / يقيم
stay **up**	يسهر
keep **up**	يواصل / يستمر
pour **down**	ينهمر / ينهال



4 Definitions

burnout	إنهاك / إرهاق شديد	a situation where you can't do anything as you are tired and stressed
clear off	ينصرف / يختفى	to leave a place quickly
cope with	يتأقلم	to deal with difficult situations or problems
exhausted	مرهق	describing the feeling of being very tired
frown	يتجهم / يعبس	to make an angry, unhappy or confused expression, moving your eyebrows
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	to make something better or to get better
mental health	الصحة العقلية	how a person thinks and the emotions they feel
pout	يبوز / يكشر / يشمنز	to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy
promote	يرقي	to help something develop
scold	يوبخ	to angrily criticise someone, especially a child, about something they've done
self-care	العناية بالذات	taking care of your body and how you feel
stress	توتر	continuous feelings of being very worried and scared about your life
suppose	يفترض	used to say something is true, although you are uncertain about it
time management	ادارة الوقت	organizing when you do things and for how long
well-being	سعادة / صحة / هناء	a contented state of being happy, healthy and prosperous

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
scold	يعنف / يوبخ	blame - insult	compliment - praise
improve	يتحسن / يحسن	enhance -develop - get better	worsen - get worse - decline
burnout	إنهاك	exhaustion - tiredness	refreshment - relaxation
well-being	سلامة	welfare - soundness - good	suffering - misery
stress	توتر	pressure - tension - strain	comfort - relaxation
pout	يعبس / يكشر	frown - grimace	laugh - smile
promote	يدعم / يرقى	advance - upgrade - raise	reduce - degrade - lower
anxious	قلق	afraid - nervous - scared	bold - brave - confident



6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
frown	يتجهم / يعبس	frowning = frown	العبس	frowning	عبوس
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	improvement	تحسين / تحسن	improved	محسن
pout	يبوز /يكشر / يشمنز	pout	تكشيرة / تبويزة	pouty	مكشر / مبوز
scold	يعنف / يوبخ	scolding	توبيخ	scolding	موبخ / سليط
promote	يحسن / يرقى/ يروج	promotion	ترقية / ترويج	promoted	مدعم / معزز
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر / ذو نفوذ
exhaust	يرهق	exhaustion	ارهاق	exhausted	مرهق
choose	يختار	choice	اختيار	choosy	مدقق في الاختيار
stress	يؤكد على	stress	التوتر	stressed	يشعر بالتوتر / مُجهد
				stressful	مسبب التوتر / مُرهق للأعصاب



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

download (from)	يحمل من الانترنت	⊃	upload (to)	يرفع على الإنترنت
regular	منتظم	⊃	regularly	بانتظام
athletes	رياضيين	⊃	athletics	ألعاب قوى
choose	يختار	⊃	choice	اختيار
mental	ذهنى / عقلى	⊃	physical	بدنى
frown	يتجهم / يعبس	⊃	pout	يبوز /يكشر / يشمنز
responsibility	مسئولية	⊃	responsible	مسئول
promote	يرقي	⊃	get promoted (a promotion)	يحصل علي ترقية
poet	شاعر	⊃	poem	قصيدة شعرية
other	أخر (بعدها اسم جمع)	⊃	another	أخر (بعدها اسم مفرد)
alone	بمفرده	⊃	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
improve	يحسن	⊃	prove / proof	يثبت / دليل
influence	تأثير	⊃	influential	مؤثر / ذو نفوذ
find (found)	يجد	⊃	found (founded)	يؤسس

stress, stressed & stressful

stress	ضغط / توتر	▸ Yoga is a very effective technique for combating **stress**.
stressed	مضغوط / متوتر	▸ I feel less **stressed** since I've been working.
stressful	مجهد / مسبب للتوتر	▸ She's very good at coping in **stressful** situations.



How to avoid burnout

Burnout[1] is a mental health[2] problem that is affecting[3] more and more people today because there's so much pressure[4] on us to work hard[5] and do everything perfectly[6]. When you experience[7] burnout you feel exhausted[8] and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy. You might stop doing hobbies that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual[9]. As a result[10] people experiencing burnout feel like they can't live their lives normally[11] anymore.

Burnout is usually caused[12] by both decisions[13] you make about things that you can control, for example, the amount of homework you have to do, and situations[14] you can't control[15], for example if you spend a lot more time on your homework than you have to because you want to do it perfectly. This is your choice[16] or the result of poor time management [17] skills.

If you're in danger of suffering from[18] burnout, you will usually experience a lot of stress, find it difficult to sleep and have a lot of headaches[19] or pain[20] in your shoulders and back.

In order to improve[21] your mental health, you need to take responsibility[22] for the things that you can control. For example, if you find it difficult to say "no" when people ask you to do activities[23] outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this behaviour[24]. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening such as drawing or painting, doing a sport or having 'real' conversations with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of self-care[25]. They help to promote[26] better mental health and increase[27] your well-being.

١) الإرهاق
٢) الصحة النفسية
٣) تؤثر على
٤) ضغط
٥) يعمل بجد
٦) بصورة مثالية
٧) يعانى من
٨) مرهق
٩) معتاد
١٠) كنتيجة لذلك
١١) بشكل طبيعى
١٢) يسبب
١٣) قرارات
١٤) مواقف
١٥) يتحكم
١٦) اختيار
١٧) إدارة الوقت
١٨) يعانى من
١٩) صداع
٢٠) ألم
٢١) يحسن
٢٢) مسؤولية
٢٣) يقوم بأنشطة
٢٤) سلوك
٢٥) العناية بالنفس
٢٦) يرقي / يعزز
٢٧) يزيد

Studying can be stressful

Here are four tips to make life easier.

Tip 1 Divide[1] the things you need to do into four categories[2]. These are: ❶ urgent[3] and important ❷ important but not urgent ❸ not important but urgent ❹not important and not urgent. Using this system[4], you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

Tip 2 When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest[5]. This will help you to avoid burnout[6] and continue[7] studying.

Tip 3 Use a clock with an alarm[8]. After every twenty five minutes, take a five-minute break and stand up[9] and stretch[10].

Tip 4 You should do exercise[11] on a regular basis. Exercise will produce endorphins[12], which are chemicals[13] that help to reduce stress. If the exercise is outside, you will also benefit from[14] some fresh air.

You should not eat unhealthily when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare and fruit is a better snack than chocolate. You should also avoid having too much caffeine. Water is much healthi

١) يقسم
٢) تصنيفات
٣) طارئ / ملح
٤) نظام
٥) يأخذ راحة
٦) يتجنب الإرهاق
٧) يستمر / يكمل
٨) منبه / انذار
٩) يقف
١٠) يتمدد / يتمطى
١١) يقوم بتدريبات
١٢) ينتج مورفين المخ
١٣) مواد كيميائية
١٤) يستفيد من



Suppose

by Phoebe Cary

1 Suppose[1] you're **dressed**[2] for walking,
And the rain comes **pouring down**[3],
Will it **clear off**[4] any sooner
Because you **scold**[5] and **frown**[6]?

2 And wouldn't it be nicer
For you to smile than **pout**[7],
And so make sunshine in the house
When there is none without?

3 And **suppose** the world don't **please**[8] you,
Nor the way some people do,
Do you think the whole **creation**[9]
Will be **altered**[10] just for you?

4 And isn't it, my boy or girl,
The **wisest**[11], **bravest**[12] plan,
Whatever comes, or doesn't come,
To do the best you can?

١) يفترض
٢) يرتدى ملابسه
٣) ينهال / ينهمر
٤) يزول
٥) يعنف / يوبخ
٦) يتجهم / يعبس
٧) يبوز / يبرطم
٨) يُسعد
٩) الخلق / الكون
١٠) يتغير
١١) الأكثر حكمة
١٢) الأكثر شجاعة



Listening

Three students talking about situations that are having a negative effect on their mental health.

Nour At the moment, I just feel **exhausted**[1] all the time. I play computer games with my friends after school every evening. Then I don't start doing my homework until about 9 o'clock in the evening. By the time I finish my homework, it's 11 o'clock or even **midnight**[2]. So, I don't get to bed until it's really late and then I'm exhausted the next day at school and I can't **keep up**[3] in my lessons.

Ibrahim I spend a lot of time **looking after**[4] my grandfather, who's seventy-four years old and is ill at the moment. I go to school and then as soon as I get home, I **spend** the next few hours **making** him something to eat, reading to him and helping him to wash, things like that. I have to get up early in the morning to **do** my **homework** before school and I never seem to have any time to do anything for myself.

Heba It's always my goal to get the best **grades**[5] that I possibly can at school. It seems that the only way to do that is to **spend** all of my time **on** my **schoolwork**[6]. So, I work as hard as I can when I'm at school and then in the breaks we have at school, I do some **extra**[7] reading or look at my notes again. Then, when I get home, I do my homework all afternoon and evening. I just keep going even if I'm **feeling exhausted**.

١) منهك / مرهق
٢) منتصف الليل
٣) يواصل / يستمر
٤) يعتنى به
٥) درجات
٦) العمل المدرسى
٧) إضافى / زائد



Listening

How to make suggestions

Leila: Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Nadia: Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila: Oh no! **Why don't you** sit down and tell me about it?

Nadia: Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science, too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila: That sounds like a lot. **Have you considered telling** your parents you are stressed?

Nadia: I don't want to worry them.

Leila: **You could** write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority and say 'no' to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, **how about doing** your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it?

Nadia: **Have you thought about** becoming a student counsellor? You're very good at giving advice!

Leila: Oh, thank you.

Video Script

Whilst[1] it's important to keep **informed**[2] about **current affairs**[3], reading the news when it's mostly bad can cause **anxiety**[4] and **stress**[5]. Bad news seems to get more **attention**[6], so this is what the media give us.

One 16-**year**-old said he had started worrying **constantly**[7] about things he was reading in the news and it had **affected**[8] his sleep. He told researchers that he had started **avoiding**[9] the news **completely**. He said he generally felt better, but on the **downside**[10], he wasn't able to **contribute to**[11] **conversations**[12] with friends, and felt left out when they were talking about current affairs.

This **solution**[13] may seem a little bit **extreme**[14], but there are ways we can **reduce**[15] stress and anxiety caused by **negative**[16] news. We spoke with **psychologist**[17] Alison Carey about the **issue**[18]. She advised young people to take a break sometimes, or to **limit**[19] the amount of time they spend reading news to once every two days, or once a week. She also suggested that we **interact**[20] more with **positive**[21] news sources, such as the good news **network**[22] or positivenews.com.

Most **importantly**[23], she said that getting out into **nature**[24], listening to music, spending less time on your screen and more time in **face-to-face**[25] conversations would all help reduce stress and anxiety caused by bad news.



1) بينما
2) عارف / مطلع على
3) الأحداث الجارية
4) قلق
5) ضغط / توتر
6) اهتمام / انتباه
7) دائماً / باستمرار
8) يؤثر على
9) يتجنب
10) الجانب السلبى
11) يساهم فى
12) حوارات/محادثات
13) حل
14) شديد / متطرف
15) يقلل
16) سلبى
17) عالم نفس
18) موضوع / قضية
19) يحد / يقلل من
20) يتفاعل
21) إيجابى
22) شبكة
23) فوق كل شئ
24) الطبيعة
25) وجهاً لوجه



1. He .... as soon as he heard the police siren.
ⓐ cleared up ⓑ cleared out ⓒ cleared off ⓓ declared
2. .... is the feeling of being comfortable, healthy and happy.
ⓐ Well-being ⓑ Burnout ⓒ Promotion ⓓ Exhaustion
3. Listening to native speakers will surely help you .... your fluency.
ⓐ remove ⓑ improve ⓒ approve ⓓ move
4. He .... as he read the bad news; he gave a very angry expression.
ⓐ cheered ⓑ frowned ⓒ frightened ⓓ surprised
5. If you .... your diet plan, you would feel less exhausted.
ⓐ muted ⓑ altered ⓒ noted ⓓ impacted
6. .... exercise can protect you against heart disease.
ⓐ Mental ⓑ Physical ⓒ Physics ⓓ Mind
7. Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of ....
ⓐ turnout ⓑ strikeout ⓒ cutout ⓓ burnout
8. To .... someone is to say or think they are responsible for bad results.
ⓐ blame ⓑ frown ⓒ register ⓓ pout
9. Schools are promoting the importance of maintaining students' ....
ⓐ well behaved ⓑ inheritance ⓒ well-being ⓓ fighting
10. Our parents were strict and we were frequently .... for our bad behaviour.
ⓐ pleased ⓑ punishing ⓒ scolded ⓓ bring up
11. It is essential for health and .... to maintain a positive attitude in life.
ⓐ burnout ⓑ well-being ⓒ anxiety ⓓ priority
12. He frowned and .... when he did not get what he wanted.
ⓐ cheered ⓑ smiled ⓒ pouted ⓓ laughed
13. Employees working for long hours with no breaks display symptoms of ....
ⓐ productivity ⓑ burnout ⓒ prediction ⓓ self-care
14. Her son was born with severe .... disabilities that he spent his life in a wheel chair.
ⓐ physical ⓑ physically ⓒ mental ⓓ mentally
15. Relaxing is one of the most important .... treatments for sufferers of burnout.
ⓐ selfish ⓑ self-efficiency ⓒ self-care ⓓ self-confidence
16. Seeing her grandchildren gave her a sense of.............. .
ⓐ well-being ⓑ well handled ⓒ well-grounded ⓓ well done
17. Knowing how to prioritise your tasks means you have efficient .... skills.
ⓐ affection ⓑ negotiation ⓒ procrastination ⓓ time management
18. He was .... for not completing his tasks on time.
ⓐ qualified ⓑ mended ⓒ scolded ⓓ frowned
19. His mood suddenly .... and he seemed a little annoyed.
ⓐ altered ⓑ flew ⓒ frowned ⓓ scolded
20. To......means to make an angry or unhappy expression moving your eyebrows together.
ⓐ pout ⓑ scold ⓒ blame ⓓ frown
21. I wish these horrible clouds would .... off so we can enjoy our picnic!
ⓐ lead ⓑ regret ⓒ clear ⓓ wander
22. ....is a result of excessive and prolonged emotional, physical and mental stress.
ⓐ Relation ⓑ Well-being ⓒ Burnout ⓓ Self-care
23. To .... means to put someone's or something's name on an official list.
ⓐ pout ⓑ register ⓒ upload ⓓ reinvent

24. Time .... is the skill of controlling your time in order to get the most benefit of it.
ⓐ managed ⓑ arrangement ⓒ management ⓓ manages

25. He .... as he read the bad news; he gave a very angry expression.
ⓐ cheered ⓑ frowned ⓒ frightened ⓓ surprised

26. To .... something is to support and encourage the development of it.
ⓐ demote ⓑ ruin ⓒ retreat ⓓ promote

27. .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
ⓐ Frown ⓑ Stress ⓒ Imagined ⓓ Suppose

28. She feared she wouldn't be able to .... with two new babies.
ⓐ cope ⓑ worry ⓒ copy ⓓ burnout

29. He's intelligent, but poor time .... is limiting his success.
ⓐ burnout ⓑ managerial ⓒ pout ⓓ management

30. He .... when his parents said that he couldn't go to the party and had to finish his homework instead.
ⓐ immersed ⓑ controlled ⓒ supposed ⓓ pouted

Exercises on Main Vocabulary

31. The company's products have been .... mainly through advertising in newspapers.
ⓐ scolded ⓑ promoted ⓒ suffered ⓓ promised

32. Please do not discuss my private .... in public.
ⓐ burnout ⓑ priority ⓒ affairs ⓓ stress

33. The new president said that his first .... was to create more jobs.
ⓐ priority ⓑ burnout ⓒ creation ⓓ regret

34. The inheritance was.................. equally among all the sons.
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ encouraged ⓒ divided ⓓ supposed

35. A fire .... went off and the building had to be evacuated.
ⓐ alarm ⓑ phone ⓒ alter ⓓ stretch

36. I have moved out of the city and this has had a/an .... on my well-being.
ⓐ impact ⓑ attack ⓒ cause ⓓ excuse

37. Banks normally give .... to large businesses when deciding on loans.
ⓐ excerpts ⓑ minority ⓒ emotions ⓓ priority

38. If you are in danger of suffering from burnout, you will usually .... stress.
ⓐ hide ⓑ cure ⓒ damage ⓓ experience

39. Nowadays, the woman can be elected as town ....
ⓐ councillor ⓑ society ⓒ gatekeeper ⓓ centre

40. More .... methods will lead to greater productivity.
ⓐ harmful ⓑ stressing ⓒ deficiency ⓓ efficient

41. I felt really .... ; I got low marks although I had studied hard.
ⓐ amused ⓑ fascinated ⓒ frustrated ⓓ educated

42. Our manager puts a lot of.......on all new employees to have them do what he desires.
ⓐ press ⓑ pressing ⓒ pressed ⓓ pressure

43. The band .... thousands of fans by cancelling at the last minute.
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ took ⓒ encouraged ⓓ pleased

44. This exercise will enhance your powers of attention and ....
ⓐ careful ⓑ concentration ⓒ recognition ⓓ conservation

45. I began to get .... when my kids still hadn't arrived till 12 o'clock.
ⓐ confusing ⓑ worrying ⓒ anxious ⓓ anxiety

46. You need to have a quick .... to play these computer games.
ⓐ pressure ⓑ anxiety ⓒ reaction ⓓ benefit

47. You let me down. You shouldn't have .... me!
ⓐ cooperated ⓑ frustrated ⓒ encouraged ⓓ appointed
48. A lack of .... when you are driving can cause accidents.
ⓐ burnout ⓑ promotion ⓒ concentration ⓓ stress

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

49. There is a plan to alter furniture in the meeting hall to make it more spacious. "Alter" here is similar in meaning to " .... ".
ⓐ repair ⓑ change ⓒ decorate ⓓ modify
50. Worried and anxious are ....
ⓐ adverbs ⓑ opposites ⓒ antonyms ⓓ synonyms
51. We should look up to old people. The phrasal verb look up to means ....
ⓐ ignore ⓑ help ⓒ detest ⓓ respect
52. Innovation and creation are ....
ⓐ different meanings ⓑ opposites ⓒ synonyms ⓓ antonyms
53. The government has to cope with the problem of unemployment. The phrasal verb cope with means ....
ⓐ not to solve problems ⓑ deliberately ignore ⓒ fail to deal ⓓ successfully deal
54. If you .... something up, you create or arrange it.
ⓐ cope ⓑ seat ⓒ sit ⓓ set
55. Poverty affects our physical and mental health. The phrase 'mental health' is concerned with the ....
ⓐ body ⓑ mind ⓒ heart ⓓ lungs
56. Strain is a continuous feeling of worry about your work or personal life and which prevents you from relaxing. The word strain is a synonym for................ .
ⓐ doubt ⓑ press ⓒ stress ⓓ suspect
57. When you are considering a situation, then you're ....
ⓐ thinking deeply of it ⓑ ignoring it ⓒ procrastinating it ⓓ sharing it with others
58. Exercise helps you to relieve stress. The word 'relieve' is a synonym for ....
ⓐ reduce ⓑ increase ⓒ raise ⓓ promote
59. His worried frown turned into a smile of relief when he saw her. "Frown" here is a/an.......
ⓐ adverb ⓑ verb ⓒ adjective ⓓ noun

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

60. Each exercise................ on a different grammar point.
ⓐ interests ⓑ lives ⓒ keens ⓓ focuses
61. Please turn down the volume; I'm suffering .... a severe headache.
ⓐ with ⓑ from ⓒ of ⓓ by
62. You have enabled me to solve the problem. Thanks .... your help!
ⓐ of ⓑ about ⓒ for ⓓ with
63. There are lots of clouds in the sky; I hope they will clear .... soon.
ⓐ in ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ off
64. I decided to concentrate all my efforts .... finding somewhere to live.
ⓐ to ⓑ on ⓒ up ⓓ for
65. We can't go for a walk now – rain is .... down.
ⓐ coping ⓑ scolding ⓒ pouring ⓓ blowing
66. Computer games have a negative .... on children's health.
ⓐ increase ⓑ impact ⓒ reason ⓓ level

Exercises on — Derivatives & Language notes

67. Smoking .... die risk of getting lung cancer. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ increases ⓑ decreases ⓒ rises ⓓ grows

68. Can you .... that you were at home at that time? (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ prove ⓑ improve ⓒ pave ⓓ deprive

69. I am sure no one heard what we said; we talked in a ....
ⓐ silence ⓑ whisper ⓒ advance ⓓ comfort

70. The lecturer spoke about the .... effects of mental health problems.
ⓐ possessive ⓑ positive ⓒ talkative ⓓ negative

71. I don't believe that. What .... do you have that shows this is true?
ⓐ proof ⓑ prove ⓒ approve ⓓ improve

72. Practice is the best way to .... your French.
ⓐ prevent ⓑ provide ⓒ improve ⓓ import

73. He is an efficient employee, he deserves to get ....
ⓐ promoted ⓑ promotion ⓒ devoted ⓓ coated

74. He is an efficient employee, he deserves to get a ....
ⓐ promoted ⓑ promotion ⓒ devoted ⓓ coated

75. I take personal .... for what has happened.
ⓐ responsibility ⓑ responsible ⓒ responsibly ⓓ irresponsible

76. The company holds .... meetings with employees.
ⓐ regularly ⓑ gradual ⓒ gradually ⓓ regular

77. We meet .... to discuss our daily problems.
ⓐ regularly ⓑ gradual ⓒ gradually ⓓ regular

78. She faced the stark .... of backing the new plan or losing her job.
ⓐ choose ⓑ chose ⓒ chosen ⓓ choice

79. .... his own company, he took on many workers.
ⓐ Finding ⓑ Founded ⓒ Found ⓓ Founding

80. Exercise is the best way to get rid of ....
ⓐ stressed ⓑ press ⓒ stress ⓓ stressful

81. Moving to a new house is a very .... experience.
ⓐ stressfully ⓑ stress ⓒ stressed ⓓ stressful

82. She's been feeling very .... since she started her new job.
ⓐ stressing ⓑ stressed ⓒ stress ⓓ stressful

83. Will the prison system .... the increasing numbers of prisoners? (choose two)
ⓐ popular with ⓑ catch with ⓒ catch up with ⓓ cope up with ⓔ cope with

84. My family .... an established company 50 years ago. (choose two)
ⓐ found ⓑ set up ⓒ founded ⓓ find out ⓔ b & c

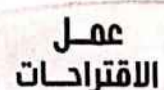
Don't get confused — Think carefully

85. We gained so much .... from our last job in this company.
ⓐ experience ⓑ experiences ⓒ experiment ⓓ experimentation

86. Scientific research has .... over years.
ⓐ improved ⓑ proved ⓒ approved ⓓ disapproved

87. He had all the qualities that helped to .... him a great champion.
ⓐ give ⓑ do ⓒ establish ⓓ make

88. You .... right to tell them the truth because I'm sure they will know it.
ⓐ are ⓑ have ⓒ make ⓓ see



عمل الاقتراحات Making suggestions

الاقتـــراح Suggestion

How about...(V + ing) ...?	Let's ...(inf.)...
What about...(V + ing) ...?	Why don't we (inf.)...?
I (**would**)suggest ... (V + ing) ...	You (**We**) could + ... inf.
I (**would**) recommend..(V + ing) ...	You (**We**) should + ... inf.
Have you considered + ing........?	We shall + ... inf.
Would you consider + ing.....?	Shall we + ... inf.....?
Have you thought about + ing....?	Wouldn't it be better to + inf.

Agreeing and disagreeing

Agreeing
الموافقة

- That's a good idea.
- That sounds fine.
- That's what I think.
- Fine by me.

Disagreeing
الرفض

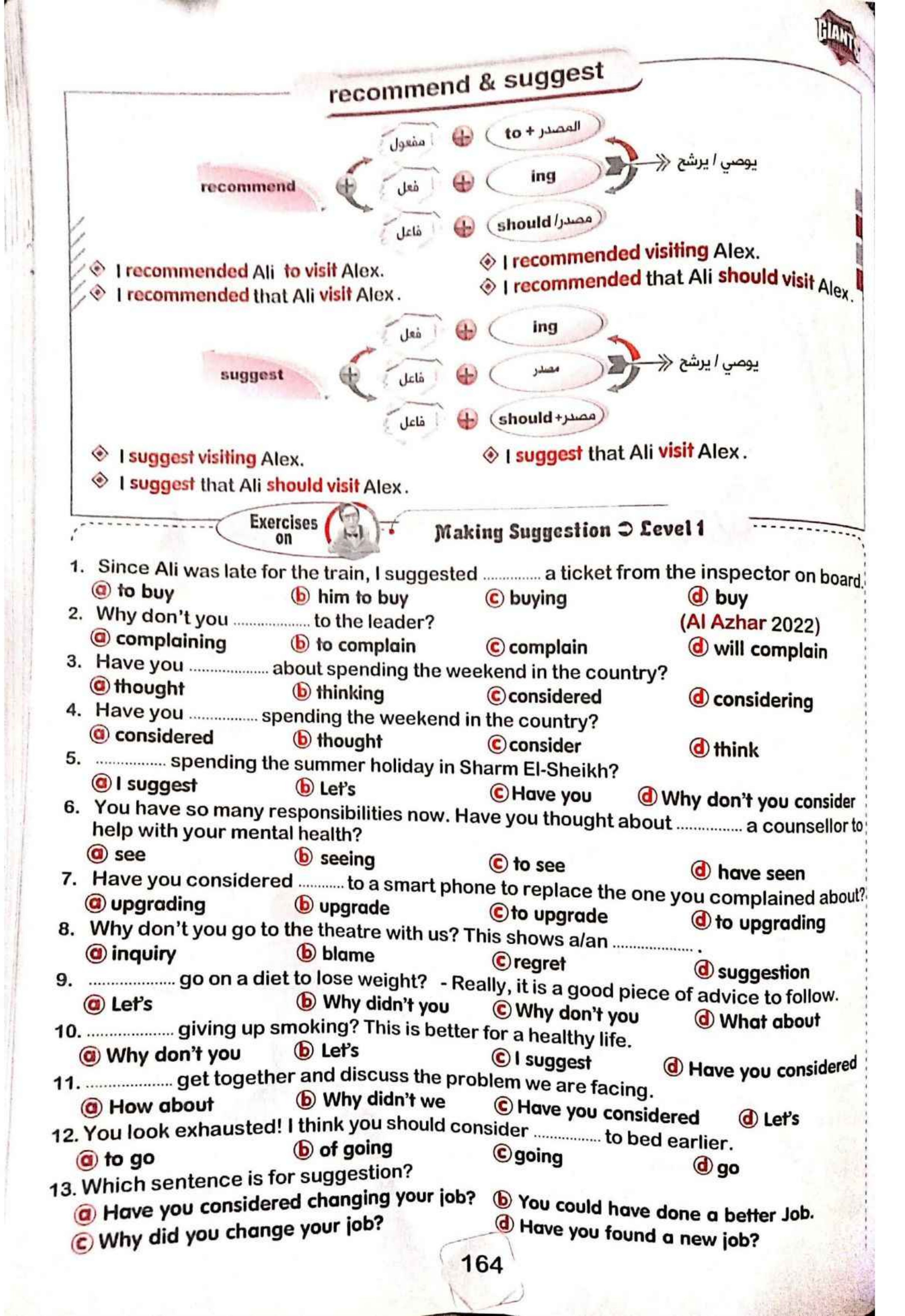
- Sorry, I'm not very keen.
- Sorry, I'm busy.
- I'm not sure about that.
- I'm not very interested.

Study these examples carefully

1. You suggest having dinner at a restaurant.
   ◈ Let's have dinner at a restaurant.
2. Your friend suggested going to the cinema. You disagree.
   ◈ Sorry, I'm busy.
3. You suggest a solution to the problem of traffic in Cairo.
   ◈ How about setting up new roads and bridges?
4. Seif suggested playing chess but you aren't interested. State another thing.
   ◈ I'm not very interested. I'd prefer to go for a walk.

طرق التعبير عن الندم

I wish I had + P.P	▸ I wish I **had studied** hard last year.
I regret + V + ing	▸ I regret not **studying** hard last year.
I should have + P.P	▸ I **should have studied** hard last year.
If الحالة الثالثة	▸ If I **had studied** hard last year, I'**d have passed.**



recommend & suggest

recommend + مفعول + to + المصدر
recommend + فعل + ing
recommend + فاعل + should / مصدر

يوصي / يرشح

- I **recommended** Ali **to visit** Alex.
- I **recommended** that Ali **visit** Alex.
- I **recommended visiting** Alex.
- I **recommended** that Ali **should visit** Alex.

suggest + فعل + ing
suggest + فاعل + مصدر
suggest + فاعل + should + مصدر

يوصي / يرشح

- I **suggest visiting** Alex.
- I **suggest** that Ali **should visit** Alex.
- I **suggest** that Ali **visit** Alex.

Exercises on Making Suggestion ➲ Level 1

1. Since Ali was late for the train, I suggested .... a ticket from the inspector on board.
   ⓐ to buy ⓑ him to buy ⓒ buying ⓓ buy
2. Why don't you .... to the leader? (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ complaining ⓑ to complain ⓒ complain ⓓ will complain
3. Have you .... about spending the weekend in the country?
   ⓐ thought ⓑ thinking ⓒ considered ⓓ considering
4. Have you .... spending the weekend in the country?
   ⓐ considered ⓑ thought ⓒ consider ⓓ think
5. .... spending the summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh?
   ⓐ I suggest ⓑ Let's ⓒ Have you ⓓ Why don't you consider
6. You have so many responsibilities now. Have you thought about .... a counsellor to help with your mental health?
   ⓐ see ⓑ seeing ⓒ to see ⓓ have seen
7. Have you considered .... to a smart phone to replace the one you complained about?
   ⓐ upgrading ⓑ upgrade ⓒ to upgrade ⓓ to upgrading
8. Why don't you go to the theatre with us? This shows a/an ....
   ⓐ inquiry ⓑ blame ⓒ regret ⓓ suggestion
9. .... go on a diet to lose weight? - Really, it is a good piece of advice to follow.
   ⓐ Let's ⓑ Why didn't you ⓒ Why don't you ⓓ What about
10. .... giving up smoking? This is better for a healthy life.
    ⓐ Why don't you ⓑ Let's ⓒ I suggest ⓓ Have you considered
11. .... get together and discuss the problem we are facing.
    ⓐ How about ⓑ Why didn't we ⓒ Have you considered ⓓ Let's
12. You look exhausted! I think you should consider .... to bed earlier.
    ⓐ to go ⓑ of going ⓒ going ⓓ go
13. Which sentence is for suggestion?
    ⓐ Have you considered changing your job?
    ⓑ You could have done a better Job.
    ⓒ Why did you change your job?
    ⓓ Have you found a new job?

14. Why don't you .... a diary to help you plan your work?
ⓐ using ⓑ to use ⓒ to using ⓓ use
15. What about .... with the most important things first?
ⓐ start ⓑ starting ⓒ starts ⓓ started
16. Have you considered .... to your family about your feelings?
ⓐ about talking ⓑ to talk ⓒ talk ⓓ talking
17. Have you thought .... to your family about your feelings?
ⓐ about talking ⓑ to talk ⓒ talk ⓓ talking
18. How .... to some music to help you to relax?
ⓐ about listen ⓑ about listening ⓒ listen ⓓ listening
19. What .... sport four times a week instead of six?
ⓐ about done ⓑ about do ⓒ out doing ⓓ about doing
20. Let's go to the club. "This sentence is a kind of a/an ....
ⓐ offer ⓑ request ⓒ suggestion ⓓ order
21. He said, "Let's sing." - He .... singing.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ wondered
22. Have you............... to bed a bit earlier?
ⓐ considered going ⓑ consider going ⓒ considered to going ⓓ considered to go
23. Why don't you .... studying for that exam in February?
ⓐ started ⓑ start ⓒ starting ⓓ starts
24. Why .... you come with us to the cinema?
ⓐ aren't ⓑ hasn't ⓒ weren't ⓓ don't

Exercises on Making Suggestion ⊃ Level 2

25. Which of the following doesn't show regret?
ⓐ I regret not making good use of my spare time.
ⓑ I ought not to have used my spare time badly.
ⓒ I should have used my spare time well.
ⓓ I should make good use of my spare time.
26. I wish I had arrived on time. I .... so late.
ⓐ should have been ⓑ shouldn't have been ⓒ had to be ⓓ can't have been
27. I recommend she .... that report for further information.
ⓐ to reading ⓑ read ⓒ reading ⓓ needs to read
28. I regret selling my old car. This means ....
ⓐ I should have sold it. ⓑ I wish I hadn't sold it.
ⓒ I can't have sold it. ⓓ I didn't have to sell it.
29. Which sentence is not a way to make a suggestion?
ⓐ Let's watch a movie tonight. ⓑ Why didn't you watch the movie?
ⓒ What about watching a movie tonight? ⓓ Shall we watch a movie tonight?
30. I wish I had studied hard last year. This means I .... hard last year.
ⓐ should have studied ⓑ shouldn't have studied ⓒ had to studied ⓓ can't have studied
31. Do you mind if we meet up after school? This expresses ....
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ good idea ⓒ regret ⓓ possibility
32. I regret wasting my time. This means ....
ⓐ I should have wasted my time ⓑ I wish I had wasted my time
ⓒ I shouldn't waste my time ⓓ I wish I hadn't wasted my time

33. I wish I had worked harder when I had time. This means ....

ⓐ If I had time, I'd work hard.
ⓑ I regret not working hard when I had time.
ⓒ I hope I'll work hard when I have time.
ⓓ I regret not to work hard when I have time.

34. A: Let's have dinner at a restaurant. B: ....

ⓐ That's a necessity to have dinner at a restaurant.
ⓑ You should have dinner at a restaurant.
ⓒ You should have had dinner at a restaurant
ⓓ That's a good idea.

35. You shouldn't have made that mistake. I wish you .... making that mistake.

ⓐ will avoid ⓑ avoided ⓒ have avoided ⓓ had avoided

36. I regret breaking that mirror. I wish I ....

ⓐ hadn't been careful ⓑ had been careful ⓒ was careful ⓓ wasn't careless

37. He said, "Let's go for a walk." - He suggested .... for a walk.

ⓐ go ⓑ gone ⓒ going ⓓ goes

38. He said, "Why don't you watch a new film?" - He .... watching a new film.

ⓐ denied ⓑ apologised ⓒ blamed ⓓ suggested

Exercises on Suggest & recommend

39. The doctor recommended him .... up smoking.

ⓐ giving ⓑ gives ⓒ to give ⓓ gave

40. The doctor recommended .... up smoking.

ⓐ giving ⓑ gives ⓒ give ⓓ gave

41. The doctor recommended that he .... up smoking.

ⓐ giving ⓑ given ⓒ gave ⓓ give

42. My friend recommended that I .... quickly for the next exam.

ⓐ revised ⓑ revising ⓒ should revise ⓓ had revised

43. I suggest that Ali .... much exercise to keep fit .

ⓐ doing ⓑ do ⓒ make ⓓ making

44. He said, "Let's sing." - He .... singing.

ⓐ suggested ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ wondered

45. He said, "Why didn't you study hard?" - He .... me for not studying hard.

ⓐ denied ⓑ apologised ⓒ blamed ⓓ refused

46. The teacher suggested that .... the exercise again.

ⓐ we do ⓑ we are doing ⓒ doing ⓓ did we

47. I recommend that you..................... to the doctor as soon as possible.

ⓐ can go ⓑ could go ⓒ go ⓓ will go

48. Ali suggested..................... dinner at the restaurant close to my house.

ⓐ having ⓑ to have ⓒ to be having ⓓ have had

Don't get confused Think carefully

49. He said, "Let's go for a walk." - He suggested that we .... for a walk.

ⓐ go ⓑ gone ⓒ going ⓓ goes

50. Dr Ahmed suggests that I .... on a diet to lose weight and be more healthy.

ⓐ going ⓑ go ⓒ went ⓓ goes

51. He suggested that she .... a study plan for this year.

ⓐ do ⓑ making ⓒ doing ⓓ make





Taking care of ourselves

1 Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
struggle (v)	يصارع / يقاوم / يكافح	alert (v) (adj)	ينبه / يحذر / تنبيه / يقظ	contagious (adj)	معدى (للمرض)
perceive (v)	يدرك / يلاحظ	influence (v)(n)	تأثير / يؤثر	deal (v)	يتعامل/ يواجه
perception (n)	إدراك	grateful (adj)	شاكر / ممتن	change (v)(n)	التغير / يتغير
disappoint (v)	يحبط / يخيب أمله	gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر	accept (v)	يقبل
identify (v)	يحدد / يعرف	demonstrate	يوضح / يثبت / يتظاهر	go on (v)	يستمر

2 Main Vocabulary

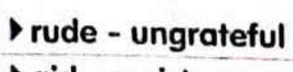
Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
remain (v)	يبقى/ يظل	athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	edition (n)	طبعة
specific (adj)	محدد / معين	maintain (v)	يحافظ على	particular (adj)	معين / محدد
solution (n)	حل	factor (n)	عامل / عنصر	upload (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
memo (n)	مذكرة / ملحوظة	participant (n)	مشارك	routine (n)	روتين يومي
profile (n)	ملف شخصي	prepare (v)	يجهز / يحضر	study (v)(n)	دراسة / يدرس / حجرة مكتب
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	thinking (n)	التفكير	impact (v)(n)	تأثير / يؤثر
external (adj)	خارجي	results (n)	نتائج	scared (adj)	مرعوب
resilience (n)	مرونة	psychologist (n)	عالم نفس	worried (adj)	قلق
teenager (n)	مراهق	efficient (adj)	كفء	poet (n)	شاعر
technique (n)	أسلوب	sign (n)	علامة / إشارة / لافتة	poem (n)	قصيدة

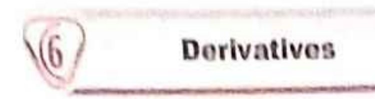
3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
find it difficult to	يجد من الصعب أن
make change	يغير / يحدث تغيير
make notes	يسجل ملاحظات
make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
make time for	يحدد وقت لـ
make a study plan	يعمل خطة للدراسة
do revision	يراجع
be tricked into	يتم خداعه
focus on	يركز على
struggle with	يكافح
adapt to	يتأقلم / يتكيف مع
get together	يجتمع / يلتقي
external factors	عوامل خارجية
take action	يتخذ إجراء / يتصرف

4 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
grateful	ممتن	▸ thankful - pleased	▸ rude - ungrateful
disappoint (v)	يحبط / يخيب أمله	▸ sadden - mislead - frustrate	▸ aid - assist - encourage
influence (v)(n)	تأثير / يؤثر	▸ affect - effect - impact	▸ cause - reason





6 Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
perceive	يدرك / يلاحظ	perception	إدراك	perceptive	قوي الملاحظة
disappoint	يحبط / يخيب أمله	disappointment	خيبة أمل	disappointed	محبط
identify	يحدد / يعرف	identity	هوية	identified	محدد
demonstrate	يوضح / يتظاهر	demonstration	توضيح / مظاهرة	demonstrative	توضيحي
		gratitude	امتنان / شكر	grateful	شاكر / ممتن



Language Notes

7 Notice the Difference

athletes	رياضيين	⊃	athletics	ألعاب قوى
do revision	يراجع	⊃	**make** a revision **plan**	يعمل خطة مراجعة
download **from**	يحمل من الإنترنت	⊃	upload **to**	يرفع على الإنترنت
grateful (adj)	شاكر / ممتن	⊃	gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر
prepare (v)	يجهز / يحضر	⊃	repair	يصلح
optimistic (adj)	متفائل	⊃	pessimistic (adj)	متشائم



Reading

Read the advice from a teacher who helps teenagers who are suffering from burnout

When I talk to **teenagers**[1] who are **suffering from burnout**, I start by talking to them about the **negative effects**[2] of their **mental health**[3] problems. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may feel **exhausted** or they may not have any time for **self-care**.

(1) مراهقين
(2) جوانب سلبية
(3) الصحة النفسية
(4) روتين / عادات
(5) يغير / تغير
(6) إدارة
(7) يخصص المزيد من الوقت لـ

Then I ask them about their **routine**[4] because I want to **find out** how much time they spend **doing** their **homework** and how much time they **spend on** other activities. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can **change**[5], for example to have better time **management**[6]. A final important thing to look at is what activities the student really enjoys. We can **talk about** these and **think about** how the student can **make more time for**[7] them.

Read a short extract from George Mitchell's book

One way to help you deal with[1] life's problems is to focus[2] only on the things you can change. There are many external factors[3] which may influence[4] how well you can cope with[5] a particular[6] problem. However, you should accept[7] that there are some things you just do not have control over. It is not helpful[8] to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you get stressed about getting wet[9]? Or do you buy a good raincoat[10] to keep you warm and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple solution to[11] what others might see as a problem. This is also the first step to accepting change[12] as something normal. It is a simple way to make sure[13] you remain[14] positive when you face[15] life's difficulties[16].

١) يتعامل مع
٢) يركز على
٣) عوامل خارجية
٤) يؤثر على
٥) يساير / يواكب
٦) مخصوص / معين
٧) يقبل
٨) مفيد
٩) يصبح مبتل
١٠) معطف للمطر
١١) حل لـ
١٢) قبول التغيير
١٣) يتأكد
١٤) يبقى
١٥) يواجه
١٦) صعوبات

e-mail

بريد الكترونـــى

To : Mohamed@mail.com
From : Karim@mail.com

Hi Mohamed,

I wanted to write because I've noticed[1] that you don't seem to be your normal self[2] at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand[3] how you're feeling because I was suffering from a lot of stress last year too. I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had. Instead of[4] doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management[5] was something I didn't know anything about back then[6], but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study time better.

١) يلاحظ
٢) حالة طبيعية
٣) يفهم
٤) بدلا من
٥) إدارة الوقت
٦) فى ذلك الوقت
٧) يحدد / يكشف
٨) أسباب
٩) ما يحدث

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify[7] the reasons[8] for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together to have a talk about what's going on[9] if you want. Just let me know when.

Talk soon,
Karim

Video Script

Two voice memos from students Nevine and Hany who have done something to improve their mental health.

1 Nevine

This is Nevine and six months ago I was really **struggling with**[1] my **mental health**[2]. I was suffering from burnout and I wasn't spending any time on self-care at all. **Fortunately**[3], I'm feeling a lot better now. The first step was to work out what was causing the burnout. In my **case**[4], I was doing too many things and I couldn't **cope**[5]. For example, I was trying to do all of my homework perfectly while also playing in four sports teams and **volunteering**[6] at an old people's home on Saturdays. I **realised**[7] that if you're not spending enough time doing things to promote your own well-being, you'll feel exhausted and sad. I decided to stop being such a **perfectionist**[8] with my homework, only play in one sports team and only volunteer at the old people's home two weekends a month. I always get enough sleep now. Now, at the weekend when I don't have to do anything, I just **relax**[9] at home and enjoy spending time with my friends and family. I always get enough sleep. Recently, I've learned how to draw animals, but that's just for fun – I don't put any **pressure**[10] on myself to do it perfectly!

1) يقاوم / يصارع
2) صحة نفسية
3) لحسن الحظ
4) حالة
5) يتأقلم
6) التطوع
7) يدرك
8) شخص مثالى
9) يسترخى
10) ضغط
11) يحبط
12) يركز
13) يغط فى النوم
14) خطة دراسة
15) يتبع
16) استراحات منتظمة
17) أيضاً / بالمثل

2 Hany

My name's Hany. I didn't think that I would ever have any mental health problems. I used to be so happy and relaxed all the time. Then last year, I started to feel under a lot of pressure at school because we had some important exams. I was so worried about not doing very well in the exams. I didn't want to **disappoint**[11] my parents who thought I was a really good student. I suffered from a lot of stress and it was so bad that I couldn't sleep. Of course, that meant that I was exhausted at school the next day and found it hard to **concentrate**[12] in my lessons. One day I **fell asleep**[13] in the library at school and a teacher had to come and wake me up. We talked about how I was feeling, and the teacher helped me to make a **study plan**[14] I could **follow**[15] and still get enough sleep! I now spend less time studying, but I learn more than I used to because I manage my time better and take **regular breaks**[16]. I always get at least eight hours sleep **as well**[17].

Listening

Presenter: Hello and welcome to this week's **edition**[1] of '**Positive Thinking**'. In the studio with us today we have **psychologist**[2] and popular author George Mitchell. Hello George and welcome to the **show**.

George: Thank you for having me. I'm very happy to be here today.

Presenter: Let's talk about your new book called 'Positive thinking is easy' which **was published**[3] just last month and has already sold 30,000 copies. **Congratulations**[4]!

George: Thank you.

Presenter: So, tell me. How can I be more positive?

1) طبعة / نسخة
2) عالم نفسى
3) نشرت
4) أطيب التهانى
5) تلقائيا
6) عادات

George: Well, there are many things we can do **automatically**[5] so they become **habits**[6]. The first one is something I have done twice already while talking to you.

Presenter: Really? What's that?

George: Saying 'thank you'.

Presenter: Ahh, yes. So, you mean we should say 'thank you' more?

George: Well, what I mean is we should be more **grateful**[7] for everything we have. We need to **focus** more **on** all the good things and less on the negative. For example, in one study by psychologists in American Universities two groups of students were asked to keep a **diary**[8] and each week group one wrote a few sentences about the things they were grateful for that week and group two wrote about the things that caused them stress. After just 10 weeks the first group were more **optimistic**[9], did more exercise and visited the doctor less!

٧) شاكر / ممتنون
٨) مفكرة يوميات
٩) متفائل
١٠) يذكر
١١) نصف ممتلئة
١٢) يمد / ينقل
١٣) امتنان
١٤) يلاحظ / يرى
١٥) مشاركين
١٦) تأثير
١٧) يتخيل
١٨) حالاً / فوراً
١٩) ناقل للعدوى
٢٠) حديث / حوار
٢١) إدراك / تصور

Presenter: Wow! That **reminds**[10] me of a saying my grandmother used to tell me about how some people see the glass **half empty**[11] and others half full.

George: Your grandmother was right. We should be happy for the good things in our lives and **extending**[12] this **gratitude**[13] to other people will also make us feel better.

Presenter: That's an interesting point. Could you tell us more?

George: Of course. We naturally feel more positive when we are kind to others. A study in 2017 showed that being kind to others or **observing**[14] others being kind **improved** the **well-being** of the **participants**[15].

Presenter: Let me check I have understood. So, not only being kind to other people but also watching others being kind to other people can make you feel more positive?

George: That's right. The **impact**[16] is huge. Just **imagine**[17], if you are kind to someone and a third person observes you, that's three people who **immediately**[18] feel more positive and they might do something good for another person which will impact on others and so these positive feelings become **contagious**[19].

Presenter: Well, George Mitchell, this **conversation**[20] has been very interesting and I'm sorry to have to end it there. We have heard how our own **perception**[21] of things and being grateful can make us feel more positive. I guess there is just one important thing to say and that is ... 'thank you'!

George: Thank you for having me on the show. I've really enjoyed talking to you today.

Presenter: Well, listeners that's all we have time for today. Remember being positive all begins with how you see things. Thank you for listening and stay happy and healthy.



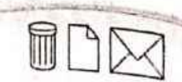


Read each and match it with

The description of the situation ← **the email he wrote**









I have moved house and school and it's had an impact on my well-being.

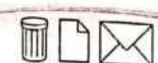
I have just started doing sport to calm down because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics club I was in and all this happened during an important year at school. I want to study medicine, so I have to get good results in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

What advice can you give?



I am very worried about passing all my exams and although I can't spend much time with friends. I still follow what they are doing on social media.





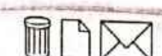
For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks at school and after school they meet up. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload photos and videos of themselves having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

What advice can you give?



I think it's important to know what is happening in the world, whether it's good or bad.





I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up my phone to send me news alerts. Recently though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious and don't want to leave the house.

What advice can you give?

---

1. He was clever enough to .... that the man was trying to sell him a stolen car.
ⓐ perceive ⓑ struggle ⓒ charge ⓓ change
2. We have to change the public's .... that money is the most important thing.
ⓐ perceive ⓑ perception ⓒ receive ⓓ perceptive
3. Maria was .... with her English homework; it was very difficult.
ⓐ uploading ⓑ remaining ⓒ struggling ⓓ identifying
4. I'm sorry to .... you, but your plan has failed.
ⓐ please ⓑ cheer ⓒ perceive ⓓ disappoint
5. Parents should be .... to sudden changes in children's behaviour.
ⓐ alert ⓑ alter ⓒ disappoint ⓓ upload
6. We were deeply .... for their help.
ⓐ great ⓑ gratefully ⓒ gratitude ⓓ grateful
7. I would like to express my .... to all the people who have helped us.
ⓐ great ⓑ gratefully ⓒ gratitude ⓓ grateful
8. The infection is highly ...., so don't let anyone else use your things.
ⓐ contagious ⓑ infected ⓒ contagiously ⓓ infect
9. The aim of the experiments was to .... the effectiveness of the treatment.
ⓐ demonstrate ⓑ damage ⓒ proof ⓓ ruin
10. Political parties are not allowed to .... funds from abroad.
ⓐ predict ⓑ except ⓒ expect ⓓ accept
11. What is the .... purpose of your visit to England?
ⓐ specific ⓑ mean ⓒ worried ⓓ scared
12. Her .... to the problem was an example of good creative thinking.
ⓐ impact ⓑ solve ⓒ solution ⓓ athletics
13. Please read this .... carefully and hand it on to your colleagues.
ⓐ memo ⓑ noticeable ⓒ external ⓓ gratitude
14. The advertising campaign aims to raise the company's ....
ⓐ perceive ⓑ perception ⓒ profile ⓓ memo
15. You shouldn't judge people by their .... appearances.
ⓐ externally ⓑ external ⓒ extra ⓓ extreme
16. Injury forced him to retire from professional ....
ⓐ athlete ⓑ athletically ⓒ athletic ⓓ athletics
17. Stress is a contributing .... in many illnesses.
ⓐ study ⓑ worker ⓒ factor ⓓ factory
18. Out of the survey ...., we made sure that 40% were female and 60% were male.
ⓐ participate ⓑ studies ⓒ participants ⓓ factors
19. Some .... believe that there is a link between watching too much television and aggressive behavior.
ⓐ psychologists ⓑ psychology ⓒ psychological ⓓ psychologically
20. Is there a .... type of book he enjoys?
ⓐ contagious ⓑ specifically ⓒ particularly ⓓ particular
21. How do I .... photos to my website?
ⓐ load ⓑ upload ⓒ download ⓓ overload
22. It was getting late and dark and she was beginning to feel ....
ⓐ scared ⓑ contagious ⓒ grateful ⓓ efficient

23. Gradually, agricultural tools improved and farming became more ....
ⓐ scared ⓑ contagious ⓒ grateful ⓓ efficient

24. Passengers were asked to............their own suitcases before they were put on the plane.
ⓐ negotiate ⓑ pour ⓒ spoil ⓓ identify

25. The article gives advice on .... a healthy weight.
ⓐ giving ⓑ maintaining ⓒ making ⓓ going

Exercises on *Main Vocabulary*

26. The company is making progress because they usually insist on having.........employees.
ⓐ deficiently ⓑ deficient ⓒ efficiently ⓓ efficient

27. The .... firefighter rescued the kids in the burning building.
ⓐ brave ⓑ idle ⓒ lazy ⓓ coward

28. We must play a/an .... role in developing our country.
ⓐ pessimistic ⓑ weak ⓒ negative ⓓ positive

29. A.......can be a researcher, who does studies on mental disorders and their treatments.
ⓐ scientist ⓑ psychologist ⓒ doctor ⓓ botanist

30. One must be .... even if the circumstances around drive him to despair.
ⓐ released ⓑ optimistic ⓒ pessimistic ⓓ depressed

31. The receptionist is .... for booking rooms and answering the phone at the hotel.
ⓐ responsible ⓑ reusable ⓒ irresponsible ⓓ desirable

32. At the airport, you have to show your ....; a passport for example.
ⓐ identify ⓑ identical ⓒ identification ⓓ definition

33. Sport is the most efficient way to build up and.........a reasonable level of physical fitness.
ⓐ defy ⓑ remind ⓒ remain ⓓ maintain

34. 40 of the course .... are offered employment with the company.
ⓐ employers ⓑ participants ⓒ practical ⓓ editors

35. I'm .... that the future is going to turn out more successful than the past.
ⓐ cruel ⓑ pessimistic ⓒ perfect ⓓ optimistic

36. He would like to express sincere............to all who supported him during the competition.
ⓐ gratitude ⓑ ingratitude ⓒ grateful ⓓ respectable

37. Janet's been under a lot of .... since her mother's illness.
ⓐ stressfully ⓑ stress ⓒ stressed ⓓ stressful

38. .... my surprise when I opened the door to find him standing there.
ⓐ Break ⓑ Imagine ⓒ Scold ⓓ Suffer

Exercises on *Expressions & language notes*

39. The poor parents now fear .... their child, who has not been found yet.
ⓐ from ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ by

40. Let's get .... and discuss the problems we face.
ⓐ on ⓑ off ⓒ apart ⓓ together

41. The king's treasure will go .... a permanent display in the new museum.
ⓐ of ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ with

42. He was very .... in shaping the public opinion.
ⓐ influence ⓑ fluency ⓒ influential ⓓ inflationary

43. He had a / an .... in shaping the public opinion.
ⓐ influence ⓑ fluency ⓒ influential ⓓ inflationary

44. They opened a shelter to .... temporary housing for the city's homeless.
ⓐ improve ⓑ proof ⓒ prove ⓓ provide

45. Both parents are equally .... for raising the children.
ⓐ responsibility ⓑ responsible ⓒ responsibly ⓓ irresponsible

46. I've been writing short stories and .... for years.
ⓐ poets ⓑ poems ⓒ rhymes ⓓ artists

47. These river banks have inspired .... for many centuries.
ⓐ poets ⓑ poems ⓒ poetry ⓓ verses

48. It was discovered that three of our Olympic .... had taken drugs.
ⓐ athlete ⓑ athletes ⓒ athletic ⓓ athletics

49. There are several different options you can ....
ⓐ choose ⓑ chose ⓒ chosen ⓓ choice

50. I stayed there for a week all .... and then went back to the centre.
ⓐ loan ⓑ alone ⓒ lonely ⓓ only

51. He's constantly changing his mind. The synonym of "constantly" is ....
ⓐ rarely ⓑ occasionally ⓒ hardly ⓓ frequently

52. I hope I have .... the right decision to improve my life style.
ⓐ done ⓑ made ⓒ seen ⓓ been

53. .... is the synonym of "influence". (choose two)
ⓐ Effective ⓑ Effectively ⓒ Influential ⓓ Affect ⓔ Effect

54. Teachers should .... their students to take part in school activities.
ⓐ courage ⓑ suppose ⓒ encourage ⓓ discourage

55. Are you capable of................ decisions on your own?
ⓐ doing ⓑ giving ⓒ causing ⓓ making

56. Every time I .... a suggestion at work, my boss overrides it.
ⓐ take ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ get

57. We're going to talk to a 15-................ -old boy called Ali.
ⓐ year ⓑ years ⓒ year's ⓓ years'

58. We................ together with our staff to solve our problems.
ⓐ get ⓑ left ⓒ make ⓓ set

59. Don't spend too much time .... computer games.
ⓐ play ⓑ playing ⓒ played ⓓ to play

60. I want to catch .... with my classmates; I need to study a lot this weekend.
ⓐ on ⓑ up ⓒ into ⓓ in

61. I don't .... for a minute that he'll agree. I'm sure that he won't.
ⓐ realise ⓑ alter ⓒ recognise ⓓ suppose

62. We have developed a new .... for detecting errors in the educational process.
ⓐ technician ⓑ technique ⓒ technical ⓓ excerpt

63. I had a pretty unpleasant .... at the dentist's.
ⓐ experiment ⓑ expert ⓒ exports ⓓ experience

الافعال الناقصة Modal Verbs

should + inf. and shouldn't + inf.

should / shouldn't + inf. = ought to / ought not to + inf.

* تستخدم فى النصيحة ولتقديم اقتراحات وعمل توصيات.

- Children **shouldn't** take candy from strangers.
- You really **ought to** quit smoking.
- She **shouldn't** waste her time during final exams.

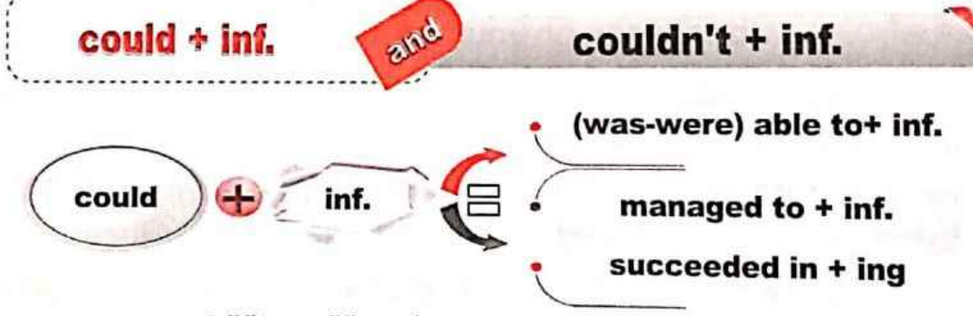
should have + P.P. and shouldn't have + P.P.

should have / shouldn't have + P.P. = ought to have / ought not to have + P.P.

1. للحديث عن الندم فى الماضى
2. لتوجيه اللوم
3. لعمل توقع
4. عند قول إن شيئا ما فى الماضى لم يكن فكرة جيدة

- I **should have slept** early.
- He failed in his exam. He **should have studied** hard.
- They **should have arrived** by now.
- She **shouldn't have got** upset.

could + inf. and couldn't + inf.



* تستخدم للتعبير عن المقدرة فى الماضى والطلب وإعطاء إذن وتقديم اقتراح:

- When I was young, I **could** sing but I **couldn't** swim.
- I **managed to** pass all my exams but I **wasn't able to** join the college I wanted.
- **Could** you help me, please? - You **could** ask your friend for help.

* للتعبير عن المقدرة فى المضارع نستخدم:

can + inf. = am / is / are → able to+ inf.

- I **can sing** well = I **am able to sing** well.

* للتعبير عن المقدرة فى المستقبل نستخدم:

can + inf. = will be able to+ inf.

- I **can't meet** you tomorrow = I **won't be able to meet** you tomorrow.



could have + P.P. and couldn't have + P.P.



(امكانية لم تتحقق في الماضى)

❶ تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به في الماضي لكنه لم يفعل.

- I could have come to the party but I wasn't interested.

❷ عند قول أن شيئا ما لم يكن ممكنا في الماضي.

- She couldn't have been at the club at 8.00, because she was in the café.

❸ تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج كان محتمل الحدوث في الماضي.

- I couldn't find my wallet. I could have forgotten it at home.

❹ تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي.

- He failed all his exams. He couldn't have been a clever student.

❺ تستخدم للتعبير عن تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث.

- He studied quite well. He could have passed.

may / might + inf. and may / might + have + P.P.



* تستخدم may / might + inf. للتعبير عن احتمالية حدوث شيء فى المضارع أو المستقبل والطلب واعطاء إذن وتقديم اقتراح واستنتاج محتمل فى المضارع:

- I might visit my uncle today.
- You might prefer to choose your favourite meal.

* تستخدم may (might) + have + P.P. للتعبير عن احتمالية حدوث شيء فى الماضي واستنتاج محتمل فى الماضى:

- I might have left my keys in the flat. I am not sure.

must + inf. and mustn't + inf.

* نستخدم must / mustn't للتعبير عن الإلزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم ويأتى الفعل بعدها فى المصدر (بدون to).

- You mustn't park here. (القواعد العامة والقوانين)
- I must work hard for the exams next week. (إلزام شخصي)
- I must buy a present for my mother. (مشاعر قوية)
- You must come to my party tonight. (دعوة قوية)
- You must stop smoking. (نصيحة قوية)
- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (توصية قوية)
- Why must Ali laugh at me all the time? (اللوم / الانتقاد)
- There mustn't be any rubbish left in your room. (تحذير قوي)

* يمكننا استخدام must + inf. للتعبير عن استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع

- He has three modern cars. He must be rich.

* يمكننا استخدام must have + P.P. للتعبير عن استنتاج مؤكد في الماضي

- All streets were wet yesterday. It must have rained.

have to - has to - need to + inf. and don't (deosn't) + have to (need to) + inf.

* نستخدم have to / has to / need to + inf. للتعبير عن الزام مفروض علينا.
* تأتي has to / needs to مع المفرد و he - she - it
* وتأتي have to / need to مع الجمع و we - they - I - you

* تستخدم have to / has to + infinitive مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر الى).
- We have to go to school on time.
- We have to go to school every day.
- My father doesn't have to work today because it is a holiday.

* للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم had to / didn't have to + inf.:
- We had to do computer studies when we were at prep school.
- She didn't have to hurry, she wasn't late for school.
- I didn't need to buy / needn't buy a new pen as I'd already got one.

① الفرق بين must و a must:
- You must turn right. (فعل ناقص بمعني يجب ويأتي بعده المصدر)
- It is a must for you to turn right. (اسم بمعني ضرورة)

② الفرق بين necessary و a necessity:
- It is necessary to turn right. (صفة بمعني ضروري)
- It is a necessity to turn right. (اسم بمعني ضرورة)

③ يمكننا أيضا استخدام can't بدلا من mustn't للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما:
- You can't smoke in hospitals.

④ تعبر didn't have to عن أن الشيء كان غير ضروري ولم يتم فعله.
أما needn't have + p.p تعبر عن أن الشيء كان غير ضروري وتم فعله.
- He didn't have to get up early. (so he didn't get up early)
- He needn't have got up early. (but he got up early)

⑤ لا نستخدم to بعد كلمة needn't يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون to :
- We needn't go to the club.

⑥ نستخدم التركيب be to بمعني يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة (am - is - are + to + inf.).
- Nadia is to admit that she did not know.

⑦ كلمة a must اسم بمعني ضرورة وليست فعل مساعد:
- Getting a driving licence is a must to drive a car.

⑧ لاحظ الفرق بين:

could have  p.p.  should have  p.p.

* تستخدم (should have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم أو الندم.
- You should have come early. You wasted a lot of time on your way.
- Have you ever said something to a friend that you shouldn't have said?
- What should you have said?

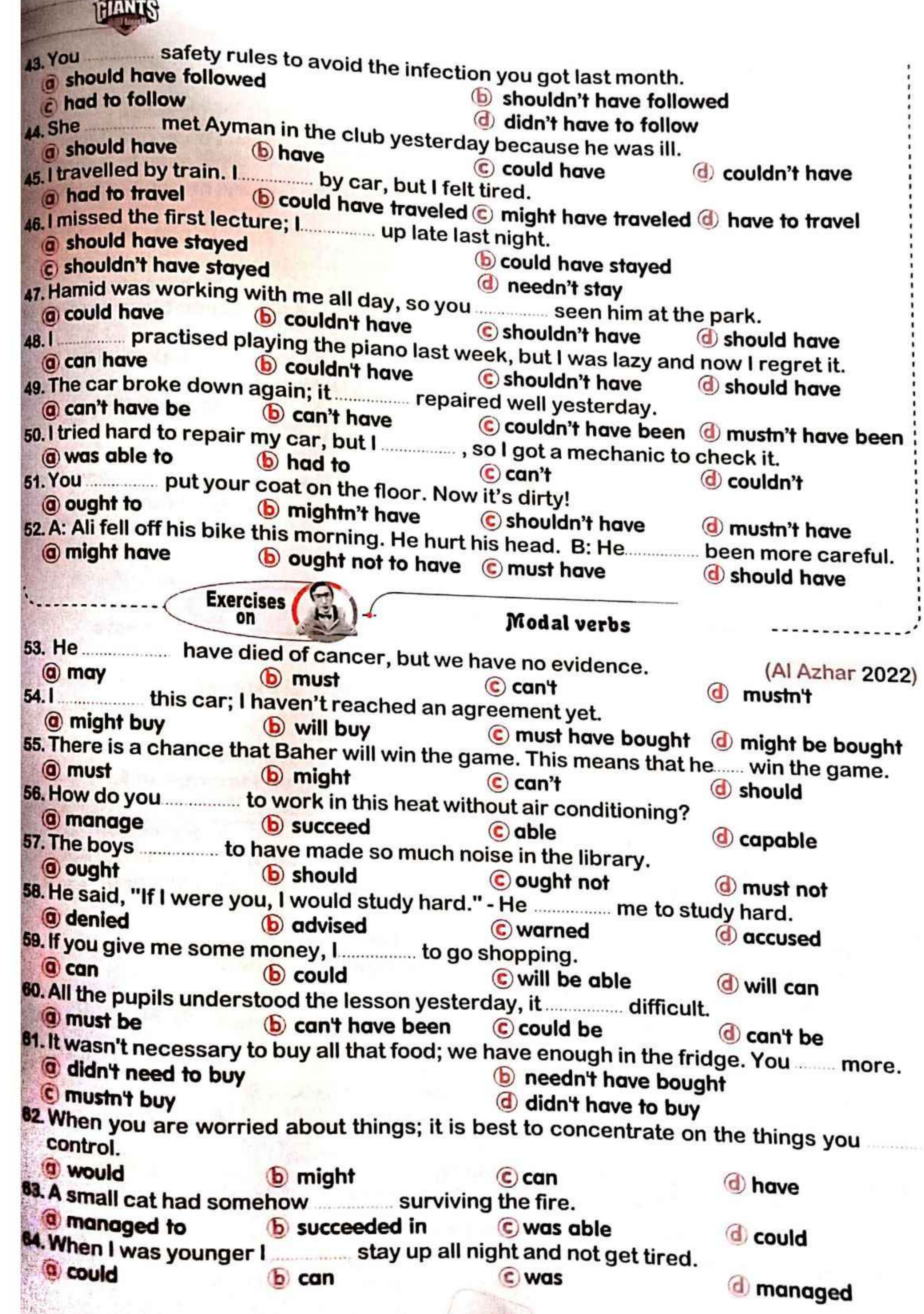
* تستخدم (could have + p.p.) للتعبير عن إمكانية لم تتحقق في الماضي.
- You could have come early but you didn't.
- Could you have worked harder last week?
- What could you have done?

1. You shouldn't have .... TV so late last night!
ⓐ to watch ⓑ watching ⓒ watched ⓓ watches
2. You should .... to learn better time management skills.
ⓐ tried ⓑ trying ⓒ to try ⓓ try
3. You could have .... 'no' to playing on the school basketball team.
ⓐ saying ⓑ been saying ⓒ said ⓓ say
4. She was angry with him. He .... have talked to her that way. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ could ⓑ mustn't ⓒ can't ⓓ shouldn't
5. Why did you drive so fast? You .... an accident.
ⓐ could have had ⓑ shouldn't have had ⓒ had to have ⓓ must have had
6. When you go to Alex next week, you .... with uncle Ali.
ⓐ could stay ⓑ could have stayed ⓒ should have stayed ⓓ ought stay
7. I stayed late at work last night, I .... a taxi, but I didn't as I preferred to walk home with a friend
ⓐ should have taken ⓑ could have taken ⓒ had to take ⓓ must have taken
8. You could .... asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
ⓐ has ⓑ having ⓒ had ⓓ have
9. You should have done your homework yesterday. This expresses ....
ⓐ blame ⓑ wish ⓒ advice ⓓ deduction
10. You look very tired. I think you should .... gone to bed earlier last night.
ⓐ have ⓑ to have ⓒ having ⓓ has
11. You .... have exceeded the speed limit. Now, you have to pay a fine.
ⓐ could ⓑ couldn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ should
12. What .... yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!
ⓐ did I have to do ⓑ should I have done ⓒ should I do ⓓ I should have done
13. He .... studied the lesson well; he answered all the questions wrong.
ⓐ could have ⓑ must have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ couldn't have
14. You could .... together and help each other.
ⓐ study ⓑ studying ⓒ to study ⓓ studies
15. Rami got very low marks; he .... the faculty he preferred.
ⓐ shouldn't have joined ⓑ must have joined
ⓒ couldn't have joined ⓓ had to join
16. Tamer .... there. His car keys are still here.
ⓐ shouldn't have driven ⓑ couldn't have driven
ⓒ must have driven ⓓ had to drive
17. Your health seems to be worsening. You .... a doctor at the beginning of the infection.
ⓐ didn't have to consult ⓑ must have consulted
ⓒ should have consulted ⓓ had to consult
18. You have made a silly mistake. You .... more careful.
ⓐ shouldn't have been ⓑ must have been ⓒ had to be ⓓ should have been
19. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
ⓐ could phone ⓑ should have phoned ⓒ should phone ⓓ would have phoned
20. I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ could have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ will have
21. Ali .... been unkind to his sister, Aya. He knew she would be upset.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

1. You shouldn't have .... TV so late last night!
   ⓐ to watch ⓑ watching ⓒ watched ⓓ watches
2. You should .... to learn better time management skills.
   ⓐ tried ⓑ trying ⓒ to try ⓓ try
3. You could have .... 'no' to playing on the school basketball team.
   ⓐ saying ⓑ been saying ⓒ said ⓓ say
4. She was angry with him. He .... have talked to her that way. (Al Azhar 2022)
   ⓐ could ⓑ mustn't ⓒ can't ⓓ shouldn't
5. Why did you drive so fast? You .... an accident.
   ⓐ could have had ⓑ shouldn't have had ⓒ had to have ⓓ must have had
6. When you go to Alex next week, you .... with uncle Ali.
   ⓐ could stay ⓑ could have stayed ⓒ should have stayed ⓓ ought stay
7. I stayed late at work last night, I .... a taxi, but I didn't as I preferred to walk home with a friend
   ⓐ should have taken ⓑ could have taken ⓒ had to take ⓓ must have taken
8. You could .... asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!
   ⓐ has ⓑ having ⓒ had ⓓ have
9. You should have done your homework yesterday. This expresses ....
   ⓐ blame ⓑ wish ⓒ advice ⓓ deduction
10. You look very tired. I think you should .... gone to bed earlier last night.
   ⓐ have ⓑ to have ⓒ having ⓓ has
11. You .... have exceeded the speed limit. Now, you have to pay a fine.
   ⓐ could ⓑ couldn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ should
12. What............... yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!
   ⓐ did I have to do ⓑ should I have done ⓒ should I do ⓓ I should have done
13. He .... studied the lesson well; he answered all the questions wrong.
   ⓐ could have ⓑ must have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ couldn't have
14. You could .... together and help each other.
   ⓐ study ⓑ studying ⓒ to study ⓓ studies
15. Rami got very low marks; he .... the faculty he preferred.
   ⓐ shouldn't have joined ⓑ must have joined
   ⓒ couldn't have joined ⓓ had to join
16. Tamer .... there. His car keys are still here.
   ⓐ shouldn't have driven ⓑ couldn't have driven
   ⓒ must have driven ⓓ had to drive
17. Your health seems to be worsening. You ....a doctor at the beginning of the infection.
   ⓐ didn't have to consult ⓑ must have consulted
   ⓒ should have consulted ⓓ had to consult
18. You have made a silly mistake. You .... more careful.
   ⓐ shouldn't have been ⓑ must have been ⓒ had to be ⓓ should have been
19. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
   ⓐ could phone ⓑ should have phoned ⓒ should phone ⓓ would have phoned
20. I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
   ⓐ can't have ⓑ could have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ will have
21. Ali .... been unkind to his sister, Aya. He knew she would be upset.
   ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have



22. I blame you for making noise; you .... that.
ⓐ ought to have done ⓑ shouldn't have done
ⓒ should do ⓓ mustn't have done
23. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in London? You .... with Tom.
ⓐ could have stayed ⓑ must have stayed ⓒ may have stayed ⓓ had to stay
24. He .... have enjoyed that journey; it was too boring and hot.
ⓐ must ⓑ might ⓒ may ⓓ couldn't
25. I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence expresses ....
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ good idea ⓒ regret ⓓ possibility
26. You .... shouted at your sister. It was the wrong thing to do.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have
27. You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
ⓐ should catch ⓑ could have caught ⓒ shouldn't have caught ⓓ could catch
28. He .... been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have
29. You shouldn't .... television for so long. Your eyes are so red!
ⓐ have watched ⓑ have watch ⓒ to have watched ⓓ watched
30. You .... do your homework with other students.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ should have ⓒ could ⓓ could have
31. You .... your revision. It is my advice.
ⓐ should plan ⓑ may plan ⓒ should have planned ⓓ might plan
32. You .... taken more breaks.
ⓐ should ⓑ ought have ⓒ ought to ⓓ should have
33. There were drops of water in the streets. It .... have rained last night.
ⓐ could ⓑ should ⓒ couldn't ⓓ mustn't
34. You .... your father yesterday, the problem was too serious for you to solve alone.
ⓐ should consult ⓑ should have consulted
ⓒ didn't have to consult ⓓ shouldn't have consulted
35. You couldn't have .... any more than you did. That was your best.
ⓐ do ⓑ done ⓒ doing ⓓ did
36. He failed all his exams. He .... a clever student.
ⓐ couldn't have been ⓑ can have been ⓒ shouldn't have been ⓓ must have been
37. He failed his exam. He .... hard.
ⓐ shouldn't have studied ⓑ should have studied
ⓒ mustn't have studied ⓓ must have studied
38. I could have spent the weekend in Alex, but I preferred my village. This means ....
ⓐ It was possible for me to spend the weekend in Alexandria.
ⓑ It is probable that I spent the weekend in my village.
ⓒ I can't have spent the weekend in my village.
ⓓ I was obliged to spend the weekend in my village.
39. She .... been lazy. She neglected all her lessons so her teacher punished her.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have
40. I am broke. I .... have been more careful about money.
ⓐ must ⓑ may ⓒ might ⓓ should
41. Rami .... in the club last night: he was busy working in his office.
ⓐ shouldn't have been ⓑ could have been
ⓒ couldn't have been ⓓ must have been
42. His health has got worse. He .... to hospital last week, but he was careless.
ⓐ should have gone ⓑ had to go ⓒ shouldn't have gone ⓓ must have gone



43. You .... safety rules to avoid the infection you got last month.
ⓐ should have followed ⓑ shouldn't have followed
ⓒ had to follow ⓓ didn't have to follow

44. She .... met Ayman in the club yesterday because he was ill.
ⓐ should have ⓑ have ⓒ could have ⓓ couldn't have

45. I travelled by train. I .... by car, but I felt tired.
ⓐ had to travel ⓑ could have traveled ⓒ might have traveled ⓓ have to travel

46. I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.
ⓐ should have stayed ⓑ could have stayed
ⓒ shouldn't have stayed ⓓ needn't stay

47. Hamid was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

48. I .... practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
ⓐ can have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

49. The car broke down again; it .... repaired well yesterday.
ⓐ can't have be ⓑ can't have ⓒ couldn't have been ⓓ mustn't have been

50. I tried hard to repair my car, but I ...., so I got a mechanic to check it.
ⓐ was able to ⓑ had to ⓒ can't ⓓ couldn't

51. You .... put your coat on the floor. Now it's dirty!
ⓐ ought to ⓑ mightn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ mustn't have

52. A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. B: He .... been more careful.
ⓐ might have ⓑ ought not to have ⓒ must have ⓓ should have

Exercises on Modal verbs

53. He .... have died of cancer, but we have no evidence. (Al Azhar 2022)
ⓐ may ⓑ must ⓒ can't ⓓ mustn't

54. I .... this car; I haven't reached an agreement yet.
ⓐ might buy ⓑ will buy ⓒ must have bought ⓓ might be bought

55. There is a chance that Baher will win the game. This means that he ...... win the game.
ⓐ must ⓑ might ⓒ can't ⓓ should

56. How do you .... to work in this heat without air conditioning?
ⓐ manage ⓑ succeed ⓒ able ⓓ capable

57. The boys .... to have made so much noise in the library.
ⓐ ought ⓑ should ⓒ ought not ⓓ must not

58. He said, "If I were you, I would study hard." - He .... me to study hard.
ⓐ denied ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ accused

59. If you give me some money, I .... to go shopping.
ⓐ can ⓑ could ⓒ will be able ⓓ will can

60. All the pupils understood the lesson yesterday, it .... difficult.
ⓐ must be ⓑ can't have been ⓒ could be ⓓ can't be

61. It wasn't necessary to buy all that food; we have enough in the fridge. You .... more.
ⓐ didn't need to buy ⓑ needn't have bought
ⓒ mustn't buy ⓓ didn't have to buy

62. When you are worried about things; it is best to concentrate on the things you .... control.
ⓐ would ⓑ might ⓒ can ⓓ have

63. A small cat had somehow .... surviving the fire.
ⓐ managed to ⓑ succeeded in ⓒ was able ⓓ could

64. When I was younger I .... stay up all night and not get tired.
ⓐ could ⓑ can ⓒ was ⓓ managed

65. In the past, women .... do certain jobs.
ⓐ can't ⓑ will ⓒ shall ⓓ couldn't

66. You .... smoke in public transport. It is forbidden.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't

67. You .... take an umbrella if you are going to Aswan. It doesn't often rain there.
ⓐ haven't to ⓑ don't need to ⓒ must ⓓ need to

68. I ....get a permit from the manager before I go out of the factory, or I won't be allowed to leave.
ⓐ should ⓑ mustn't ⓒ ought ⓓ have to

69. You mustn't park here. It is ....
ⓐ necessary ⓑ a must ⓒ forbidden ⓓ allowed

70. You needn't answer all the questions. Answer FOUR out of SIX. Needn't here expresses ....
ⓐ lack of necessity ⓑ necessity ⓒ prohibition ⓓ impossibility

71. Following rules of cleanliness is a/an .... to avoid infection.
ⓐ necessary ⓑ unnecessary ⓒ must ⓓ prohibition

72. Samya .... a taxi to the hospital; she wasted her money. I promised I would give her a lift.
ⓐ had to take ⓑ needn't take ⓒ didn't have to take ⓓ needn't have taken

73. You .... renew your passport as you're travelling to London next month.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ don't have to ⓓ needn't

74. Ali .... to take his sunglasses, because it was cloudy.
ⓐ didn't have ⓑ had ⓒ doesn't have ⓓ has

75. Did you paint the room? - No, I .... It was recently painted.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ didn't have to ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ won't have

Exercises on Structurally correct & express

76. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ Let we meet up tomorrow at 7. ⓑ Lets meet up tomorrow at 7.
ⓒ Let's meet up tomorrow at 7. ⓓ Let's meeting up tomorrow at 7.

77. We should go to the cinema tonight, "should" here expresses.............. .
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ advice ⓒ regret ⓓ permission

78. Have you considered having lunch out tonight? "Consider" can be replaced by..............
ⓐ understand ⓑ realise ⓒ think of ⓓ recognise

79. I could have travelled by car, but I travelled by train. This shows ....
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ regret
ⓒ ability in the past ⓓ possibility in the past

80. I should have studied hard last year. This expresses.............. .
ⓐ advice ⓑ suggestion ⓒ blame ⓓ regret

81. Ali should have called her yesterday. This expresses.............. .
ⓐ advice ⓑ suggestion ⓒ blame ⓓ recommendation

82. You should study hard, "should" here expresses.............. .
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ advice ⓒ regret ⓓ permission

83. Which of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ You should buy this car. It is a waste of money.
ⓑ You shouldn't to buy this car. It is a waste of money.
ⓒ You should have bought this car. It is a waste of money.
ⓓ You shouldn't have bought this car. It is a waste of money.

1 Writing Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
e-mail	الرسالة الالكترونية	formal language	اللغة الرسمية	advice	نصيحة
sender (From)	الراسل	informal language	اللغة غير الرسمية	blame	لوم
receiver=recipient(To)	المرسل إليه			regret	ندم
subject (About)	الموضوع	messaging language	لغة المراسلة	wishing	تمني
greeting / salutation	التحية	slang	اللغة العامية	possibility	الاحتمال
closing	الخاتمة	user name	الاسم قبل @ / اسم المستخدم	probability	الاحتمال
signature / sign-off	التوقيع			suggestion	الاقتراح
header	الرأس	domain name	اسم بعد @/ اسم النطاق	necessity	الضرورة
footer	التزييل			prohibition	المنع
password	الرقم السري			abbreviation	اختصار

2 Chapter four

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
my heart was set on	قلبى متعلق بـ	from now on	من الآن فصاعدا	be worth the effort	يستحق المجهود
nasty	قذر / سئ	suspect	مشتبه / يشتبه	scared	مرعوب
proof	دليل	hammer	مطرقة / يطرق	skin	جلد
household	أهل المنزل	lawyer	محامى	worth	يستحق
property	ملكية	private	خاص	upset	مستاء
benefactor	متبرع/وصى	expectations	آمال / توقعات		

3 Vocabulary for Translation

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
urgent	عاجل	growth	نمو / تطور / تكاثر	hardships	الصعاب
press	صحافة / يضغط	deterioration	تدهور	unity	وحدة
trust	ثقة / يثق	harmful to	ضار لـ	seek to	يسعى إلى
contribute to	يساهم فى	devote	يكرس	require	يتطلب
heritage	تراث	hard currency	العملة الصعبة	devices	أجهزة
sacrifice	يضحى بـ / تضحية	conference	مؤتمر	unpolluted	غير ملوث
reject	ينبذ / يشجب	support	يساند / تأييد	protect...from	يحمى من
cope with	يساير / يواكب	suffer from	يعانى من	attract	يجذب
monuments	آثار	lead to	يؤدي إلى	publish	ينشر
belonging	الانتماء	seek to	تسعى إلى	profession	مهنة
eliminate	يزيل / يتخلص من	poverty	الفقر	issue / case	قضية
advanced	متقدم	threaten	يهدد	misguidance	التضليل
create	يخلق / ينشأ	glories	أمجاد	activity	نشاط





Email — كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

الأجزاء الرئيسية لرسالة البريد الالكتروني

Sender (From line) — المرسل

* يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي أرسل الرسالة

From: Ahmed 2022@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمي (user name)

الجزء الذى يتبع @ يسمي (domain name)

Recipient (To line) — المرسل إليه

* يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص المرسل إليه الرسالة

To: Al Daifi 2022@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمي (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمي (domain name)

Subject Line — شريط الموضوع

* يكتب هنا موضوع الرسالة الإلكترونية

Subject (About): Giants' series

لابد أن يصاغ اسم الموضوع بشكل جيد وواضح ومختصر ليشجع المستلم علي فتح الرسالة.



Salutation / Greeting — التحية

* تختلف التحية باختلاف نوع الايميل فهناك:

❶ الإيميل الرسمي: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة رسمية (عمل / دراسة / شكوى / ....)

❷ الايميل الغير الرسمي: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة غير رسمية (صديق / أقارب / ....)

formal email	informal email
Dear .... ,	Hi .... ,
Dear Sir,	Hello .... ,
Dear Madam,	Hey,

Body — الموضوع

* يحتوى موضوع البريد الإلكترونى على هدف الرسالة

formal email	informal email
contractions لا تستخدم اختصارات	يمكننا استخدام مقدمة للترحيب
لا تستخدم كلمات مختصرة abbreviated words	يمكننا استخدام الاختصارات والكلمات المختصرة وصيغة الأمر
imperatives لا تستخدم صيغة الأمر	active voice يكتب في المعلوم
يكتب في صيغة المجهول passive voice	

Closing — الخاتمة

* تحتوى الخاتمة على شكر أو توديع للمرسل إليه:

formal email	informal email
Yours sincerely,	Bye,
Yours faithfully,	See you later,
Best wishes,	See you soon,
Regards,	Cheers, love,

Signature — التوقيع

يمكننا توقيع الرسائل الإلكترونية الغير رسمية باسم المرسل، لكن رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية أو التجارية بها أقسام توقيع تتضمن شركة المرسل

Exercises on Writing

1. A / An .... is a digital message.
   ⓐ paragraph ⓑ letter ⓒ essay ⓓ email
2. "From: Ahmed 2020 @yahoo.com" This email account refers to ....
   ⓐ recipient ⓑ receiver ⓒ addressee ⓓ sender
3. "To: Ali 2021@yahoo.com" This email account refers to ....
   ⓐ recipient ⓑ transmitter ⓒ address line ⓓ sender
4. "About: good news" This field refers to ....
   ⓐ subject ⓑ receiver ⓒ addressee ⓓ sender
5. "To: Ali 2021@yahoo" Ali 2021 is called ....
   ⓐ title ⓑ domain name ⓒ nick name ⓓ user name
6. In an informal email, you CAN'T conclude it with .... ".
   ⓐ Bye ⓑ Yours sincerely ⓒ See you later ⓓ See you soon
7. In an e-mail, the.............. line is where you type what the e-mail is about.
   ⓐ to ⓑ subject ⓒ attachment ⓓ from
8. One can close an informal email with ".............. " .
   ⓐ Bye ⓑ Yours sincerely ⓒ Yours faithfully ⓓ Best wishes
9. In an informal email, you can conclude with ....
   ⓐ Bye ⓑ See you later ⓒ Yours sincerely ⓓ a & b
10. Messaging language doesn't require .... rules of writing.
    ⓐ formal ⓑ informal ⓒ former ⓓ comfortable
11. In a formal email, you can conclude with ....
    ⓐ See you soon ⓑ See you later ⓒ Yours sincerely ⓓ Bye
12. A header is part of an email that contains the address of the.............. .
    ⓐ article ⓑ sender ⓒ recipient ⓓ b & c
13. When writing a formal email, which of the following greetings wouldn't be acceptable?
    ⓐ To whom it may concern ⓑ Dear Sir
    ⓒ Hi ⓓ Dear Madame
14. What goes into the "To" line?
    ⓐ The name of the person that sends the email
    ⓑ The email address of the person that you are writing to.
    ⓒ Your name. ⓓ Your email address.
15. If you close your email with "Yours sincerely", you must have opened it with ....
    ⓐ Dear Mr., ⓑ Dear Mum, ⓒ Dear Hazem, ⓓ Hi
16. If you open your email with "Dear Sir/Madam, you should close it by using ....
    ⓐ Take care ⓑ Bye ⓒ See you soon ⓓ Respectfully
17. In the "Subject" line of an email, we write ....
    ⓐ who will receive the email ⓑ why we send the email
    ⓒ who will read the email ⓓ who will send the email
18. In informal emails, it's NOT necessary to ....
    ⓐ write your signature ⓑ write the recipient's email address
    ⓒ use correct grammar and punctuation ⓓ close your email
19. If you want to congratulate a close friend on his birthday online, you send a/an ....
    ⓐ formal essay ⓑ informal email
    ⓒ formal email ⓓ informal paragraph



Exercises on Translation

1. Development of industry and agriculture is our only hope for increasing the national income and raising the standard of living for all members of the society.

(أ) تنمية الصناعة و الثقافة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(ب) تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(ج) تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل الدولى ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(د) تنقية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

2. Civilized societies make great efforts to overcome the problem of illiteracy to push the wheel of development, progress and stability.

(أ) المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.

(ب) المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة التعليم لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.

(ج) المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لسحب عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.

(د) المجتمعات المتحجرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.

3. You should define your goal yourself, and not be distracted by anything else. Also, don't waste your effort in useless things.

(أ) عليك أن تحرز هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا، لا تضيع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

(ب) عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، و تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا، لا تضيع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

(ج) عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا، لا تسرف مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

(د) عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا، لا تضيع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

٤. عندما تعطى شخصاً تعليماً جيدًا ، فأنت تساعده أيضًا على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطناً صالحاً .

ⓐ When you give a person well education, you also help him to think and create to be a good citizen.

ⓑ When you give a person good education, you also help him thinking and create to be a good citizen.

ⓒ When you give a person good education, you also help him to think and create to be a good citizen.

ⓓ When you give a person good education, you also help him to think and create for be a good citizen.

٥. تحتاج كل الكائنات وخاصة الإنسان إلى التعاون فيما بينها لتحقيق ما تريد والوصول إلى الأمان والاستقرار.

ⓐ All creatures needs to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach safety and stability.

ⓑ All creatures need to cooperate with each another to achieve what they want and to reach safe and stability.

ⓒ All creatures need to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach safety and stability.

ⓓ All creatures need to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach to safe and stability.

٦. عندما يتمتع الناس بالحرية، يمكنهم تحقيق التقدم فى جميع المجالات. ومع ذلك ، فإن الحرية ليست مطلقة.

ⓐ When people have free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.

ⓑ When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.

ⓒ When people are free, they can do progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolutely.

ⓓ When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.

property	أملاك / ملكية	a building that belongs to you
from now on	من الآن فصاعدا	an action that starts from this moment and continues into the future
benefactor	متبرع/وصى	a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life
expectations	آمال / تطلعات	feelings that good things will happen
proof	دليل	an object or some information that shows something is true
my heart was set on	مصمم/يريد بشدة	when you really want something or want to do something
be worth the effort	يستحق المجهود	something that is useful or good but difficult to do
household	أهل المنزل	all the people who live together in one house

1. .... means all the people who live together in one house.
   ⓐ Benefactor ⓑ Proof ⓒ Household ⓓ Property
2. .... is an action that starts from this moment and continues into the future.
   ⓐ Be worth the effort ⓑ Household ⓒ From now on ⓓ Gloomy
3. When you really want something or want to do something you say............... .
   ⓐ my heart was set on ⓑ is worth the effort ⓒ from now on ⓓ gloomy
4. A/An............... is an object or some information that shows something is true.
   ⓐ benefactor ⓑ household ⓒ property ⓓ proof
5. .... means feelings that good things will happen.
   ⓐ Expectations ⓑ Household ⓒ Proof ⓓ Property
6. A person who gives someone money to help them improve their life is a/an ....
   ⓐ property ⓑ benefactor ⓒ expectation ⓓ proof
7. A building that belongs to you is a/an ....
   ⓐ property ⓑ household ⓒ benefactor ⓓ proof
8. Something that is useful or good but difficult to do is ....
   ⓐ my heart was set on ⓑ worth the effort ⓒ from now on ⓓ household
9. From now .... recipients will get their fellowships on time.
   ⓐ of ⓑ then ⓒ on ⓓ off
10. She's got her heart .... on ballet lessons.
    ⓐ set ⓑ sit ⓒ sat ⓓ fit
11. She was .... that he had left without saying goodbye.
    ⓐ annoying ⓑ upset ⓒ interesting ⓓ confusing
12. I have a suspicion that he's guilty, though I don't have any definite ....
    ⓐ proof ⓑ prove ⓒ evident ⓓ approve
13. Don't buy that coat-it looks cheap and ....
    ⓐ nice ⓑ smart ⓒ nasty ⓓ wealthy
14. The new computer system has already proved its ....
    ⓐ worse ⓑ worthwhile ⓒ worth ⓓ worst
15. Millions were spent on .... in a courtroom showdown between the two companies.
    ⓐ policemen ⓑ lawyers ⓒ jury ⓓ employers
16. The car has been the company's most visible success story, with sales far exceeding ....
    ⓐ acceptations ⓑ contradiction ⓒ expectations ⓓ exceptions
17. That' your lot! You .... more money.
    ⓐ will have ⓑ can have ⓒ didn't have ⓓ won't have

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She could hardly finish the task on time, ... ?
   ⓐ could she ⓑ couldn't she ⓒ she could ⓓ she couldn't
2. Don't worry. The problem will solve ....
   ⓐ yourself ⓑ myself ⓒ itself ⓓ themselves
3. Nobody has ever seen .... unicorn because they don't exist.
   ⓐ an ⓑ a ⓒ the ⓓ no article
4. I think everyone is getting ready for the wedding party, ... ?
   ⓐ isn't she ⓑ aren't they ⓒ isn't he ⓓ don't I
5. Although the UK was part of the European Union, they did not use .... euro.
   ⓐ an ⓑ a ⓒ the ⓓ no article
6. If you are struggling with motivation, set .... some goals.
   ⓐ yourself ⓑ myself ⓒ themselves ⓓ himself
7. He's given a tour round historic places, ... ?
   ⓐ hasn't he ⓑ isn't he ⓒ does he ⓓ he isn't
8. The guide told .... that the museum was about to close.
   ⓐ we ⓑ your ⓒ she ⓓ us
9. The students were ashamed of ....
   ⓐ themselves ⓑ ourselves ⓒ yourselves ⓓ itself
10. All enquiries should .... to our customer services team.
    ⓐ send ⓑ to be sent ⓒ be sent ⓓ been sent
11. Do you have .... time available today to talk about the project?
    ⓐ little ⓑ a few ⓒ many ⓓ any
12. The flight attendant asked .... to turn his phone off.
    ⓐ his ⓑ him ⓒ he's ⓓ he
13. Look over there .... strange man is back again.
    ⓐ That ⓑ Those ⓒ This ⓓ These
14. Do you want me to .... it easier for you?
    ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ try ⓓ take
15. .... I was trying to say that I was a mistaken.
    ⓐ All ⓑ Everything ⓒ Nothing ⓓ Something
16. She's always late. .... ?
    ⓐ is it ⓑ isn't she ⓒ isn't it ⓓ was she
17. I like pencils .... than pens.
    ⓐ more good ⓑ the best ⓒ better ⓓ more
18. My mother is the one .... looks after her children.
    ⓐ whom ⓑ which ⓒ whose ⓓ who
19. No one had a clue what had happened neither the police .... the public.
    ⓐ nor ⓑ either ⓒ or ⓓ never
20. You could organise .... activities for children in their school holidays.
    ⓐ sports ⓑ sporty ⓒ sporting ⓓ spot
21. It is a .... short poem.
    ⓐ quiet ⓑ quit ⓒ quite ⓓ quietly
22. How long .... was he appointed as a diplomat?
    ⓐ ago ⓑ since ⓒ for ⓓ when
23. He had to carry .... working until late last night.
    ⓐ out ⓑ away ⓒ down ⓓ on

Ⓐ Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother had a strong .... on my early childhood.
   ⓐ influential ⓑ influence ⓒ affect ⓓ efficient
2. Don't make any decisions before you've .... the situation.
   ⓐ scolded ⓑ considered ⓒ stretched ⓓ released
3. The workers were left to deal with thousands of depressed and .... passengers.
   ⓐ frustrated ⓑ frustration ⓒ mental ⓓ pleased
4. To .... is to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy.
   ⓐ cope ⓑ pour ⓒ pout ⓓ alter
5. The teacher .... at me, annoyed, and drew her red pen firmly across the page.
   ⓐ scolded ⓑ smiled ⓒ laughed ⓓ frowned
6. The doctor suggested that I might like to see a .... to help me deal with stress better.
   ⓐ lawyer ⓑ chemist ⓒ counsellor ⓓ manager
7. .... is the ability to become strong and successful again after a difficult situation or incident.
   ⓐ Resilience ⓑ Confidence ⓒ Depression ⓓ Self-management
8. .... is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
   ⓐ Self-care ⓑ Stress ⓒ Well-being ⓓ Mental health
9. Have you thought about .... more exercise?
   ⓐ taking ⓑ take ⓒ to taking ⓓ to take
10. Have you considered .... to music before going to bed?
    ⓐ to listen ⓑ listens ⓒ listening ⓓ listen
11. Why.............. some snacks with you, so you aren't so hungry?
    ⓐ you don't take ⓑ you don't taking ⓒ don't you taking ⓓ don't you take
12. Kamal .... helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
    ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have been
13. We..............meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish.
    ⓐ shouldn't have bought ⓑ could have bought
    ⓒ needn't buy ⓓ couldn't have bought
14. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you .... spent so much money on me.
    ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have
15. I .... gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.
    ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have
16. I am unable to take photos now. I wish I .... my mobile phone at home.
    ⓐ won't forget ⓑ hadn't forgotten ⓒ haven't forgotten ⓓ didn't forget
17. Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
    ⓐ Amani said "What a wonderful surprise. It's nice to see you here, Adel."
    ⓑ Amani said, "what a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel.
    ⓒ Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel."
    ⓓ Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise It s nice to see you here, Adel.
18. Which of the following sentences shows suggestion?
    ⓐ You shouldn't spend the weekend with us.
    ⓑ You should have spent the weekend with us.
    ⓒ Why didn't you spend the weekend with us?
    ⓓ Why don't you spend the weekend with us?

19. In an informal email, you can conclude with ....

ⓐ Bye ⓑ See you later ⓒ Yours sincerely ⓓ a & b

20. One of the following sentences can't be used when you end an essay on the merits of the internet: ....

ⓐ To sum up, the internet is one of the most useful inventions.

ⓑ In my opinion, the internet has a lot of disadvantages in case we use it badly.

ⓒ In my view, the internet is very useful to all of us

ⓓ In conclusion, the internet has made the world a small village

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For two months, I have been trying to decide who makes the ice cream. I have narrowed down to my four favorite manufactures Randolph farms, Goodies, DISCO and Twinkle. Randolph farms make very good ice cream with all natural ingredients. They have lots of different flavors. I always get coffee flavor. They make the best coffee ice cream in the world. I've never had hot coffee but people say their coffee ice cream tastes just like the real thing.

Goodies make excellent ice cream. Like Randolph farms, Goodies use all natural ingredients. They only make three different flavors, strawberry, vanilla, and chocolate. The strawberry is amazing. The vanilla is wonderful. It is very smooth and has a refreshing, creamy taste. The chocolate is outstanding. It is made with real cocoa beans from Bolivia. So, I decided to look for it on a map. After hunting a while, I discovered that it is on South America. That's a long way to go to get cocoa, so it must be good, I would say that the only drawback to Goodies ice cream is that they only make three different flavors.

Disco ice cream is okay. They don't have many good flavors. Actually, the only Disco flavor I like is Bubblegum. It is vanilla ice cream with little chunks of bubblegum in it. After you eat the ice cream, you can blow bubbles with the gum. That's pretty fun. Twinkle ice cream is mediocre. The only good thing about Twinkle is that it is relatively inexpensive. You can buy a whole carton of twinkle ice cream for LE 50. That's only two weeks allowance for me.

21. If the author wanted to get scoop of coffee ice cream, where would he or she probably go? To.................. .

ⓐ Goodies ⓑ Disco ⓒ Twinkle ⓓ Randolph farms

22. If you were concerned about Goodies, which of the following would make you prefer them?

ⓐ costs ⓑ flavors ⓒ long distances ⓓ good services

23. If a big number of customers care for the price, which manufacture will increase the profit?

ⓐ Twinkle ⓑ Disco ⓒ Goodies ⓓ Randolph

24. The author writes. "That's a long way to get cocoa, so it must be good." Using this information, we can understand that the author believes that................. .

ⓐ Bolivia makes the best cocoa in the world

ⓑ Goodies loses money sales of chocolate ice cream

ⓒ things that are hard to get must be of high quality

ⓓ Cocoa from the United States is not very good

25. According to the passage, if Goodies make more flavors, they will sell................. ice cream.

ⓐ less ⓑ more ⓒ little ⓓ no

26. According to the passage, what is the only drawback of Goodies ice cream?

ⓐ cheap ingredients ⓑ expensive price

ⓒ mediocre quality ⓓ lack of flavors

27. According to the passage, how is Randolph Farms ice cream different from Goodies?
ⓐ Randolph Farms has many different flavors but Goodies doesn't
ⓑ Randolph Farms uses all natural ingredients hut Goodies doesn't
ⓒ Randolph Farms is very expensive but Goodies doesn't
ⓓ Goodies brings cocoa from the United States

28. Which of the following would be the suitable title for the passage?
ⓐ Strawberry, vanilla, chocolate and bubblegum too!
ⓑ The four top ice cream manufacturers in the world
ⓒ The finest ice cream in the world
ⓓ Picking the best ice cream manufacturer

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people have jobs that are not very interesting, but a lot of people have to work at night, and this is very difficult. When everybody else is getting ready to go out, they have to go to work, and this puts a lot of psychological stress on them. It is also not very healthy because the human body is designed to be active in the day and to rest in the dark. If this cycle is reversed it can have a bad effect on a person's health. So, why do people do night shift? Nowadays many business have to offer a 24 hour service, like hotels, delivery companies, some supermarkets open all night and all day, call centres and hospitals. It is true that some people only need a few hours sleep at night but the majority need eight hours. Humans are most active in the middle of the day, and the time when they are least able to concentrate and be efficient is between 2am and 4 am. This is the worst time to drive, or to do anything that needs concentration. The body finds it very difficult to adapt to the opposite cycle. Things are not likely to get better in the future because more and more business are working 24 hour cycles to keep in step with our 24 hour society.

29. The main idea of this passage is about ....
ⓐ giving an advice about working late.
ⓑ helping people change their way of life.
ⓒ describing the importance of work.
ⓓ how working at night can be harmful.

30. The writer's opinion about night shifts is that ....
ⓐ it is easier than working during the day.
ⓑ there is a variety of them.
ⓒ you get better working conditions.
ⓓ many people refuse to work at night.

31. According to the passage, we know that ....
ⓐ it's difficult to change your sleeping needs.
ⓑ people tend to sleep only between 2 am and 4 am.
ⓒ people sleep better in the early morning.
ⓓ everybody needs the same amount of sleep.

32. About the future, the writer mentioned that ....
ⓐ fewer people will work during the day.
ⓑ some jobs will always be done at night.
ⓒ nobody will work at night.
ⓓ many people will stop working during the day.

33. The best title of the passage is ".................. ".
ⓐ 24 hours sleep cycles!
ⓑ Society is changing but our bodies are not!
ⓒ A good night's sleep can change your life!
ⓓ A worker that sleeps more, works more!

34. The underlined word "reversed" can be replaced with ....
ⓐ balanced ⓑ different ⓒ overturned ⓓ opposed

35. The writer thinks that the majority of people need .... hours of sleep
ⓐ 8 ⓑ 24 ⓒ 16 ⓓ 2

36. People who have to work night shifts struggle with ....

ⓐ the quality of sleep
ⓑ more sleeping time
ⓒ emotional stress
ⓓ psychological stress



Translation

٣٧. قد تجعل التكنولوجيا الشباب أقل نشاطاً من الناحية البدنية. وقد يتسبب الضوء الذى يأتى من الأجهزة الرقمية فى مشاكل صحية.

ⓐ Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
ⓑ Technology may make young people physical less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
ⓒ Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that come from digital devices may cause health problems.
ⓓ Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause healthy problems.

٣٨. عندما تعطى وعداً لشخص فلا يجب أن تخلفه ولا تخاف أن تقول الحقيقة.

ⓐ When you do a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.
ⓑ When you make a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.
ⓒ When you make a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be frighten to tell the truth.
ⓓ When you make a promise to someone, you should break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.

39. Social networking sites are among the most remarkable achievements of the modern technology, but they have some serious drawbacks that must be avoided.

(أ) تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، حيث لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.
(ب) تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي ممكن تجنبها.
(ج) تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الجادة التي يجب تجنبها.
(د) تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة، لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.

40. Smoking is a bad habit that destroys health, so smoking is not allowed in public places, where smokers cause harm to themselves and others.

(أ) التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة حيث يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالآخرين.
(ب) التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالآخرين.
(ج) التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم فقط.
(د) التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن الخاصة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالآخرين.



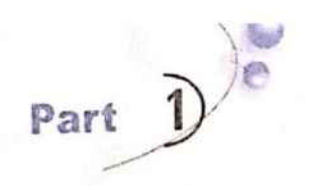
سلسلة العمالقة

English	Arabic
native	محلى / من السكان الأصليين
maintain	يحافظ على
frequently	في كثير من الأحيان
attitude	سلوك / موقف
sufferer	المصاب بـ
excessive	مفرط / متطرف / متهور
prolonged	طويل / مديد
inheritance	ميراث
evacuate	إخلاء
loans	قروض
elect	ينتخب / يختار
deserve	يستحق
lung cancer	سرطان الرئة
inspector	مفتش
exceed	يتجاوز / يتخطى
neglect	يهمل / يتجاهل
punish	يعاقب
agreement	موافقة / اتفاق
survive	ينجو
public transport	النقل العام
permit	يسمح
national income	الدخل القومى
standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
citizen	مواطن
wheel	عجلة
development	تطوير
progress	تقدم
stability	استقرار
distract	يلهى / يصرف الانتباه
cooperate	يتعاون
freedom	حرية
politician	سياسي

English	Arabic
civilized	متحضر
overcome	يتغلب على
illiteracy	الأمية
public	عام
habit	عادة
harm	يضر
gathering	تجمع
data	بيانات
obtain	يحصل على
purpose	غرض
consequently	و بالتالى
movement	حركة
investigate	يتحرى
massive	ضخم
finance	يمول
employment	توظيف
education	تعليم
optimism	تفاؤل
creation	خلق
exist	يوجد
access	وصول
codes	شفرات
proportion	نسبة
conventional	تقليدى
entrepreneur	رائد أعمال
possibilities	احتمالات
jewellery	مجوهرات
independently	بشكل مستقل
develop	يطور
financial	مالى
social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي

كلمات القطع

English	Arabic
down	يقلل / يضيق
manufacture	صانع
ingredients	مقادير
flavor	نكهة
strawberry	فراولة
smooth	ناعم
refreshing	منعش
outstanding	رائع / مذهل
drawbacks	عيوب
actually	فى الواقع
chunks	قطع
attractive	جذاب
disappointed	محبط
unthinkable	غير مقبول
courage	شجاعة
intelligent	ذكى
attempt	محاولة
lifelong	مدى الحياة
participate	يشارك
ongoing	مستمر
specific	محدد
qualifications	مؤهلات
achievement	انجاز
foreign	أجنبى
content	محتوى
practical	عملى
income	دخل
miser	بخيل / شحيح / تعيس
suicide	انتحار
humanity	البشرية
enemy	عدو





Unit 5 The future of work

1 Key Vocabulary

switch (turn) .... on	يشغل	keep up (with)	يجارى	mute (adj)(v)	يكتم الصوت / صامت
switch(turn)... off	يطفئ	plug in	يركب / يوصل	virtual meeting (n)	اجتماع افتراضي
turn ... up	يرفع / يزيد(صوت)	share (n)(v)	يشارك / مشاركة / نصيب	join (v)	ينضم الي
turn .... down	يخفض	share a screen	يشارك شاشة	position (n)	وظيفة
catch up (with)	يلحق / يساير	trend (n)	اتجاه / موضة / شئ جديد	delay (n)(v)	تأخير / يؤخر
look into	يفحص / يحقق في / يتحقق من	install (v)	يثبت / يركب/ ينصب	decline (n)(v)	نقص / يتناقص / يرفض

2 Main Vocabulary

apply (v)	يتقدم بطلب / يطبق	colleague (n)(v)	زميل	interpersonal (adj)	شخصي / بشرى
application (n)	طلب انضمام / تطبيق	debate (n)	مناظرة / نقاش	independently (adv)	بشكل مستقل
advent (n)	مجيء / قدوم	consequences (n)	توابع / نتائج	destroy (v)	يدمر
clarification (n)	توضيح	instant (adj)	فوري / لحظي	contact (n)(v)	يتصل بـ / اتصال
logical (adj)	منطقي	connection (n)	اتصال	ancestors (n)	أجداد / أسلاف
plus (conj)	بالاضافة الى ذلك	schedule (n)(v)	جدول / يجدول	check (v)	يتحقق من
interviewee (n)	ضيف الحوار	emerge (v)	يظهر	technical (adj)	تقنى / فنى
interviewer (n)	المحاور	forum (n)	منتدي	communicate (v)	يتواصل
user-friendly (adj)	سهل الاستخدام	suit (n)(v)	يناسب / يلائم / بدلة	document (n)	وثيقة / مستند
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	respond (n)(v)	يستجيب / استجابة	decrease (v)	يقلل
version (n)	إصدار / نسخة	substitute (n)(v)	يستبدل / بديل	software (n)	برامج
conclude (v)	يختتم / يستنتج	replace (v)	يستبدل	employee (n)	موظف
definitely (adv)	بالتاكيد	risk (n)(v)	يخاطر بـ / مخاطرة	adapt (v)	يتكيف / يتأقلم
prediction (n)	تنبؤ / نبوءة	repetitive (adj)	متكرر	solution (n)	حل

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

information technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	turn the sound up	يعلي الصوت
look into possibilities	يبحث عن امكانية	turn the sound down	يخفض الصوت
join virtual meeting	ينضم إلي اجتماع افتراضي	give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن
leave virtual meeting	يغادر اجتماع افتراضي	carry on	يستمر
have a virtual meeting	يجرى مقابلة افتراضية	deal with	يتعامل مع
stay (keep) in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع	apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ
mute the microphone	يكتم الميكروفون	video conference call	مكالمة فيديو جماعية
instant messaging	رسائل سريعة	the latest version of	أحدث نسخة من
IT support worker	عامل دعم تكنولوجيا المعلومات	student welfare officer	مسئول رعاية الطلاب
interpersonal skill	مهارة التعامل مع الآخرين	labour market	سوق العمل

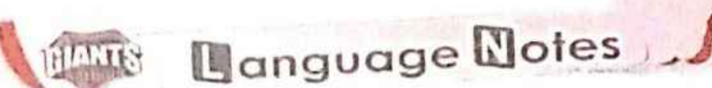
GIANTS

4 Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
install	يثبت / يركب/ ينصب	to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used
join	يلتحق	to become a member of a meeting or an organisation
software	برامج	the sets of programs that tell a computer how to do a particular job
virtual	افتراضى	made on the internet or on a computer, rather than in the real world
mute	يكتم الصوت / صامت	to make a sound of something quieter or softer
share	يشارك	to give some of what you have to somebody else
trend	اتجاه / موضة	a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing
welfare officer	ضابط السعادة	a person who is in a position of authority in a large organisation
look into	يفحص / يدقق	to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc. in order to solve it
technique	تقنية / أسلوب	a particular way of doing something (in which you have to learn special skills)
catch up with	يلحق / يساير	to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group
artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعى	the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as think and make decisions
switch... off	يوقف/يطفئ	to turn off a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch
switch... on	يشغل	to turn on a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch
turn... down	يخفض (الصوت/الحرارة ...)	to turn the switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound etc
turn... up	يرفع (الصوت / الحرارة ...)	to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
switch ... on	يشغل	turn .... on	turn .... off
install	يثبت / يركب	fix - put - set up - position	remove - uninstall
decline	يقل / انخفاض	descent - reduction - decrease	rise - increase
join	ينضم الي	enroll - enter	leave - avoid - withdraw
look into	يتحقق من / يحقق في	investigate - explore - check	ignore - overlook
instant	سريع	urgent - immediate - quick	late - gradual - unimportant
welfare	سعادة	interest - health - (well-being)	depression - suffering
delay	يؤخر / تاخير	pause - holdback - gap	speed - quickness



7 Notice the Difference

college	كلية	colleague	زميل عمل
install	يثبت / يركب / ينصب	instant	سريع
message	رسالة / درس مستفاد	massage	تدليك
suit	يلائم / يناسب / بدلة	suitable	مناسب / ملائم
realise	يدرك / يفهم	recognise	يتعرف علي (شكل...)
employee	موظف	employer	صاحب العمل
include (including)	يشمل / يتضمن (مشتملة على)	contain	يحتوي على
by accident	بالصدفة / دون قصد	on purpose	عن قصد / متعمداً
interviewee	ضيف الحوار	interviewer	المحاور
software	برامج	hardware	أجزاء الحاسوب

install & fix

install	يثبت (برنامج / تطبيق)	I could **install** a new version.
install	يركب	We had our new washing machine **installed.**
install	ينصب / يضع	He was **installed** as President yesterday,
fix	يصلح	If you have a fuel leak, try to **fix** it as soon as possible.
fix	يثبت شئ في موضعه	The bookcase can be **fixed** directly to the wall.

contact, communicate & connect

contact (v)	يتصل (تليفونياً ....)	I will **contact** you later.
contact with (n)	اتصال (تليفونياً ....)	She refuses to **have** any **contact with** her friend.
communicate with	يتواصل مع	I **communicate** with my friends on the internet.
connect with	يتصل بـ	Can you connect me **with** / **to** a number in Paris?
connect to	يوصل / يربط (شيء / بسلك)	Can I **connect** my printer to your computer?

take + وقت + to + مصدر / spend + وقت + ing

spend + وقت + with + شخص / spend + نقود + on

- I **spent** three hours **playing** football.
- It **took** me ten hours **to reach** Alex.
- Do you know how much your family **spends** annually **on** holidays?

* حروف الجر مع الفعل التالى:



- **apply for.** يتقدم بطلب (للحصول علي وظيفة / تأشيرة / جنسية / مكان في الجامعة ، .....).
- **apply in person** يتقدم بالطلب شخصيا
- **apply in writing** يقدم الطلب كتابة
- **apply to + inf.** يتقدم بطلب لكي
- **apply to + n** ينطبق علي



Reading

Conversation between a student called Carla and an IT support worker at her school.

Carla: Hi, can you help us?

IT Support: Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?

Carla: Sure. We wanted to have a **virtual meeting**[1] with a group of students in Egypt for a project. We **installed**[2] the **software**[3] for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone **joined**[4] the meeting. We **turned** our microphones **on** and **switched** our cameras **on**. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

IT Support: OK and what happened then?

Carla: Then, I **shared** my **screen**[5] and everything stopped working.

IT Support: So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either?

Carla: That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped **responding**[6]. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We **turned** our sound **up**, but it seems that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document I wanted to show them now.

IT Support: Did you **mute**[7] your microphone?

Carla: No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.

IT Support: Did you **check**[8] your **internet connection**[9]?

Carla: Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.

IT Support: That's strange. Are you **definitely**[10] still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise it?

Carla: I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting **by accident**[11]! Sorry.

IT Support: Don't worry. It happens. Maybe you can **look into**[12] other ways of **staying in touch with**[13] the students during your meetings if there are **technical**[14] problems, like email or **instant messaging**[15].

Carla: Yeah, good idea. **Thanks for** your help. I'll go and email the students.

1) مقابلة افتراضية
2) يثبت / ينصب
3) برامج
4) يلتحق / ينضم الى
5) شاشة
6) يستجيب
7) يكتم الصوت
8) يتحقق من / يفحص
9) الاتصال بالإنترنت
10) بالتأكيد/قطعا
11) بالصدفة
12) يفحص/يحقق في
13) يبقى على اتصال مع
14) تقنى / فنى
15) رسائل فورية

IT Support Forum

Nevine: I've bought some new **headphones** and have **plugged** them in but now I can't mute my microphone and everyone can hear me all the time.

Hana: I'm having problems with a **video conference** call I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I have just **downloaded** and installed the latest **version** of the software but nothing is happening. I have tried switching off the computer and turning it on again. Any other ideas?

Mazin: I need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, bu I don't know how to **share** my screen.

Ziad: There is a long delay when I'm playing games online and I can never **keep u** **with** my friends. I always lose the races in the games. Do I need to look int getting a better internet connection?

Malak: When I join a meeting online I can't turn on my camera. So people can hea me, but they can't see me?

Read this letter for a job application

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to **apply for**[1] the **position**[2] of **student welfare officer**[3]. I believe that I am **suited to**[4] the role because I enjoy helping people feel more positive at school. I have learnt to **deal with**[5] **stressful situations**[6] I like to use my weekends and evenings to help other students I always **appear**[7] be calm which helps the person I am speaking to. I am very excited by this **role**[8] and I hope you decide to offer me the position. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Mariam

1) يتقدم بطلب
2) وظيفة
3) مسؤول رعاية الطلاب
4) مناسب لـ
5) يتعامل مع
6) المواقف العصيبة
7) يظهر
8) دور

Listening

Part of a podcast about the future of work.

Salma: Hello and welcome to my **podcast**[1] where we look at the world of work and the future. I'm joined now by Mina Mahmoud who looks at future **trends**[2] in the workplace. Welcome Mina.

Mina: Thank you, Salma.

Salma: So, what do you think is the most important future trend in work we need to know about?

Mina: I'd say the biggest change will be that companies will stop seeing work as something everyone does in the same place and at the same time. A lot of employees were already working from home in 2020 and 2021. **Employees**[3] will **carry on with**[4] this and even more workers will join them. The research shows that home workers are very **efficient**[5] and working from home is good for the environment. We also know that employees are more **motivated**[6] if they decide their own **schedule**[7].

Salma: Does this mean that employees will have more control over other areas of their **working lives**[8]? Will more people start working on their own rather than in teams?

Mina: Yes. More companies who are already expecting their employees to work **independently**[9] will continue doing this and others will soon catch up. Giving employees more **responsibility**[10] encourages them to work harder. They enjoy **making** more **decisions**[11] on their own and deciding how they work.

Salma: Do you think that employees will use **technology** to help them work more **efficiently**[12]?

Mina: I think we'll definitely stop **sending emails**[13] in the next ten or twenty years and use other ways of communicating.

Salma: Why?

Mina: The research suggests people think **virtual meetings**[14] are a more effective way of solving problems and **brainstorming**[15] ideas than sending and reading emails. So, these ways of communicating are likely to become more popular and emails will become less popular.

Salma: That seems to be **logical**[16]; I'll definitely remember to invite our team to a **virtual** meeting instead of sending them a hundred emails from now on!

1) بث إذاعي
2) توجه / موضة
3) عمال
4) يستمر في
5) كفء
6) متحمس / متشجع
7) جدول زمني
8) حياة العمل
9) بشكل مستقل
10) مسؤولية
11) قرارات
12) بكفاءة
13) ارسال الرسائل
14) مقابلات افتراضية
15) العصف الذهني
16) معقول

A radio current affairs programme.

Presenter Welcome to "The Working World" where we are discussing the future of the labour market[1]. Our guests today are Thomas Edwards and Omar Hamed.

Guests Thank you

Presenter Let's start with you, Omar. You have been studying the trends in the workplace for many years now. What do you want to tell young people about the future of work?

Omar Well, after analyzing current job offers and interviewing business owners, We concluded that Artificial Intelligence[2] will have a significant impact[3] on the type of jobs in the future.

Presenter Now, Thomas, I think you feel quite strongly about Artificial Intelligence.

Thomas Yes, I do. Artificial Intelligence, or "AI" as we call it, promises to destroy jobs. One study found that 82% of areas in Europe and North America experienced a decrease in jobs as a result of using AI.

Omar Yes, but although this study appeared to show a decline[4] in jobs, it failed to tell us there was an increase of 60% in jobs in areas where AI could not be used. Plus[5] an earlier study tells us that only 5% of jobs can be completely substituted[6] by machines.

Presenter So, what jobs will be less affected by AI?

Omar It is clear that jobs that need to use interpersonal[7] skills are a lot safer from being substituted by AI.

Presenter You both seem to be suggesting that the job market appears to be changing. Should we risk[8] using AI if it is going to cause[9] so many problems?

Thomas Change has always happened and always will. Most of our ancestors[10] used to work in agriculture but machines reduced the demand[11] for farmers but increased the need for computer programmers.

Presenter What new jobs are expected to be common[12] in the future?

Omar Well, teaching jobs appear to be an area that will be less affected by AI and technology in general, as well as jobs in medicine, so nurses and doctors.

Presenter Nurses and doctors? Why is that?

Thomas Well, the population of the world is getting older and as more people live longer, they will need more health care[13].

Presenter Ah. That makes sense! What impact would this have?

Omar Well, it is expected that by 2030, an average of 600 million people worldwide will have to change careers or learn new skills.

Presenter Interesting. And what are some of these new skills, Thomas?

Thomas They need to learn about new technology and speak different languages. With the internet we are working much more globally[14] now and we need to speak to people all over the world. I would consider studying English to a very high level and perhaps another language too.

Presenter OK, we're almost out of time. Can you give our listeners one last piece of advice[15], Omar?

1. سوق العمل
2. الذكاء الاصطناعي
3. له تأثير ملحوظ
4. انخفاض / هبوط
5. بالإضافة لذلك
6. يستبدل
7. شخصي
8. خطر / مخاطرة
9. يسبب
10. أسلاف / أجداد
11. الطلب
12. شائع
13. الرعاية الصحية
14. عالميا
15. نصيحة
16. يتخلى عن
17. التكيف
18. عالم العمل

Omar First of all, my advice would be not to worry. If you are at school now, do not **give up**(16) the idea of your dream job. But remember you may need to learn a few new things to do that job in the future.

Presenter Thank you. And how about you, Thomas?

Thomas Although I don't often agree with Omar, I do on this point. **Adapting**(17) is the key and you have to continue learning new things. This is more important now than ever.

Presenter Well, thank you both very much for sharing your advice and giving us all a better idea of the **world of work**(18) in the future.





For **decades**(1) now, there has been a fear that humans will be replaced by robots in the workplace. But is this something we really need to worry about? The trend over the last few decades has been for **repetitive**(2), predictable work to be replaced by technology. A **typical**(3) example of this is supermarket check-out assistants. Supermarket workers are increasingly being replaced by self-service **check-outs**(4). Most supermarkets do still have more traditional check-outs with a human assistant as well. But the job of supermarket check-out assistant could soon completely disappear.

Developments(5) in technology don't always mean that humans lose jobs though – they can create jobs, too. Let's look at two examples.

The internet gives us access to an enormous amount of information, but we still need humans to check how reliable this **data**(6) is and **analyse**(7) it. That's what a data scientist does. The internet has also given rise to a wide range of online learning courses. To be **effective**(8), these courses need to be designed in a user-friendly way. This is where a user-experience designer is needed. These jobs didn't exist before the advent of the internet, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs **emerge**(9) in the next few decades.

So, it seems that there are two sides to the **debate**(10) and the question **remains**(11): will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs **simply**(12) change?

1. عقود
2. متكرر
3. مثالي / نموذجي
4. محصل
5. تطورات
6. بيانات
7. يحلل
8. فعال / مؤثر
9. يظهر / ينبثق
10. نقاش / مناظرة
11. يبقى
12. ببساطة

Exercises on Key Vocabulary & Definitions

1. Due to the disadvantages of fossil fuel, we should .... the possibilities of wind-generated electricity.
   ⓐ look into ⓑ apply for ⓒ turn up ⓓ switch on
2. His decision to quit smoking seems very ....
   ⓐ logical ⓑ frightened ⓒ progress ⓓ imagined
3. When I got my DNA test results, I learned that my .... came from Russia!
   ⓐ ancestors ⓑ spark ⓒ handle ⓓ pride

4. The ICT team .... new software on the employees' computers.
ⓐ joined ⓑ varied ⓒ installed ⓓ stayed

5. I asked him to .... the music because I was in the middle of a virtual work meeting.
ⓐ clear off ⓑ turn down ⓒ break into ⓓ turn up

6. My parents couldn't reach me as I had forgotten to .... my mobile phone.
ⓐ turn off ⓑ switch on ⓒ cross by ⓓ dare to

7. She sent me an invitation to her birthday party, but I had to .... it because I have an exam tomorrow.
ⓐ decline ⓑ accept ⓒ make ⓓ reflect

8. Experts are looking .... the possibility of enhancing digital learning.
ⓐ forward ⓑ out ⓒ up ⓓ into

9. A .... is a piece of written work that is stored on a computer.
ⓐ documentary ⓑ document ⓒ software ⓓ symbol

10. Can you .... your screen so I can see what the problem is, please?
ⓐ share ⓑ mute ⓒ install ⓓ join

11. The students found the test difficult and it led to a .... in their motivation.
ⓐ produce ⓑ raise ⓒ progress ⓓ decline

12. You have to .... your mobile phone before you enter the meeting.
ⓐ turn on ⓑ mute ⓒ destroy ⓓ disappear

13. I .... the TV sound to hear my father.
ⓐ caught ⓑ turned ⓒ went ⓓ muted

14. We need a more .... method of predicting earthquakes.
ⓐ limited ⓑ previous ⓒ reliable ⓓ late

15. The site provided a .... meeting for online courses.
ⓐ virtual ⓑ physical ⓒ visible ⓓ visual

16. He is an enthusiastic student who always .... in class discussions.
ⓐ sleeps ⓑ leaves ⓒ joins ⓓ disturbs

17. There's only one room available so we'll have to............... .
ⓐ divide ⓑ share ⓒ multiply ⓓ declined

18. The printer will begin to work as soon as you .... it in.
ⓐ switch ⓑ plug ⓒ turn ⓓ look

19. This meat isn't cooking – you need to .... the oven.
ⓐ turn down ⓑ turn up ⓒ turn off ⓓ switch off

20. To save energy, turn the light .... when you leave a room.
ⓐ up ⓑ on ⓒ in ⓓ off

21. .... means the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as think and make decisions
ⓐ Artificial intelligence ⓑ Identity card
ⓒ Master's degree ⓓ Information technology

Exercises on • Main Vocabulary

22. The IT support worker has successfully .... the software for the meeting, which is working well.
ⓐ installed ⓑ instilled ⓒ laid ⓓ sit up

23. Everyone joined the meeting. They .... their microphones on.
ⓐ returned ⓑ turned ⓒ trended ⓓ retrained
24. The plane was .... for several hours because of bad weather.
ⓐ stayed ⓑ delayed ⓒ applied ⓓ improved
25. Many women lack the self-confidence to .... for senior jobs.
ⓐ apply ⓑ participate ⓒ provide ⓓ take
26. The heavy snow signaled the .... of winter.
ⓐ advent ⓑ advertisement ⓒ impossibility ⓓ hidden
27. The basic salary is $5000 a year, ... other benefits including a car.
ⓐ equal ⓑ plus ⓒ addition ⓓ however
28. The new app is .... and easy-to-learn for low-skill users.
ⓐ inconvenient ⓑ complicated ⓒ user-friendly ⓓ biased
29. The .... will ask you about your educational background and work experience.
ⓐ applicant ⓑ interviewer ⓒ candidate ⓓ interviewee
30. The new treatment is quick, relatively painless, and has .... results.
ⓐ reliable ⓑ negative ⓒ fictional ⓓ unfamiliar
31. Investigators .... that the crash was caused by human error.
ⓐ extracted ⓑ applied ⓒ included ⓓ concluded
32. He never discusses his private life with his .... at work.
ⓐ interviewers ⓑ enemies ⓒ relatives ⓓ colleagues
33. He issued a challenge to the other candidates to take part in a public............ .
ⓐ consequence ⓑ version ⓒ part ⓓ debate
34. It .... that she had lied to her employers.
ⓐ emerged ⓑ realised ⓒ recognised ⓓ switched
35. A new government cannot bring about .... progress -it just takes time.
ⓐ instant ⓑ delay ⓒ slowly ⓓ signal
36. How fast a .... do you need to stream video online?
ⓐ communication ⓑ contact ⓒ connection ⓓ commuter
37. Did you .... your microphone? I can't hear you well.
ⓐ mutate ⓑ mutual ⓒ silent ⓓ mute
38. Precise .... about war crimes is found on reliable websites.
ⓐ documenting ⓑ document ⓒ documented ⓓ documentation
39. There are lots of positive .... to using Artificial Intelligence.
ⓐ sequences ⓑ frequencies ⓒ adequacy ⓓ consequences
40. The severe storm has .... all the traditional buildings in our village.
ⓐ disabled ⓑ distracted ⓒ discontented ⓓ destroyed
41. The company will soon release the latest .... of its network operating system.
ⓐ version ⓑ virtual ⓒ virtue ⓓ clarification
42. I'm afraid I don't have the .... knowledge to fix your laptop.
ⓐ medical ⓑ agricultural ⓒ technical ⓓ technique
43. The lights .... on automatically when it gets dark.
ⓐ watch ⓑ switch ⓒ click ⓓ tune
44. One player was injured so the .... was sent on to play.
ⓐ submarine ⓑ subtitle ⓒ place ⓓ substitute

45. I read the papers to .... up with what's happening in the outside world.
ⓐ caught ⓑ switch ⓒ install ⓓ keep

46. As I wanted to travel to other countries, studying languages was the .... choice.
ⓐ logical ⓑ illegal ⓒ logically ⓓ irrational

47. There's been a downward .... in sales due to COVID-19 outbreak.
ⓐ trend ⓑ turned ⓒ return ⓓ looked

48. The new vaccine has proved to be .... against the COVID-19 virus.
ⓐ affectionate ⓑ efficient ⓒ value ⓓ worthless

49. It was the first time that she had lived .... away from her family.
ⓐ depend ⓑ dependently ⓒ independently ⓓ only

50. The audience became disappointed as the play was boring and ....
ⓐ repetitive ⓑ innovative ⓒ interesting ⓓ new

51. The train is twenty minutes behind............... .
ⓐ meeting ⓑ schedule ⓒ period ⓓ instant

52. Experts across the world have acknowledged that online teaching, no matter its quality, is a poor .... for in-person teaching.
ⓐ attitude ⓑ institute ⓒ useful ⓓ substitute

53. Egypt will be hosting a two-day .... on information technology.
ⓐ forum ⓑ application ⓒ interview ⓓ location

54. If you don't work hard now, you .... failing your exams.
ⓐ risk ⓑ task ⓒ decide ⓓ plan

55. The nurse uses her .... skills to help the patient feel at ease.
ⓐ personally ⓑ interpersonal ⓒ personality ⓓ personnel

Exercises on Synonyms & Antonyms

56. Teachers will never be replaced by computers in the classroom. Replaced is the synonym of............... .
ⓐ subscribe ⓑ submission ⓒ substitute ⓓ palace

57. This account offers you instant access to your money. Instant is the synonym of ....
ⓐ urgent ⓑ slow ⓒ late ⓓ distant

58. Profits have declined as a result of the recent drop in sales. The antonym of "decline" is ....
ⓐ reduce ⓑ limit ⓒ decrease ⓓ increase

59. Install and remove are ....
ⓐ synonyms ⓑ antonym ⓒ the same meaning ⓓ adjectives

60. How did you make the connection? Connection means ....
ⓐ appreciate ⓑ removal ⓒ link ⓓ invisible

Exercises on Expressions & prepositions

61. I have to .... the school work I missed last week; I'd been sick for a week.
ⓐ come up for ⓑ catch up with ⓒ catch ⓓ take up in

62. We should .... all the possibilities before we decide.
ⓐ look into ⓑ turn on ⓒ switch off ⓓ turn down

63. Millions of people all over the world use the internet to .... touch.

ⓐ keep in ⓑ cope up ⓒ get into ⓓ stay with

64. He must be out of his mind to .... up a good job like that.

ⓐ keep ⓑ turn ⓒ give ⓓ switch

65. They ignored me and carried .... with their conversation.

ⓐ on ⓑ out ⓒ into ⓓ up

66. My secretary will deal .... my clients while I'm away.

ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ up ⓓ with

Exercises on Derivatives & language notes

67. We have good................ with the local community.

ⓐ communicates ⓑ contacts ⓒ connects ⓓ contact

68. The museum's collection .... works of art from all around the world.

ⓐ consists ⓑ excludes ⓒ contain ⓓ includes

69. She is unable to .... her ideas to other people.

ⓐ communicate ⓑ contact ⓒ connect ⓓ contract

70. I finally made .... with her in Paris.

ⓐ communicate ⓑ contact ⓒ connect ⓓ contract

71. There were buses that .... the two villages not only to each other but also with the city.

ⓐ communicated ⓑ contacted ⓒ connected ⓓ contact

72. You should fill in this .... form to apply for the job.

ⓐ appointment ⓑ application ⓒ applying ⓓ applicant

73. I have decided to .... for this new job.

ⓐ apply ⓑ applicant ⓒ application ⓓ applied

74. They spend quite a lot of money each week .... out.

ⓐ to eating ⓑ eat ⓒ on eat ⓓ on eating

75. The official seemed to .... hours to examine my passport.

ⓐ take ⓑ took ⓒ spend ⓓ spent

76. The teacher spends a lot of energy .... a good lesson.

ⓐ to plan ⓑ plan ⓒ to planning ⓓ planning

77. The price of the goods .... transport.

ⓐ contains ⓑ consist of ⓒ enclose ⓓ includes

78. I vaguely .... his voice, but couldn't think of his name.

ⓐ recognized ⓑ identity ⓒ realised ⓓ released

79. There's no doubt that Jana is .... for the job. She is very efficient.

ⓐ suitable ⓑ suit ⓒ suitability ⓓ suiting

80. We just observed wild animals, ... notes and took photos.

ⓐ turned ⓑ talked ⓒ made ⓓ did

81. They helped their mother .... the flat.

ⓐ to tidy ⓑ to tidying ⓒ tidying ⓓ with tidy

82. The firm needs an .... to work as an accountant.

ⓐ employ ⓑ employer ⓒ employee ⓓ employment

83. He gets paid a good wage, because he works for a fair ....

ⓐ employment ⓑ employee ⓒ employer ⓓ unemployment

الأفعال الاصطلاحية Phrasal verbs

* تتكون الأفعال الاصطلاحية من فعل مع حرف جر واحد أو اثنين. وتعطي فعلًا جديدًا بمعنى مختلف.
* في بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية، يأتى الاسم بين الفعل وحرف الجر:

- Turn your sound **up**.

* في بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية، يأتى الاسم بعد الفعل و حرف الجر:

- We can **look into** other ways of **staying in** touch.

* بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية يمكن فصلها أو عدم فصلها باسم:

- Please, **turn** your camera **off** = Please, **turn off** your camera.

Transitive phrasal verbs أفعال اصطلاحية متعدية (تحتاج الى مفعول)

switch (turn) .... on	يشغل	plug in	يركب / يوصل	find out	يكتشف
switch(turn)... off	يطفئ	look up	يبحث عن معلومة	run out of	يستنفذ / يستهلك كل
turn ... up	يرفع / يزيد(صوت)	make up	يخترع	breathe out	يزفر
turn .... down	يخفض	pick up	يحضر / يتناول	die of	يموت بسبب
catch up with	يلحق / يساير	clean up	يرتب	point out	يوضح
look into	يفحص / يحقق في / يتحقق من	keep up	يجارى	breathe in	يستنشق
carry on	يستمر	go on	يستمر في	hand in	يسلم شيء الى
take in	يمتص / يستنشق	sum up	يلخص	fill in	يملأ
take off	يخلع ملابس / ينزع	bring up	يربي	hand on	يناول / يمرر
take out	يخرج / يعزم بالخارج	put off	يؤجل	think over	يفكر في
take over	يتولى المسئولية عن	break down	يحطم / يهدم / يقتحم	give off	يخرج / تنبعث منه

Intransitive phrasal verbs أفعال اصطلاحية لازمة (لا تحتاج الي مفعول)

give up	يتوقف عن	log on	يسجل دخول على	stay up	يسهر
grow up	يكبر / ينضج	log off	يسجل خروج من	give in	يستسلم
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	catch up	يلحق	break down	يتعطل
watch out	ينتبه / يحذر	go on	يستمر في	set off	يغادر / ينطلق
fall off	ينخفض	break in	يقتحم / يسطو	run out	ينفذ / ينتهي

Important phrasal verbs أفعال اصطلاحية مهمة

believe in	يؤمن بـ	accuse of	يتهم بـ	complain to	يشكو الي
take place in	يحدث	apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	complain about	يشكو بشأن
take part in	يشارك	laugh at	يسخر من	protect from	يحمي من
blame... for	يلوم علي	die of	يموت بسبب	suffer from	يعاني من
blame...on	يلقي باللوم علي	give out	يوزع	object to	يعترض على
result in = lead to	يؤدي إلى	give off	ينتج / يطلق	belong to	يخص
look for	يبحث عن	give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار) / يقلل
look after	يعتني بـ	give away	يتبرع	work on	يعمل علي / يطور/ يقنع
look on	يتصفح النت	trade with	يتاجر مع	work as	يعمل كـ
take off	تقلع الطائرة	trade in	يتاجر في	deal with	يتعامل مع
depend (rely) on	يعتمد على	concentrate on	يركز على	charge with	يتهم بـ

GIANTS

Preposition tricks

help	help... + inf.	يساعد	He **helped** me **do** my homework.
	help... to + inf.		He **helped** me **to do** my homework.
	help... in + ing	يساعد في	He **helped** me **in doing** my homework.
	help... with + n		He **helped** me **with** my **homework**.
trade	trade with	يتاجر مع	We **trade with** China.
	trade in	يتاجر في	We **trade in / deal** in vegetables.
hear	hear of / about	يسمع عن	Have you ever **heard of** this writer?
	hear from	يتلقى أخباراً من	My friend traveled abroad and I haven't **heard from** him till now.
turn	turn on	يشغل	**Turn on** the TV. I want to watch the news.
	turn off	يفصل	Always **turn off** devices after use.
	turn down	يقلل / يخفض	It is so cold, **turn down** the air -conditioning, but don't **turn** it **off**.
	turn up	يرفع / يعلي	It is so hot, **turn up** the air-conditioning.
	turn down	يرفض	I asked him to go with me but he **turned down**.
angry	angry with	يغضب من	I am **angry with** my friend.
	angry about	يغضب بشأن	I am **angry about** what he has done.
find	found out	يكتشف	I **found out** that I was mistaken.
	find out about	يعرف بشأن	If you want to **find out about** this writer, search Google.
blame	blame... for	يلوم على	He **blamed** me **for** coming late.
	blame...on	يلقي باللوم على	He **blamed** his bad result **on** his bad friend.
run	run out (بدون مفعول)	ينفذ /	One day oil will **run out**.
	run out of تحتاج مفعول	ينتهي	We will **run out of** oil.
give	give out	يوزع	The food and drink are **given out** to the poor.
	give off	ينتج / يطلق	The fire **gave off** a lot of heat.
	give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	Never **give up**, whatever hardships you face.
	give away	يتبرع	The children **gave away** their toys for a charity.

The phrasal verb (Take)

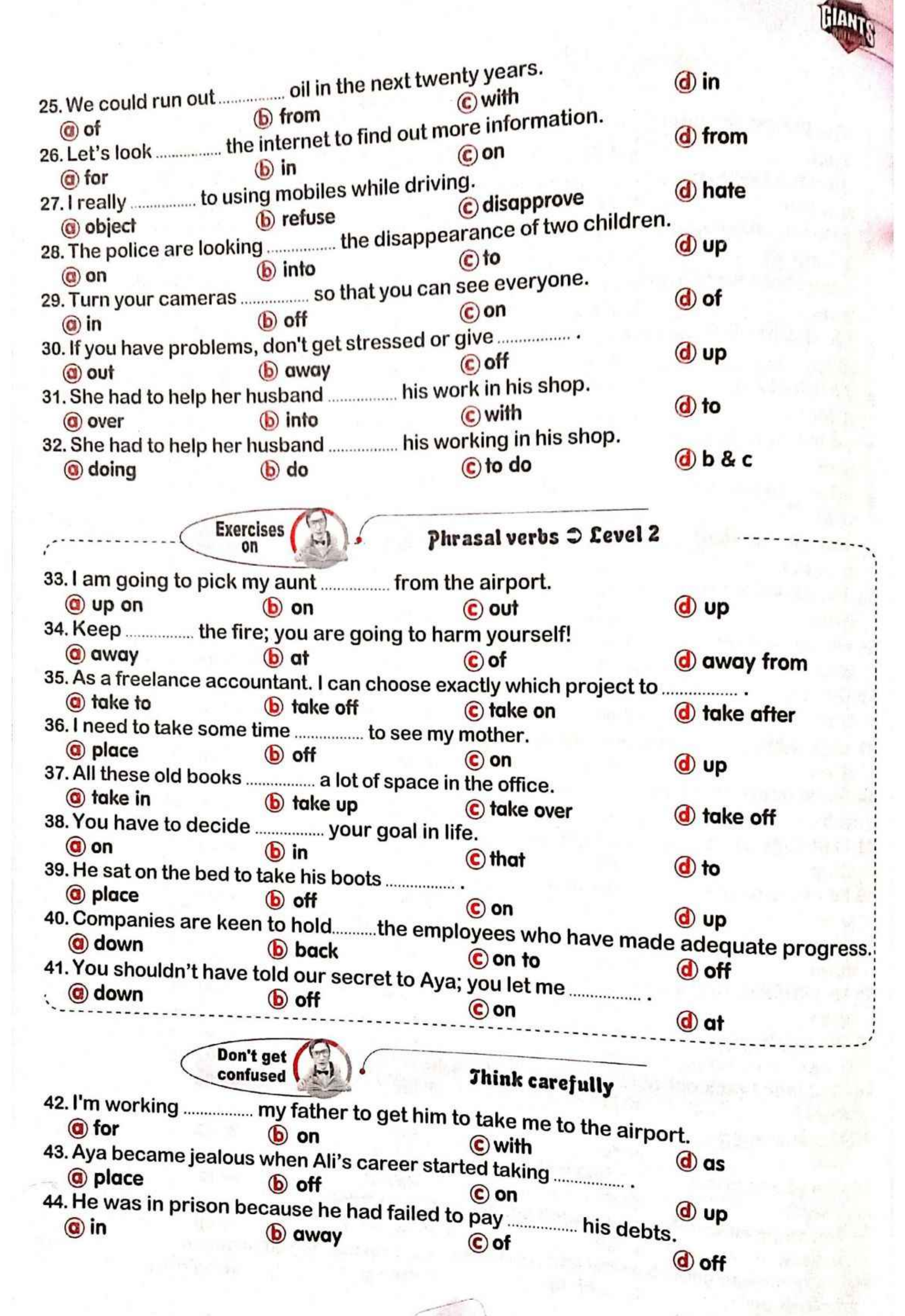
take **off**	يخلع / تقلع	take **part**	يشارك
take **off**	يأخذ اجازة	take **place**	يحدث
take **after**	يشبه	take **to**	يعتاد علي
take **away**	يأخذ بعيداً	take **in**	يمتص / يخدع
take **care of**	يعتني ب	take **on**	يدير / يشغل / يوظف
take **up**	يشغل حيز	take **over**	يتولي مسئولية / يستولي علي

خد بالك



Exercises on **Phrasal verbs ⊃ Level 1**

1. The police are going to look .... other ways to fight online crime.
ⓐ up ⓑ into ⓒ down ⓓ off
2. Turn the camera .... I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.
ⓐ down ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ up
3. At least, I have this weekend to .... with the school work I missed.
ⓐ keep up ⓑ turn up ⓒ pick ⓓ catch up
4. I can't hear what's on clearly. Please, turn the sound ....
ⓐ on ⓑ down ⓒ up ⓓ off
5. We told her the sound was too loud so she turned it ....
ⓐ on ⓑ down ⓒ of ⓓ up
6. Ali is looking .... a space to park his car.
ⓐ for ⓑ up ⓒ forward ⓓ after
7. I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting .... the mail to arrive.
ⓐ at ⓑ to ⓒ of ⓓ for
8. When I realized I was wrong. I apologized .... him for my mistake.
ⓐ to ⓑ with ⓒ at ⓓ for
9. How did she find .... that she had won the prize?
ⓐ about ⓑ out ⓒ from ⓓ of
10. The explorers were looking .... diamonds.
ⓐ up ⓑ after ⓒ for ⓓ up
11. His uncle died .... cancer two years ago.
ⓐ of ⓑ off ⓒ from ⓓ to
12. Cutting .... trees causes damage to the environment.
ⓐ in ⓑ of ⓒ away ⓓ down
13. Let's look .... new ways of working.
ⓐ on ⓑ into ⓒ to ⓓ back
14. Some people believe .... ghosts.
ⓐ by ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ about
15. I felt quite excited as the plane took .... from the airport.
ⓐ up ⓑ on ⓒ off ⓓ at
16. I'd never heard .... him at all until last week.
ⓐ to ⓑ with ⓒ of ⓓ for
17. This is a difficult period but it won't go .... forever.
ⓐ on ⓑ out ⓒ up ⓓ down
18. He was arrested trading .... drugs.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ with ⓓ of
19. Did Aya apply .... that job in the company?
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ in
20. That little black car belongs .... my uncle.
ⓐ to ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ for
21. She managed .... work out the problem in no time.
ⓐ in ⓑ to ⓒ for ⓓ up
22. Can you help me .... find an answer to this problem?
ⓐ with ⓑ in ⓒ for ⓓ to
23. Seif stopped watching the match and turned .... TV.
ⓐ down ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ up
24. I have missed some lessons and I need to .... up with my classmates.
ⓐ reach up ⓑ catch up ⓒ use up ⓓ hold up



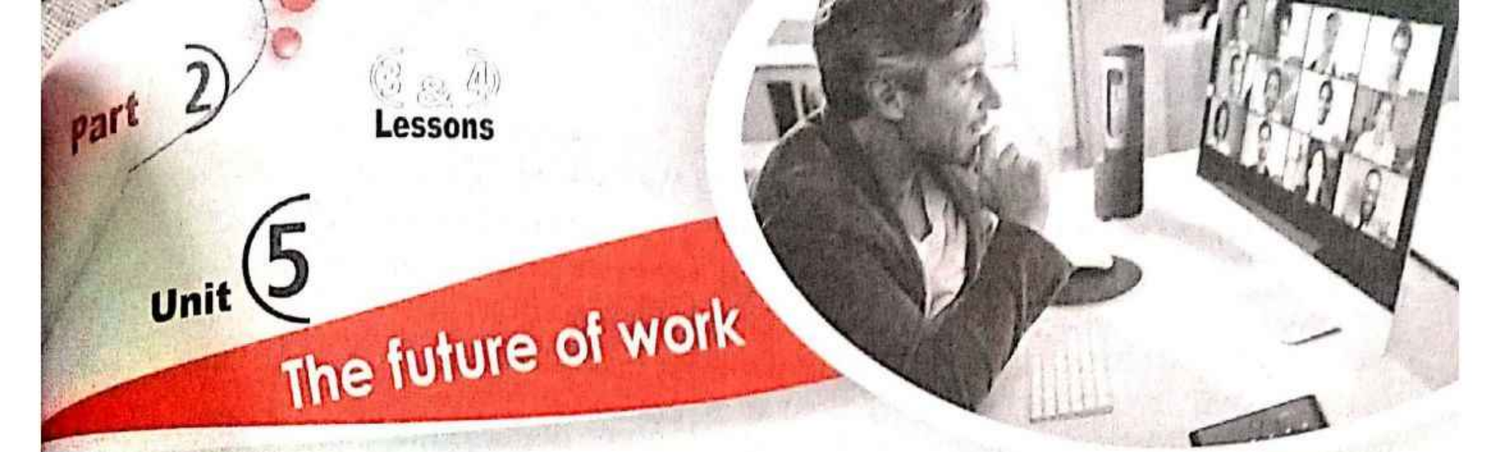
25. We could run out .... oil in the next twenty years.
   ⓐ of ⓑ from ⓒ with ⓓ in
26. Let's look .... the internet to find out more information.
   ⓐ for ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ from
27. I really .... to using mobiles while driving.
   ⓐ object ⓑ refuse ⓒ disapprove ⓓ hate
28. The police are looking .... the disappearance of two children.
   ⓐ on ⓑ into ⓒ to ⓓ up
29. Turn your cameras .... so that you can see everyone.
   ⓐ in ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ of
30. If you have problems, don't get stressed or give ....
   ⓐ out ⓑ away ⓒ off ⓓ up
31. She had to help her husband .... his work in his shop.
   ⓐ over ⓑ into ⓒ with ⓓ to
32. She had to help her husband .... his working in his shop.
   ⓐ doing ⓑ do ⓒ to do ⓓ b & c

Exercises on — Phrasal verbs ⊃ Level 2

33. I am going to pick my aunt .... from the airport.
   ⓐ up on ⓑ on ⓒ out ⓓ up
34. Keep .... the fire; you are going to harm yourself!
   ⓐ away ⓑ at ⓒ of ⓓ away from
35. As a freelance accountant. I can choose exactly which project to ....
   ⓐ take to ⓑ take off ⓒ take on ⓓ take after
36. I need to take some time .... to see my mother.
   ⓐ place ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ up
37. All these old books .... a lot of space in the office.
   ⓐ take in ⓑ take up ⓒ take over ⓓ take off
38. You have to decide .... your goal in life.
   ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ that ⓓ to
39. He sat on the bed to take his boots ....
   ⓐ place ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ up
40. Companies are keen to hold.......... the employees who have made adequate progress.
   ⓐ down ⓑ back ⓒ on to ⓓ off
41. You shouldn't have told our secret to Aya; you let me ....
   ⓐ down ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ at

Don't get confused — Think carefully

42. I'm working .... my father to get him to take me to the airport.
   ⓐ for ⓑ on ⓒ with ⓓ as
43. Aya became jealous when Ali's career started taking ....
   ⓐ place ⓑ off ⓒ on ⓓ up
44. He was in prison because he had failed to pay .... his debts.
   ⓐ in ⓑ away ⓒ of ⓓ off



Part 2 — Lessons 3 & 4

Unit 5 The future of work

1 Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
highlight (v)(n)	يبرز / يوضح / أبرز جزء	chat (v)(n)	دردشة / يدردش	present (v)	يعرض/يقدم
motivate (v)	يحفز	average(n)	متوسط / معدل	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
separate (v)(adj)	يفصل / منفصل	explanation (n)	شرح	discussion (n)	مناقشة
attach (v)	يرفق/ يرسل كمرفق	background (n)	خلفية / بيئة	access (n)	الدخول
identify (v)	يحدد / يتعرف على	session (n)	جلسة / دورة	apply (v)	يطبق/ ينفذ
link (v)(n)	رابط / يربط / علاقة	guess (v)	يخمن	old-fashioned(adj)	قديم

2 Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	slide (n)	شريحة	wonder (v)	يتساءل
option (n)	خيار/اختيار	prepare (v)	يعد/يجهز	shocked (adj)	مصدوم
effective (adj)	مؤثر/فعال	record (v)(n)	سجل / يسجل	similar(adj)	مشابه
effectively(adv)	بفاعلية	option (n)	اختيار	specific(adj)	محدد
arrow (n)	سهم	creative(adj)	مبدع	introduce (v)	يقدم
reduce (v)	يقلل/يختصر	mind (v)(n)	عقل / يمانع	conclude (v)	يستنتج / يختم
podcast (n)	بث إذاعي	certain(adj)	متأكد / معين	summary (n)	ملخص
right (adj)	حق /صواب / يمين / صح	essential (adj)	ضروري / جوهري	tend (v)	يميل
draw (v)	يرسم	tips (n)	نصائح	technique (n)	أسلوب

3 Expressions, Collocations & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
in advance	مقدما
in ten **years'** time	فى خلال 10 سنوات
labour market	سوق العمل
offer a position	يعرض وظيفة
draw mind maps	يرسم خرائط ذهنية
get angry	يغضب
click **on**	ينقر علي
tend **to**	يميل الي
give (**make**)a presentation	يقدم عرض تقديمي
give an explanation	يفسر / يوضح
cause a change	يتسبب فى تغيير
make a summary of	يقوم بعمل ملخص عن

5 Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	outdated - ancient	modern - fashionable
separate	يفصل	isolate - detach	join - unite
creative	مبدع	innovative - imaginative	common - boring